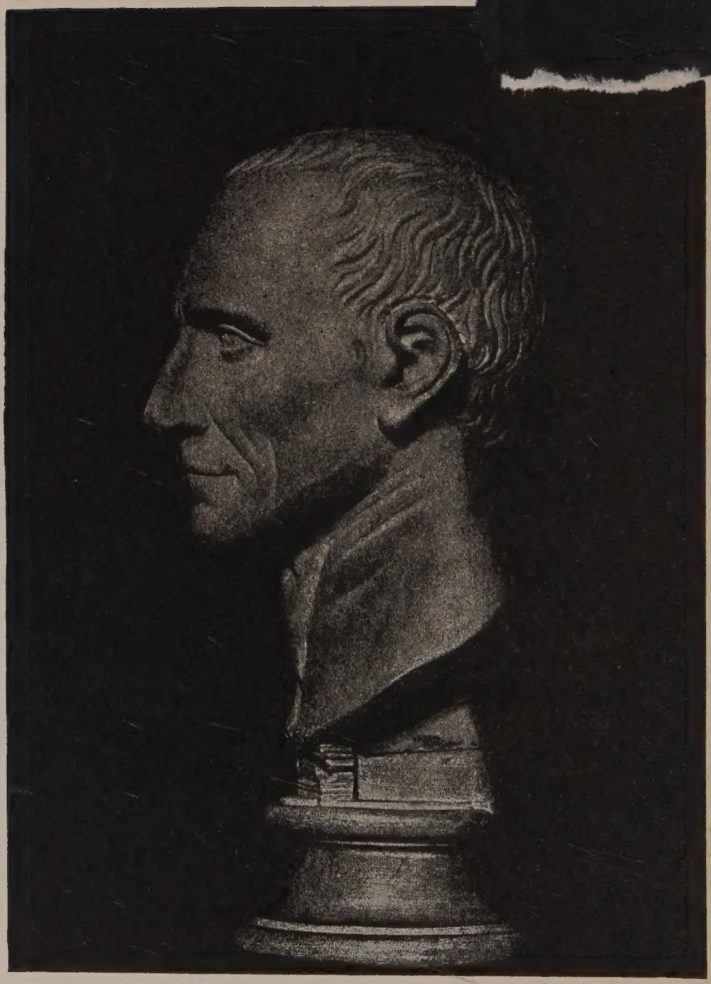
308-IV

#1-14 JKW
$1.00



JULIUS CAESAR

From the marble bust in the British Museum

LATIN READER

NATURE STUDY AND EASY STORIES FOR SIGHT READING DURING THE FIRST YEAR IN LATIN

BY

A. B. REYNOLDS

HEAD OF FOREIGN LANGUAGE DEPARTMENT
HITCHCOCK MILITARY ACADEMY
SAN RAFAEL, CALIFORNIA

Bene inceptum, dīmidium cōnfectum

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

COPYRIGHT, 1918,
BY D. C. HEATH & CO.

1D9

TO

ALL · THOSE BOYS AND GIRLS · WHO SEEK · BY MEANS OF THE LATIN · TO IMPROVE THEIR UNDERSTANDING OF ENGLISH · TO ACQUIRE A TRUE APPRECIATION OF ANCIENT LITERATURE · OR TO KNOW THE FOUNTAIN HEAD OF SO MUCH THAT IS INDISPENSABLE TO THEIR PART IN MODERN LIFE · THIS BOOK IS DEDICATED

PREFACE

During the first year pupils must form the habit of reading Latin. If we had the material, they might learn to read Latin as they learned to read English, *by reading*. What can be done to get this material? Of what should this material consist?

We are preparing them to read authors. Our own experience has often shown us that the first few pages of a new book seem difficult — usually the most difficult of the whole book — and so much so that we might say of many books: "Well begun is half done."

The majority of pupils who read much Latin, read Caesar, Cicero, and Vergil. Their first attack upon each of these authors is nearly always made upon the first pages of the Gallic War, Book I or Book II, the First Oration against Catiline, and the First Book of the Æneid. Their reading during the first year can be made to contain every important word and every form and construction occurring in those few pages.

During the first year's work, students of Latin are obliged to read hundreds and even thousands of sentences illustrating Latin forms and syntax. Those sentences are for the most part fragments of the sentences of Caesar and other Latin authors and are usually arranged so as to illustrate and review the use of certain constructions with regularity and precision.

Now if those sentences can be made to tell *something worth knowing* and *remembering*, the pupil's interest will not have to be either forced or lacking, and he may find some encouragement to re-read many times and even to memorize passages illustrating the more common forms and constructions and fix them forever in mind. He will also be enabled to bring into play those instincts (that have already been so well trained while learning to read his own language) by means of which he has gathered the meaning of hundreds of English words from their connection in sentences and not lapse from the first into the helpless condition of a vocabulary slave.

The words and constructions of those first few famous pages above mentioned were used by the same authors elsewhere in their works — and by other authors — to say things that are entertaining and worth remembering. By gathering together a large number of phrases and sentences from Nepos,

Vergil, Sallust, Pliny's *Natural History*, Cicero's Speeches, the *Somnium Scipionis* and the *Tusculan Disputations*, Caesar's sketches of the Gauls, Germans, and Britons, from Tacitus, Livy, and others, one may easily possess the wherewith to tell almost any story about Nature, the Geography of Europe, the History of Romans, or make sketches and comparisons of ancient and modern life, and even construct interesting fiction using all those very words and constructions that the pupil will first meet (with very few additions) till he shall not find anything strange in the first pages of the authors but the story.

Such has been the process in creating this book and such is its purpose. We merely hope that here and there pupils will find some passage that will be to them not something to pass over and be rid of, but something that they will gladly go back to and learn.

Two distinct methods have been employed to induce the student to help himself. First, where forms are familiar, attention is called to the meaning of the root word in one or more English derivatives; second, where forms require explanation or where the meaning is difficult to illustrate by English derivatives, the particular form is explained at the bottom of the page. The general vocabulary is for occasional reference.

I desire to express my thanks to Mr. S. J. Halley of Belmont School, Belmont, California, for valuable criticisms of the text; to Major G. H. White and Mr. G. A. Broadfoot of Hitchcock Military Academy, and to Mr. J. W. Hunt, formerly of the same school, for suggestions regarding the treatment of grammatical matters; to Mr. W. H. Edmands of the University of California for his help in arranging the plot of the last story; to Mr. Webster Dillon of San Leandro, Cal., for assistance in preparing the appendix; to Miss Hazel E. Kyle of San Rafael for many suggestions regarding the matter and arrangement of the appendix; to Mr. Oscar I. Losey of Meridian, Cal., for his help in reading the proof; and to the last two for their painstaking work in eliminating typographical errors from the manuscript.

A. B. R.

San Rafael, California,
May, 1918.

TO THE TEACHER

I. The first twenty-one readings are so arranged as to afford opportunity for a very thorough study or review of the five essential elements of all sentences, viz.:

1. Predicate Verb — the word that asserts (finite verb) or represents a former assertion (infinitive), in boldface on page 3.
2. Subject — printed in boldface on pp. 4, 10, and 23.
3. Predicate Noun or Adjective — represented as being the *same person or thing* as the subject *or* as *a quality, condition,* etc. of the same — *i.e.* who or what the subject is or is made or called, printed in boldface on pp. 5, 11, and 22.
4. Direct Object — always *some other person or thing* (except in case of reflexives), printed in boldface on pp. 6 and 15.
5. Modifiers of all classes — all genitives (pp. 14, 19, 20, and 21), datives including the indirect object (p. 8), ablatives (pp. 9 and 12), prepositional phrases (pp. 13, 16, and 17), etc.

II. If left to themselves, pupils are sure to put all their energy into memorizing the English translation and rely on a merely visual impression to retain the *Latin which they are setting out to learn.* To prevent their forming this pernicious habit, it might be helpful: (1) to have them read each lesson till they can pronounce it with ease, (2) to have them read the Latin over after translating till they can bring out the meaning and show that they understand what they are reading.

In order not to become monotonous, each reading should have a definite purpose. One pupil may be asked to re-read the whole page promptly in Latin after translating. Another may then be required to read one sentence at a time, pausing for a third to select the subject (or some other essential element not in boldface type) and for a fourth to repeat the translation briskly. Concentrating on one element at a time soon develops the habit of reading observingly.

III. After pupils have learned to recognize the elements quickly, they may be required to go over a page taking each word as it comes and writing it in the proper column, thus:

(Classification or Parsing of the Words on page 6)

Subject Nominative	*Finite Verb*	*Predicate Nominative*	*Accusative Direct Obj.*	*Accusative of Measure e.g.*	*Ablatives*	*Preps.*
Lūx	dīcitur	diēs		(tantum)	Lūce	Dē
Nox	vocātur	tenebrae		(spatium)	Tenebrīs	ab
Tellūs	est	lūcida		(p. 10)	sōle	ā
Ea	est	obscura			lūnā	dē
(ea)	accipit		Lūcem		multīs	dē
(ea)	accipit		Lūcem		rēbus	ab
Sōl	dat		lūmen		duābus	ā
Lūna	dat		lūmen	*Accusative w. Preps. e.g.*	rēbus	
Is, ea	illūminat		terram		sōle	
Lūmen	est	candidum ārdēns			lūnā	
Lūmen	est	suāve		(sē)		
(nōs)	legimus			(p. 8)		
(nōs)	(legimus)					
rēs	sunt	Quae				
Rēs duae	sunt	lūx	lūcem			
(nōs)	(legimus)	tenebrae	tellūrem			

Subject Accusative	*Infinitive*	*Predicate Accusative*	*Adverbs*	*Datives*	*Genitives*	*Conj.*
			nōn			
lūcem	dīcī	diem	quoque	terrae	sōlis	et
noctem	appellārī	tenebrās	interdiū	eī	lūnae	et
tellūrem	esse	obscūram	noctū		sōlis	ac
eam	accipere		interdiū		lūnae	et
eum, eam	illūmināre		noctū			atque
lūmen	(esse)	candidum ārdēns	Quam hodiē	*Locative e.g.*	*Vocative* magister	
(lūmen)	esse	suāve	interdiū noctū	(vesperī) (p. 12)	discipulī	

IV. The meaning of some three hundred Latin words is taught with the text by means of derivatives. This at once compels a careful analysis of the English words and paves the way for collecting and defining other derivatives from the same roots, at first by the help of §§ 40–47; 127, 137 of the appendix, and later by the use of §§ 219–223. See suggestions on page 249.

V. In the simpler readings pupils are required to translate infinitives in all the ways in which they will be obliged to render them later. Both literal and free translation may be illustrated as follows:

legere *read: to read; (be) reading; do reading;*
legī *(be) read; to be read; (being) read; reading (be) done;*

Nōs legere iussit *he bade* ***us read;***
he ordered ***us to read;***
he ordered ***that-we read;***
he bade ***us be reading.***

Nōs legere audiit *he heard* ***us read;***
he heard ***us reading;***
(he heard-about ***us reading****);*
he heard-about ***our reading;***
he heard ***that-we read.***

Nōs legere patitur *he lets* ***us do*** *(****the****)* ***reading;***
he allows ***us to do reading.***

Legī intellegēbat *he knew (****it****)* ***to be read.***

Legī passus est ***he let*** *(****it****)* ***be read.***

Legī audīvit *he heard (****it****)* ***read;***
*he heard-about (****it****)* ***being read;***
he heard ***reading done;***
*he heard-about (****the****)* ***reading being done;***
he heard ***that-it was read;***
he heard ***that-reading was being done.***

In order to make the pupil appreciate the forms used in the Indirect Statement on page 3, it may be rendered, first literally:

"We are reading-about *us living on the earth;* (about) *the earth looking flat;* (about) *it not being flat, however;* (about) *it being round;* (about) *us calling it a globe*" and then freely, as:

"We read (that) *we live on the earth;* (that) *the earth appears flat;* (that) *it is not flat,*" etc.

VI. Directions for the study of syntax are merely suggestions to be used at the discretion of the teacher.

CONTENTS

Introduction

PAGE

To the Student xvii

Reading and Translating xix

The Framework of Sentences xx

Brain Work and Thumb Work xxiii

The Right Attitude xxiii

Pronunciation and Derivatives

Illustrations and Cautions 1

The Remains of Ancient Words 2

Nature Study

The Earth 3

The Sun 4

The Moon 5

Light and Shadows 6

The Source of Light 7

Earthlight and Moonlight 8

Sunlight 9

The Stars 10

Starlight 11

Day and Night 12

The North 14

The Four Winds 15

The Earth's Interior 16

Land and Water 17

PAGE

The Atmosphere 18
The Seasons 20

Sketches of Roman Life

The Latins 24
Chums 25
In a Roman Primary School 26
A Lesson in Numbers 28
Light and Color 30
The Measurement of Time 31
Spatium 33
Other Studies 34
Hours and Watches 35
The Days of the Month 36
The Julian Calendar 37
Measures of Space 38
The Roman Measures 40
The Circle 41
Gravity 42
The Study of Numbers 43
Reading and the Value of Reading 45
The Care of the Eyes 47
Writing — Roman Writing Materials 48
A Roman's Ambition 50
On the Plantation 51
A Roman House and a Roman Household 52
The Return from School 55
Brother and Sister 57
The Family at Home 58
Aemilius Rescues Brennus 59
A Birthday Request 60

PAGE

An Invitation to Visit Rome 61
Roman Politics 63
Arrangements for the Trip 64
A Visit to Cicero 65
The City — with Crassus 66
A Fire in Rome 67
Brennus Saves Aemilius 68

Arminius a Suebian Boy

The Gauls and the Germans 69
In a German Forest 70
Arminius Goes a-Hunting 71
Nasua Returns with Captives 72
Arminius Becomes a Slave 73
Given to the King's Sister 74
Norica Is Sent to Marry Ariovistus 75
With Ariovistus in Gaul 76
The Germans in Gaul 77
The Roman Province of Gaul 78
Life in the German Camp 79
Guarding the Hostages 79
What Arminius Learns about the Gauls 81
The Romans Name Ariovistus King and Friend . . . 81
Rumors from Helvetia 82
Gallic Chiefs 83
The Helvetian Nation 84
The Harudes Cross the Rhine 85
The Fears of Ariovistus 86
The Arrival of the Roman Proconsul 87
The Helvetians Migrate 88
Caesar Avenges Lucius Cassius 89

PAGE

The Grain Does Not Arrive 90
The Plots of Dumnorix 91
The Helvetians Defeated 94
The Council of Bibracte 96
An Embassy from Caesar 97
A Message from Caesar's Enemies 98
The Parley with Caesar 100
Ariovistus Defeated 101
The Death of Norica 102
Crassus Rescues Arminius and Velaeda 103
A Long Winter in Captivity 104
The Council of Luca 105
A Visit to Rome 106
Given to Quintus Cicero 106
Arminius Warns the Suebians 107
The Sugambrians Attack Cicero's Camp 109
Arminius and Velaeda Escape 110

Appendix

Sounds, Quantity, and Accent 111
General View of Nouns and Adjectives 117
Endings and Non-endings 118
Observations That Count 124
Gender of Nouns and Adjectives 127
Endings of Nouns and Adjectives 128
The Meaning of the Cases 130
List of Latin Prepositions 131
Place, Position, Situation, and Condition 132
Persons and Things 133
Indefinite Numbers 135
Indefinite or Undefined Persons 136

PAGE

Connecting Words 136
Agreement of Verbs 137
Bis, Bīduum, Biennium 137
Expressions of Measure 138
List of Common Adverbs 138
Indefinite Quantities and Values 140
Indefinite or Undefined Things 141
Cases Known by Their Use in Sentences 143
Paradigms of Nouns 146
General Observations — Nouns 152
Paradigms of Regular Adjectives 154
Comparison of Adjectives 158
Words Formed from Adjectives 160
Appositives 162
Time and Circumstance 163
Adjective Forms of Verbs 164
Duty, Necessity, etc. 169
Which One (of Two)? 170
Genitives and Possessive Adjectives 171
Pronouns — Relative, Indefinite, etc. 172
Pronouns — Personal and Reflexive 176
Pronouns — Demonstrative 177
Which One (of Any Number)? 179
Compound Pronouns and Adverbs 180
Ūnus, Duo, and Trēs 184
Numerals 185
Infinitives in English 186
Finite Verbs and Infinitives 187
Infinitives and Their Uses 188
Present Indicative Forms of All Classes 191
Present Subjunctives of All Classes 196

PAGE

Indirect Statements, Questions, etc. 199
The Latin Question Marks 200
Sequence of Tenses 203
Clauses of Result 205
Descriptive and Characteristic Clauses 206
Substantive or Noun Clauses 207
Conditional Sentences 210
Uses of the Gerundive and Supine 211
Summary of Facts About Verb Forms 211
Active, Passive, and Deponent Forms 218
Paradigms of Verbs 220–259
General Observations — Verbs 260
The Older Meaning of Words 263
Word-Building — Prepositions in Compounds 264
Use of Compound Verbs 270
Frequentative Verbs 270
Inceptive Verbs 271
The Framework of Complex Sentences 272
Sentence-Building 276
The Governing Power of Words 280

English-Latin Exercises 281
Vocabulary 315
Index 345

INTRODUCTION

To the Student[1]

The educational value of Latin is undoubted. Those who hesitate about taking it make it only a question of sparing the time or taking the trouble. But no study ever gives greater returns for the time and labor spent upon it.

Faith in Latin remains firm. Never was there a time when more people were engaged in efforts to direct the beginner aright. The sincerity of these efforts, made by those who know, is evidence of its worth to students. Even those who do not care for the study for its own sake, find it the great *lubricator* and *time-saver* among their studies.

The reason is plain. Rome has been compared[2] to a great reservoir into which all the streams of ancient civilization flowed and in which all the growing streams of modern civilization have their source. All the hard-earned and priceless treasures of ancient knowledge and thought were gathered up by the Romans and passed on *expressed in the Latin way*, and the additions that represent the discoveries, advances and improvements of two thousand years *continue to find expression in Latin terms.*

It may be in order here to enumerate a few of the benefits you will derive from a careful study of your Latin.

One third of the words of your daily conversation and more than half the words you learn in school have been borrowed from the Romans; and fully four fifths of all the words you will ever use are related to Latin in one way or another.

Thousands of Modern English words have been built up out of Roman materials and on the Roman plan. Each Latin root word

[1] Read now. Re-read after the first month's work.

[2] By the English historian, Freeman.

you learn gives you the key to the meaning of several other Latin words and of from two to fifty English words.[1]

1. Two school years well spent on your Latin will save you five years searching the English Dictionary in after life.

2. English is a language of few forms; and is therefore most easily mastered by comparison with a language that has many forms.

3. Latin broadens your mind and widens your view by teaching you another and a simpler way of looking at things.

4. The study of Latin makes you look at words more closely and in a new light, and teaches you that accuracy and careful discrimination which is so necessary in all future work.

5. If a student of Mathematics, Science, Law, or Medicine has not already learned a few hundred Latin words in the proper way, he is obliged to learn thousands of technical terms the hardest way.

6. The turning of Latin into English gives you the best practice you will ever have in the choice and arrangement of English words and the best possible help toward becoming fluent and orderly in speaking and writing.

7. It opens up a personal acquaintance with the cradle of civilization through our nearest congenial neighbors in the past — the Romans, from whom we have drawn the beginnings at least of most that we cherish and appreciate in modern life.

These and many other advantages you will gain slowly and steadily, often indirectly and unconsciously; so that many, whose conversation and accomplishments show how largely they are due to the study of Latin, have not thought of attributing them to that source, and they are sometimes inclined to give the wrong advice to students.

How to Read Latin

1. Latin words have no exact equivalents in English. They mean what the writer or speaker makes them mean or construes

[1] And still more in French, Spanish, Italian, etc.

them to mean. *Read each paragraph over and over in Latin* aloud, or at least in a whisper, before trying to translate it. The purpose of reading the Latin is threefold:

a. to look it over, see what it says and get the meaning;

b. to accustom the eye, tongue, ear, and mind to Latin forms and phrases and to the Latin way of looking at things;

c. to have the assistance of *eye-impressions, ear-impressions, tongue-impressions,* and *mind-impressions* to help the memory retain the Latin forms, phrases, and order of words.

To get the greatest benefit from reading the Latin, we must put ourselves in the writer's place and try to say what he intended to say, as we endeavor to make his sentences live again on our lips by giving them the proper expression.

The Proper Time to Begin

Begin with easy readings now and keep it up. Pupils who start to translate immediately without first reading the Latin make their work an unbearable burden later on, because they lose sight of the fact that *it is the Latin that they are studying* and not the English rendering of it.

With the proper start and practice of reading, Latin soon becomes "second nature" and the mind a veritable storehouse of familiar forms and phrases in the correct Latin order.

Translating Latin

2. The purpose of translating is merely to show others that we understand what we read and to get practice in framing English sentences. It is a waste of time to try to translate without first reading the Latin over till we feel satisfied that we know the constructions, arrangements of phrases, and, in a general way, what the whole paragraph tells. Reading several paragraphs together often clears up the meaning of many words that we might otherwise be obliged to look up.

3. *How to Attack a Sentence*

First, *translate the subject, if there is one.* The subject is ordinarily omitted, whenever the verb does not end in **-t, -nt, -tur, -ntur,** and is often omitted even then.

Next, *go on to the verb.* (There may be two or more verbs.)

Then, *go back to the predicate noun* (or adjective) or object.

Many sentences have only a subject and verb with modifiers. The skeleton of every sentence is like one of these *types.*

Type I. Subject and Predicate Verb. **Nōs**, *we*, is omitted.	**In terrā habitāmus.** Cf. 5 *g.* (On earth live-we.) *We live on the earth.*
Type II *a.* Subject and Predicate Verb and Predicate Adjective.	**Terra magna est.** Cf. 5 *a.* (Earth large is.) *The earth is* (a) *large* (body).
Type II *b.* Subject and Predicate Verb and Predicate Noun.	**Ea globus magnus dīcitur.** Cf. 5 *a.* (It ball great spoken-of-is-it.) *It is spoken of* (as) *a great ball.*
Type III. Subject and Predicate Verb and Direct Object.	**Nōs eam globum dīcimus.** Cf. 5 *b.* (We it sphere speak-of-we.) *We call it a sphere.*

4. Always *seek out and keep in mind the subject and verb* of the principal statement, arranging all other parts so as to give the best effect in English.

Avoid changing active verbs to the passive, as it causes too much confusion.

One of the most profitable exercises in *choice* and *arrangement* of words is the rendering of Latin sentences in smooth, forceful English, keeping as close to the original as possible.

Relations of Words in Latin Sentences

On the following page is a list of examples of the more common elements of Latin and English sentences.

5. (To be memorized one by one as referred to later.)

a. **Puer Mārcus** appellātur *the* ***boy*** *is called* ***Mark***
(boy Mark named-is) Nom. Pred. — same person as subject.

b. **Puerum** Mārcum appellāmus *we call the boy* ***Mark***
(boy Mark call-we) Acc. — Predicate of the object.

c. **Is** Mārcus est *it is* ***Mark*** Nom. — Pred. of a subject Nom.
Eum Mārcum esse nōvimus *we know it to be* ***Mark***
(it Mark to-be know-we) Acc. — Pred. of a subject Acc.

d. Puerī Mārcum vident *the boys see* ***Mark*** Acc. — Direct object.
Mārcum **annum** aluimus *we fed Mark* (***for***) ***a year***
(Mark year fed-we) Acc. used as a Measure of time. § 68

e. Mārcō librī sunt *books belong* ***to Mark*** or ***Mark*** *has books*
(Mark-to books are) Dat. of Possessor or Owner (asserted).
Librōs Mārcī habēmus *we have* ***Mark's*** *books* § 105
(books Mark's have-we) Gen. of Possessor or Owner (assumed).

f. **Mārcō** librum imperāmus *we demand a book* ***of Mark***
(Mark a-book demand-we) Dat. — Indirect object of a verb.
Mārcō librōs dedimus *we* (being near) *gave* ***Mark*** *books*
(Mark books gave-we) Dat. — Indirect object of a verb.
Librōs ad Mārcum dedimus *we sent* ***Mark*** *books* (from afar)
(books to Mark sent-we) **Ad** w. Acc. — distance traveled.
Eius **in** Mārcum ōdium nōvimus *we know his hatred* ***for Mark***
(his for Mark hate know-we) **In** w. Acc. — Person aimed at.

g. Mārcus **in** vīcum it ***Mark is-going to the village.*** § 60
(Mark to hamlet goes) Nom. — Subj. of the *Finite* verb, **it**.
Mārcum **in** vīcum **īre** videō *I see* ***Mark*** *going to the hamlet*
(Mark to hamlet **go** see-I) Acc. Subj. of the *Inf.* **īre**.

h. **Dīc**, Mārce! *speak* (*thou*), ***Mark!*** Voc. of Person Addressed.

i. Puer **cum** Mārcō est *the boy is* (***in-company-***) ***with Mark***
(boy with Mark is) **Cum** w. Abl. — denoting Association.
Puer librō **ūtitur** *the boy makes-use of-the book.* § 62
(boy book-**with** helps-**self**) Abl. — Means of an Action. § 182 *b*

j. Minor nātū [1] est **quam** Mārcus (est) *is younger* ***than Mark***
(less age-**in** is-he ***than Mark*** is) Nom. — Subject of **est**.
Annō [2] iunior est Mārcō *he is* ***a-year*** *younger* ***than-Mark***
(year-**by** younger is Mark-**than**) Abl. — Measure of Difference and Person (or thing) compared.

[1] Abl. specifying *in what respect.* [2] Cf. **annum** in **d.** above.

Our Task

The Value of Sight Reading

6. *a.* To be thoroughly acquainted with a piece of Latin is to know or readily recognize the form, meaning, and use of every word in it and get the author's message to us.

To be thoroughly acquainted with nouns is to know or readily recognize the meaning, the gender, and all the endings each has, to show its number and case. This is our task.

To relieve this huge task of some of its tediousness and length, nouns are divided into classes having the same or nearly the same endings; so that when the endings of a few nouns in each class are known, all one has to learn is the *nominative*, *genitive*, and *gender* as given in vocabularies.

b. If a student is a mere translator (not a sight-reader) and therefore a slave to the vocabulary, his task is still enormous and seemingly endless. The nominative, genitive, gender, and various meanings (or hints at the meaning) of hundreds of nouns and similar facts regarding hundreds of other words must be looked up (often repeatedly). This purely mechanical work occupies four fifths of his time, that is, uses his thumbs four times as much as his brains. And yet the means of lightening this dreary task is constantly before our very eyes, if we will only use it with intelligence. Cf. § 1.

Sight reading is reading (in the original) passages that contain many words whose forms, uses, and meanings are new.

Sight translation is turning the same into English with little or no referring to vocabularies. Here and there a word must be looked up or a hint given.

c. On the one hand, the nominative, genitive, gender, and meaning of every noun must be learned; the nominative, because it is so often irregular and because the vocative is generally the same; the genitive, in order to know the base and the declension; the gender, in order to know to which class it belongs; both genitive and gender, in order to know what the rest of the endings are.

Brain Work and Thumb Work

d. On the other hand, vocabularies are not the only source of these facts. An observing reader may gather many or even all these facts regarding the majority of Latin nouns as he goes, without the delay of using his thumbs or allowing the work to become the weary burden it so often proves to be; for modern English words betray *the ancestral roots.*

Magnitude (***big**ness*) and **magni**fy (*make **large***) show that the Latin base, **magn-**, means *large* or *great.* The connection may reveal the meaning of the strangest looking word, as in:

We heard the **aes** *ring. Someone rang the* **tintinnābulum.**

It requires no effort and we have no choice. Both of these strange words mean " bell."

A single ending may reveal all else we need to know; as in **nātūrā.** Cf. Appendix § 50.

Its root **nā-** (sometimes **gnā-**) is the parent of our words, ***nation***, ***nat**ive*, *in**nate*** (inborn), *co**gnate*** (relative), ***nat**ure*, ***nat**urally*, *un**nat**ural*, etc.

But the ancient word (usually broader in meaning than ours) may include what we call the *universe*, *all nature*, *make up*, *character*, *build*, *shape*, *birth*, *kind*, and *disposition.* Cf. § 218.

e. Its case ending **-ā** tells all the rest.

Nātūrā is *ablative* (-ā occurs in no other case) § 55 *g*
Nātūrā is *singular* (-ā does not occur in the plural) § 55 *d*
Its nominative singular is **nātūra** and its genitive singular is **nātūrae**, for **-ā** occurs in no declension except the first. § 55 *c*
Nātūrā belongs to a class of nouns that are feminine, unless they denote male beings, as **poēta**, *poet.* See § 54.
Nātūrā does not denote a male being; therefore it is *feminine.*
Nātūrā has the same endings as **prōvincia**, **porta**, **puella**, etc. Cf. § 77 *a.*

The Right Attitude

7. The aim of introductory Latin work is to prepare students to read authors, many of whose words, forms, and usages are still unknown to them. In order that pupils may find themselves in

that situation now and be trained in the proper attitude for such work, they must meet with new words and strange forms mingled with those already familiar to them. Therefore this book is arranged for *sight reading.*

8. Side by side with the first readings should be studied the working principles by means of which the best readers of Latin consciously or unconsciously gather up the necessary facts, while they *read and re-read to impress the Latin words* and *phrases* and the *Latin order and constructions* on their memory, and enjoy the story without the constant interruption and drudgery of referring to the vocabulary. § 6 *d*, *e*.

9. The intelligent reader is always consciously or unconsciously asking himself:

(*a*) "What *must* this word mean?"
and is constantly aware that
(*b*) *Cases* of nouns are easily *known by their use.* App. § 74.

In the dictionary a word may be said to have many meanings, but in a sentence, it is a different matter. Every sentence states something very definite, and the meaning of each word is restricted by all the others.

10. Thus when the meaning of four words of a sentence is known, the meaning assigned by the author to the fifth word will always be found to fall within the limits of the possible and the likely. To illustrate that a word *must* mean what the other words of the sentence force it to mean:

We **habitāmus** *on the earth. The earth* **vidētur** *flat.* **Ea** *is not flat* **autem**. *The earth* **vocātur** *a globe. A globe is* **et** *spoken of as* **sphaera**.
We see **magnum lūmen** *in the sky.* **Id lūmen** *is dazzling bright.* **Id** *is spoken of as* **sōl**. **Sōl nōn vidētur** *flat.* **Is vidētur globōsus.**

LATIN READER

PRONUNCIATION

The **alphabet** we use is Roman all but our *w* and *j*.

To **pronounce** the Latin words below correctly, pronounce the familiar English words printed under each.

The vowels **ā, ē, ī, ō, ū** and diphthongs **ae, au, ei, oe, ui** are prolonged twice as much as the unmarked vowels.

CAUTION. — Utter the syllables that contain short *a* and short *o* quickly. These vowels are like the first *a* in *aha* and *o* in *omit*.

The meaning of the Latin words is given in parenthesis.

ad (*up to*) odd	**ā** (*away*) ah	**aut** (*or*) out	**co′-lor** (*tint*) coe lore
nōn (*not*) known	**dat** (*gives*) dot	**hāc** (*this*) hock	**haec** (*this*) hike
hoc (*this, it*) hoke	**sōl** (*sun*) sole	**vel** (*or*) well	**rēs** (*fact*) race
vir (*man*) we're	**sīc** (*so*) seek	**vul′-tū** (*face*) wool′ too	**īn-fe′-ri-or** (*lower*) e'en fe′ rry ore
dē (*from*) day	**sī** (*if*) see	**fir′-mae** (*solid*) fear′ my	**ob-oe′-dī** (*obey thou*) oh boy′ dee
huic (*ho*) whee	**hei** (*alas*) hey	**coe′-pit** (*began*) coy′ pit	

Take great pains to learn the correct pronunciation of **c, con-, g, nc, ng, s, bs, bt, si, ti, tu, v,** and **x.**

cin′-get [1] king′ get	**cin′-gō** (*I gird*) king′ go	**ob-ten′-tō** (*held*) ope ten′ toe	**vir-tū′-tī** (*valor*) we're too′ tea
cōn′-su-lēs [2] cone′ soo lace	**cau′-sae** (*causes*) cow′ sigh	**vī′-si-ō** (*vision*) we′ see oh	**fōr-tū′-nae** (*luck*) fore too′ nigh

NOTE. — Learn to pronounce by imitating your teacher. Read pages 3, 4, and 5 *over and over* in Latin for pronunciation drill. See also § 23.

[1] *will surround.* [2] *consuls.*

LATIN WORDS IN ENGLISH

Every one has seen the effects of wear and tear on hats and shoes. The ravages of time have a similar effect on words. Some are lost, some worn and cut, and some escape with little use. Our words are from various sources. Many of them are scarred and tattered fragments of proud, sonorous parts of speech that once ran the streets of Ancient Rome.

Hard use has torn the **-t-** and **-us** from **rotundus**
and left it *ro und.*
With bruised and swollen eyes the ancient **inimīcus**
still survives in our humbler *enemy.*
After varied treatment the Latin, **radius**
is well preserved in our word, *radius,*
but bent and torn in our word, *ra y.*

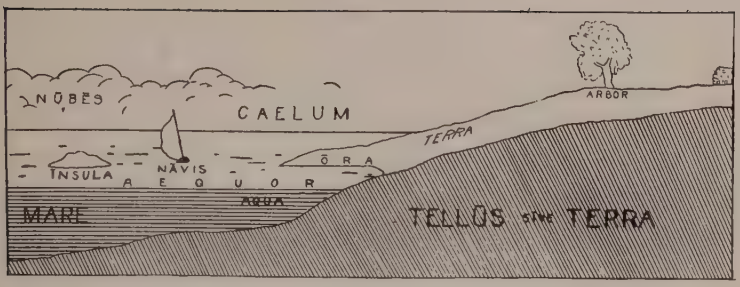
multitūdinem	**integrum**	**magister**	**pūnctum**
multitude	*integer*	*ma ster*	*point,* ***punctual***
multitudinous	*enti re*	*mi ster*	***punctuality***
sēcūritātem	**plānum** (flat)	**Aemiliam**	**ārdentem** (burning)
security	*plane, plan*	*Emily*	*ardent,* ***arson***
s urety	*plain, llano*		***ardently***

Though lost so far as English is concerned, **liber** (*book*) still lives in its relative, ***library*** ; so also

lūmen (*light*) in ***luminous*** **velle** (*will*) in ***voluntary***
puer (*boy*) in ***puerile*** (***boyish***) **ferre** (*bear*) in *transfer, suffer*

From the various forms existing in English, we see that there must be *several classes* of nouns in Latin.

	2	1	2	3	3	3	5
Sing.	alumnus	fōrmula	strātum	index	genus	axis	speciēs
Plu.	alumnī	fōrmulae	strāta	indicēs	genera	axēs	speciēs



DĒ TELLŪRE

In tellūre **habitāmus**. Tellūs plāna **vidētur**. Ea autem nōn plāna **est**. Nātūrā rotunda **est**. Nōs tellūrem globum **vocāmus**. Globus et sphaera **vocātur**. Tellūs magna **est**. Ea globus magnus **est**. Tellūs et terra **vocātur**.

Dē quō vōs **legitis**, discipulī?

Nōs dē tellūre **legimus**, magister. §§ 3, 10, 24

Quid dē eā **legitis**?

Legimus: nōs in tellūre **habitāre**;[1] tellūrem plānam **vidērī**; eam autem nōn plānam **esse**; nātūrā rotundam **esse**; nōs tellūrem globum **vocāre**; eam globum magnum **esse**.

You must not only learn new words and new facts, but also take advantage of all you already know. See hints below.

habitation = ***dwelling***
legible = ***read**able***
disciple = ***learner, pupil***
magnitude = ***large**ness***
telluric = ***earthy***
terrestrial = ***earthly***
invoke = ***call** upon*
spherical = ***globular***

autem *however, but* **dē** *from, about*
ea (N.) *it, she;* **eam** (Ac.) *it, her*
est (Ind.) *is;* **esse** (Inf.) *be, being*
et *also, and* **nātūrā** *in shape*
vidē-re (Inf.) *see;* **vidērī** *be seen, seem*
vidē-tur (Ind.) *is seen, looks* **evident**
vocā-tur (Ind.) *is called* **vocation**
-mus (*we*) **nōs** *we, us* **-tis, vōs** *you*

[1] **Nōs . . . habitāre** (we read . . . about) *us living* or (that) *we live*, etc. The same statements as above are repeated here in another form.

DĒ SŌLE

Lūmen magnum in caelō vidēmus. **Id lūmen candidum est. Id** sōl vocā**tur. Sōl** nōn plānus vidē**tur. Is** globō**sus** vidē**tur. Sōl** nātūrā rotundus est. **Is** quoque globus vocā-
5 **tur. Sōl** parvus vidē**tur.** Magnus autem est. Sphaera magna est. **Terra et sōl** globī magnī **sunt.**

Dē quō **tū** legis, puer?

Ego dē sōle legō, magister. §§ 4, 5 *a–d*, 21, 27

Quae dē eō legis?

10 Legō: **nōs** lūmen magnum in caelō vidē**re**; **id lūmen** candidum **esse**; **id** sōlem vocā**rī**; **sōlem** globōsum vidē**rī**; **eum** parvum vidē**rī**; magnum autem esse; **terram et sōlem** globōs **esse** magnōs.

is (N. mas.) *he, it*	**eum** (Ac. mas.) *him, it*	**id** (N. Ac. neut.) *this, it*
lūmen Int. § 10	**parvus** *small*	**quid** (N. Ac. sing.) *what?*
quoque *too, also*	**sunt** (*they*) *are*	**quae** (N. Ac.) *what things?*
ego *I* **-ō** (*I*)	**tū** *thou* **-s** (*thou*)	**-t** (*he, it, she*) **-nt** (*they*)

Former declarations are often made a part of new statements. Latin has *only one* way. English has *several* ways.

Ea globus **dīcitur.**	***It is called** a globe.*
Eam globum **dīcī** audiō. Int. § 5 *a* and *c*	*I hear **it** (**be**) **called** a globe; **it being called** a globe; **that-it is called** a globe.*
Ego eam globum **vocō.** (I it globe call-I) Int. § 5 *b*	***I call** it a globe; **I am-calling** it a globe;*
Mē eam globum **vocāre** audit. Int. § 5 *g*	*He hears **me call** it a globe. hears-of **my calling** it a globe; hears **that-I call** it a globe.*

DĒ LŪNĀ

Aliud lūmen in caelō videō. Id lūmen quoque **magnum** est. Id nōn **candidum** est. **Suāve** est. Id lūmen **lūna** dīcitur. Lūna nōn **plāna** vidētur. Ea **globōsa** vidētur. Lūna **rotunda** est. Ea quoque **globus** dīcitur. Lūna **magna** est. Ea **globus** est **magnus**. Terra et lūna **magnae** sunt. Eae **globī magnī** sunt.

Dē quō puer legit, discipulī? §§ 1 and 2

Is dē aliō lūmine legit, magister. § 74, 7

Quās rēs dē eō lūmine legit?

Legit: mē aliud lūmen in caelō vidēre; id nōn **candidum** esse; **suāve** esse; id lūmen **lūnam** dīcī; eam **globōsam** vidērī; **rotundam** esse; eam quoque **globum** dīcī; lūnam **globum** esse **magnum**; terram et lūnam **magnās** esse; eās **globōs** esse **magnōs**.

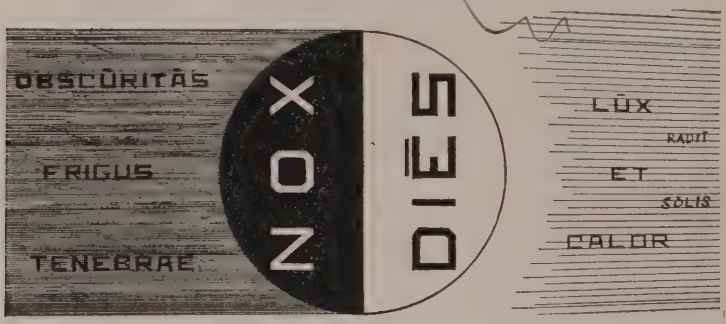
(*a*) The nouns, globus and discipulī (cf. **inimīcus** § 75) are *masculine* like the English nouns, *Julius* and *alumnus* (pl. *alumni*). The nouns, nātūra, sphaera, terra, lūna (like *Julia*) are *feminine*. So also caelum (Nom. of caelō) is neuter like *stratum* (pl. *strata*).

(*b*) "Lūmen **magnum**" (p. 4). Int 5 *d* and § 82 *e*.

"Id lūmen," *this light* (line 2), must be *nominative*, since it is the subject of the *finite* verb, *est;* but "id lūmen" (line 10, p. 4) must be *accusative*, as it is the subject of the *infinitive*, *esse*.

NOTE. — The accusative of neuters is always like the nominative, while the *accusative singular of masculines and feminines* always differs from the nominative. §§ 78–79

(*c*) *Masculine* forms, plānus (*flat*), is (*this, he, it*), rotundus, parvus, are used referring to **sōl**, p. 4. **Sōl** must, therefore, be a *masculine* noun. So also, the *feminine* forms, plāna (*flat*), ea (*this, she, it*), rotunda, etc., prove **tellūs**, p. 3, to be *feminine* and the *neuter* forms, aliud (*other*), magnum (Nom.), etc., prove **lūmen** neuter.



DĒ LŪCE ET TENEBRĪS

Lūx[1] diēs[2] dīcitur. Nox[1] tenebrae[2] vocātur. Tellūs nōn lūcida est. Ea[1] obscūra est. **Lūcem**[3] ab sōle accipit. **Lūcem** quoque ā lūnā accipit. Sōl interdiū terrae[4] **lūmen** dat. Lūna noctū eī **lūmen**[3] dat. Is interdiū, ea noctū **terram** illūminat. Lūmen sōlis[5] candidum et ārdēns est. Lūmen lūnae suāve est.

Quam multīs dē rēbus hodiē legimus?

Dē duābus rēbus, magister. §§ 23, 30, 31

Quae[2] rēs sunt, discipulī? §§ 6, 8, 38, 137

Rēs duae sunt lūx ac tenebrae.

Legimus: lūcem[1] diem[2] dīcī; noctem tenebrās appellārī; tellūrem obscūram esse; eam[1] ab sōle et ā lūnā **lūcem**[3] accipere; eum interdiū, eam[1] noctū **tellūrem** illūmināre; lūmen sōlis candidum atque ārdēns, lūnae suāve esse.

avert = *turn* (***a**way*) *from*
abstain = *keep* (***a**way*) *from*
diary = ***daily*** (*record*)
intervene = *come* ***between***
lucid = *having* ***light***
rebus = (shown) *by* ***things***
ā, ab, abs (*away*) *from* **absent**
accipit *gets, receives*
dat *gives* **hodiē** *this-day, to-day*
diēs *day* **interdiū** *during the day*
lūx lūcem *light* **nox noct**em *night*
tenebrae *shadows, darkness*

[1] § 74, 1, 2. [2] § 74, 3. [3] § 74, 4. [4] § 74, 6. [5] Possession assumed.

DĒ LŪMINE TELLŪRIS

Terra lūmen nōn ēdit. Altera pars illūmināta, altera pars **in tenebrīs** est. Terra nōn lūcida est. Ea **nātūrā** obscūra est. **Radiīs** sōlis illūmināt**ur**. Sōl terrae lūmen dat. Is autem **ab eā** lūmen nōn accipit. Lūna quoque terrae lūmen dat. Sōl lūnaque eam illūminant. (See p. 2.)

DĒ LŪMINE LŪNAE

Lūna lūmen nōn ēdit. Altera pars lūnae clāra, altera **in tenebrīs** est. Ea quoque **nātūrā** obscūra, nōn lūcida est. Lūx eius aliēna est. Ea **lūce aliēnā** lūcet. Sōl eī lūcem dat. Is eam accendit. **Ab eā** lūcem aliēnam accipimus.

Sōl terrae lūmen dat *the sun gives the earth light.* Int. § 5 *f*. **Sōl** must be a *nominative* form, since it is the *subject* of **dat**; **terrae** must be *dative* form, as it is the *indirect object* of **dat**; **lūmen** must be *accusative* form, as it is the *direct object* of **dat**.

Dē lūmine tellūris *about the earth's light.* Int. § 5 *e*. **Lūmine** must be an *ablative* form, as **dē** always takes the ablative.

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N.	**is** *he, it, this, that*	**ea** *this, she, it*	**id** *this, that, it*
G.	**eius** *his, its, of it*	**eius** *her, of her*	**eius** *its, of that*
D.	**eī** (*to*) *him, it, that*	**eī** (*to*) *her, it, that*	**eī** *it,* (*to*) *that*
Ac.	**eum** *him, it, this*	**eam** *her, it, this*	**id** *it, this, that*
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	**eō** *him, by it, this*	**eā** *her, by it, that*	**eō** *by it, that*

alien = *of-another* (*land*) § 109 *c*
clarify = *make* ***clear***, *bright*
data = *things* ***given***
apart = *to one* ***side***, *aside*
accendit *sets aglow* or *afire*
altera *the one* — **altera** *the other*
ēdit *gives out, sends forth*
lūcet *shines* **-que** *and* § 21

DĒ LŪMINE TERRAE LŪNAEQUE

Et terra et lūna nātūrā obscūrae sunt. Eae lūmen nōn ēdunt. Neque terra nec lūna lūcida est. Lūx eārum aliēna est. Sōl **eīs** lūmen dat. Hic eās illūminat. Sōl ab eīs nōn illūmināt**ur**. Lūna nātūrā atque obscūritāte terrae similis est. Lūna **terrae** lūmen suāve dat. Terra item **lūnae** lūmen suāve dat. Lūmen suāve inter sē dant.

Quam multīs dē rēbus hodiē legimus? § 74, 7, 9

Dē ūnā rē sōlā, magister; dē lūmine. §§ 37, 40, 23

Quās rēs dē eō legimus?

Legimus: et terram et lūnam obscūrās esse; eās neque lūmen ēdere neque nātūrā lūcidās esse; lūcem autem eārum esse aliēnam; sōlem **eīs** lūmen dare; hunc eās illūmināre neque ab eīs illūmināri; et lūnam **terrae** et terram **lūnae** lūmen dare; eās suāve inter sē lūmen dare.

Make a list of all subjects of finite verbs. They are all nominative. Also subjects of infinitives. They are accusative.

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N.	**eī, iī** *they, those*	**eae** *they, these*	**ea** *these (things)*
G.	**eōrum** *their, of these*	**eārum** *their*, etc.	**eōrum** *their*, etc.
D.	**eīs** *(to) them, those*	**eīs** *(to) them*, etc.	**eīs** *(to) them*
Ac.	**eōs** *them, these*	**eās** *them, those*	**ea** *them*
Ab.	**eīs** *(by) them, these*	**eīs** *(by) them*, etc.	**eīs** *with them*

neither = ***not***.. *either* §§ 65, 118*b*
none = ***not*** *one*, ***not*** *any* § 118
obscurity = ***dark***ness § 45
similarity = ***like***ness § 91
sole (*owner*) = ***only*** (*owner*) § 40
unity = ***one***ness § 120
et *both* . . . **et** *and* § 66
-que *and* **neque** *and* . . *not* § 24
hic *he, it, this* (*I mention*) § 117
inter sē *between themselves, to each other, to one another*
quam multīs? *how many?* § 64

DĒ CANDŌRE SŌLIS

Sōl **nūllā** ex **parte** obscūrus.[1] Is **nātūrā** candidus est. Sōl ex **omnibus partibus** clārus ārdēnsque. Is lūmen in omnīs partīs ēdit. Lūmen eius nōn aliēnum est. Lūna eī lūmen nōn dat. Haec ab **eō** illūmināt̄ur, neque eum illūminat. Sōl **lūce suā** lūcet. Lūna **lūce aliēnā** lūcet. § 109 *c*.

Hesternō diē quid lēgimus, discipulī?

Multum dē **lūmine** terrae lūnaeque lēgimus, magister.

Hodiē quid legimus?

Hodiē multum legimus dē **candōre** sōlis.

Crās quid legēmus?

Crās dē **stellīs** multum legēmus. §§ 9, 10

Hodiē legimus: sōlem **nūllā** ex **parte** obscūrum; eum **nātūrā** candidum esse; sōlem ex **omnibus partibus** clārum ārdentemque; lūmen eius nōn aliēnum esse; lūnam eī lūmen nōn dare; hanc ab **eō** illūminārī neque eum illūmināre; sōlem suā, lūnam **aliēnā lūce** lūcēre; sōlem et terrae et lūnae lūmen dare.

Select the predicate adjectives and predicate nouns in several of the preceding lessons while they are being read aloud in Latin.

Predicate adjectives and predicate nouns are nominative, if the subject is nominative; accusative if the subject is accusative.

pro**crastin**ate = *let go till* ***to-morrow***
examine = *view* ***from*** *all sides*
multiloquent = *talking* ***much*** § 70
omnibus = *for* ***all, every****body* § 38
annul = *make as* ***nothing***
stellar = *of* ***stars, starry***
suicide = *killing* ***one's self***

ārdēns *burning, hot* § 84
ē, ex *out of*, (viewed) *from*
haec *she, it, the latter*
hesternō *yester-*
multum *much, a great deal*
nūllā *no, not any* **ūllā** *any*
suā lūce *with his own light*

[1] The verb *est*, and other forms of *esse*, are occasionally omitted.

DĒ STELLĪS

Alia lūmina in caelō vidēmus. Ea lūmina sōlum noctū vidēmus. **Ea** crēbra sunt et innumerābilia. Pūncta parva videntur. **Ea lūmina** stellae vocantur. **Stellae** nōn plānae videntur. **Eae** globōsae videntur. **Stellae** nātūrā rotundae sunt. **Eae** quoque sphaerae dīcuntur. **Stellae** et sīdera appellantur. **Eae** longē ā terrā absunt. **Eae** quoque magnae sunt. Parvae videntur, quod tantum spatium absunt.

Quās rēs **vōs** hesternō diē lēgistis, discipulī?

Herī multa dē sōlis candōre lēgimus, magister.

Quibus dē rēbus hodiē legitis?

Hodiē **nōs** dē stellīs legimus. §§ 58, 140 **-se**

Crās dē quō **vōs** legētis? 74, 11, 18

Crās dē stellārum candōre legēmus.

Hodiē legimus? **nōs** alia lūmina noctū vidēre; **ea** crēbra et innumerābilia esse; **ea** stellās vocārī; **stellās** et sīdera dīcī; **eās** longē ā terrā abesse; parvās vidērī, quod tantum spatium ā nōbīs absint; magnās autem permagnās esse.

As a review exercise, re-read several of the preceding lessons aloud in Latin and select and write down all indirect objects of verbs (they are all dative); direct objects (they are accusative).

absent = *being* ***away*** § 185
alibi = ***elsewhere*** § 117 *a*
alias = *at another time*
appeal = *to* ***call*** *(upon)*
multiform = *of many shapes*
innumerable = ***countless*** § 220, 7
punctual = *on the* ***dot***
sidereal = *of the* ***stars*** § 78 *b*
solitary = *being* ***alone*** § 66
spacious = ***roomy*** § 74, 17

crēbra (n. pl.) *thick, close*
herī = **hesternō diē**
longē *far, at a distance*
multa (n.) *many (things)*
parva (n. pl.) *small, little*
per- *very* § 64
quod *because, that, in that*
sīdera (n. pl.) *stars* § 68 *b*
spatium *space, distance*
tantum *so great, so large*

DE CANDŌRE SĪDERUM

Sīdera nūllā ex parte **obscūra** sunt. Ea nātūrā **candida atque ārdentia**. Ex omnibus partibus **clāra** sunt. Sīdera lūmen in omnīs partīs radiant. Lūna sīderibus lūmen nōn dat. Ab sōle lūmen nōn accipiunt. Neque sōl neque lūna sīdera illūminat. Nam lūce suā lūcent. Sōl enim **sīdus** est. Sīdera **aliī sōlēs** sunt. Sōl propius adest. Sīdera longius absunt. Terra lūnaque lūcem ab sīderibus accipiunt. Eae lūmine aliēnō illūminantur. Sōl et alia sīdera lūce suā lūcent. Lūx enim eōrum nōn **aliēna** est.

Dē quō legit Iūlia, discipulī? § 109 *c*

Ea dē candōre sīderum legit, magister. § 74, 11

Quae dē eōrum candōre legit?

Ea legit: sīdera nūllā ex parte **obscūra** esse; ea nātūrā **candida atque ārdentia**; ex omnibus partibus esse **clāra**; sīdera lūmen in omnīs partīs radiāre; lūnam sīderibus lūmen nōn dare; neque ea ab sōle lūmen accipere; neque sōlem nec lūnam sīdera illūmināre; et terram et lūnam lūcem ā sīderibus accipere; ea autem **sōlēs** esse et lūce suā lūcēre; itemque sōlem **sīdus** esse; eum propius adesse; ea longius abesse; terram lūnamque lūmine aliēnō illūminārī.

Select all nouns denoting the means of an action or used with the prepositions, **ā, ab, dē, ē, ex**. They are all ablative.

acceptance = *act of receiving*
alien = *of another* (*land*) 109 *c*
ea (n.) *they, them.* See p. 8
longius *too far, farther* § 69
nam *for* **enim** (*for*) *indeed* § 66
propius *rather near, nearer*
partial = *favoring one* ***side***
radiate = ***send*** *out* ***rays***
sīdus (n. sing.) *a star, a sun*
sīder-um *of the stars* § 78 *b*
-t-ur *he, she, it* (acted upon)
-nt-ur *they* (acted upon) § 180

DĒ DIĒ AC NOCTE

Lūx diēs vocātur. Obscūritās nox appellātur. **Māne** aurōra rubēscit. Stellae ēvānēscunt. Lūcēscit. Diēs fit. Sōl oritur. Illam partem caelī Orientem appellāmus. Diēs ad labōrem datur. Sōl **tōtō diē** in caelō lūcet. **Mediō diē** sōl altus in caelō vidētur. Illam partem caelī Merīdiem vocāmus. Medius diēs et merīdiēs dīcitur. **Multō diē** advesperāscit. Sōl occidit. Illam partem caelī Occidentem dīcimus. Post occāsum sōlis obscūrēscit. Stellae iterum lūcēscunt. Nox fit. Nox ad quiētem datur. **Vesperī** lūna plēna ab oriente oritur. Haec **tōtā nocte** in caelō lūcet. **Mediā nocte** alta in caelō vidētur. **Māne** ab occidente occidit. Stellae quoque ab oriente orīrī vidēntur. Hae aut ab occidente cadunt, aut **ortū** sōlis ēvānēscunt.

Select all nouns used to denote time *at which, in which,* or *during which.* They are all ablative, except **vesperī** (Loc.).

Select all nouns used with the prepositions, **ā, ab,** and **dē.** They are all ablative. Select all nouns used with the prepositions, **ad, post,** and **circum.** They are all accusative.

decadent = *falling down* § 219
evanescent = *growing dim*
nocturnal = *nightly*
occasional = *falling at times*
occidental = *western* § 219, 3
oriental = *eastern* § 84
postpone = *leave till afterward*
plenty = *fulness*
convalesce = *get well, improve*
reiterate = *go over again*
rubescent = *growing red*
vespers = *evening services*

ad (w. Ac.) *toward, to, for*
aurōra *eastern sky, dawn*
fi-t *become-s, is made* or *done*
māne *in the morning, early*
merīdiēs *midday, south, noon*
multō diē *late in the day*
occidi-t *settle-s, set-s* § 180
orīrī *raise-self, rise* §§ 6, 123
-tās, -tātem *-ty, -ness* § 37, 9
-sce- *become, grow, get* § 223

Quās rēs vōs in nātūrā vidētis? Multās rēs vidēmus.
Quae dē nātūrā discitis? Multa discimus, magister.

Nam lūcem diem vocārī audīmus. Obscūritātem noctem appellārī intellegimus. Māne enim aurōram rubēscere, stellās ēvānēscere, lūcēscere, diem fierī, sōlem orīrī vidēmus. Illam partem caelī Orientem dīcī audīmus. Sōlem tōtō diē in caelō lūcēre vidēmus. Mediō diē eum altum in caelō esse cernimus. Illam partem caelī merīdiem appellārī audīmus. Medium quoque diem merīdiem dīcī intellegimus. Multō diē advesperāscere nōvimus. Sōlem occidere vidēmus. Illam partem Occidentem sīve sōlis occāsum dīcī audīmus. **Post** sōlis **occāsum** obscūrēscere, stellās iterum lūcēscere, noctem fierī vidēmus. Discimus diem **ad labōrem**, noctem autem **ad quiētem** darī. Nōbīs vidētur lūnam et stellās ab oriente orīrī, ab occidente cadere. Discimus ita nōn fierī; terram autem movērī et **circum axem suum** volvī.

Make a list of all nouns used as predicate of the subject or as predicate of the object. See § 74, 3, 5; Int. 5 *b*

	Sōlem	**orīrī**	vidēmus.
We see	*the sun*	*rise.*	Int. § 5 *g*
We see	*the sun*	[*be*] *rising.*	§ 142
We observe	(*that*) *the sun*	*rises.*	
		Lūcēscere	nōvimus.
We know	(*it*)	*to get light.*	
We have learned	(*that it*)	*gets light.*	

auditor = ***hear**er, **listen**er*
discern = ***see** clearly, **distinguish***
disciple = ***learn**er, follower*
intelligent = ***understand**ing*
noble = *deserving to be **known***

axis, axem *axis, axle*
cerni-mus *we see, notice*
disci-mus *we learn*
fierī *be done, happen* § 215
movērī *move-self* §§ 180–2

DE SEPTENTRIONIBUS

Nocte signum magnum in caelō vidēmus. Signum illud ex stellīs septem cōnstat. Id Septentriō vocātur. Septentriō et Arctos dīcitur. Duās **eius signī** stellās 'indicēs' appellāmus, quod Polum indicant. Stella illa et Polāris vocātur. Ūnus ex stellīs polus immōbilis manēre vidētur. Cēterae enim stellae circum polum volvī videntur. Nōs illam partem **caelī** Septentriōnem appellāmus. Duo sunt septentriōnēs, **quōrum** alter Septentriō maior, alter minor dīcitur. Stella Polāris **septentriōnis minōris** est.

Signum illud means *that* (**well-known**) *figure* or *constellation;* **illud signum** means simply *that figure* or *constellation* (**yonder**).

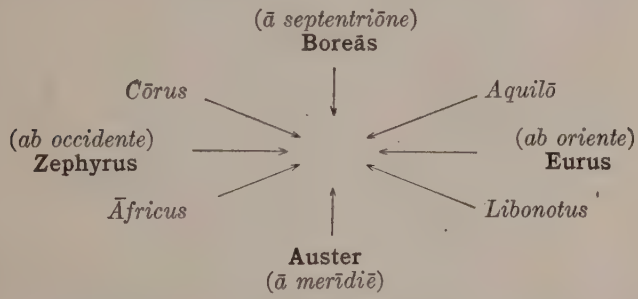
Septentriō [minor], *Smaller Bear* or *Little Dipper*, is nominative and has no ending; **-ō** is a part of the stem; Acc. **septentriōnem**; stem or base **septentriōn-**. See § 42, **2.**

Septentriōnis — est *is of* or *belongs to the "Smaller Dipper."*

alternate = ***the one or the other***
arctic = *under the* (*Great*) ***Bear***
et cetera = ***and all the rest***
index *finger* = ***pointer*** *finger* § 46
permanent = ***remaining*** *fixed*
September = ***seventh*** (*month*)
constellation = *group of* ***stars***
cōnsta-t *consist-s, is made*
maior *larger* **minor** *smaller*
quōrum *of which, and-of-them*
Septentriō ***seven-ox-team***
ūnus ***only*** (*one*), ***alone*** § 118 *b*
volvī *turn-self, revolve* § 182
polus ***pole*** (*-star*), *sky* (*above*)

DĒ VENTĪS

Quattuor partēs vel regiōnēs caelī sunt Septentriōnēs, Merīdiēs, Oriēns, Occidēns. Quattuor item ventī prīncipēs sunt Boreās, Auster, Eurus, Zephyrus. Hōrum prīmus, Boreās, ab septentriōnibus oritur. Is ita semper frīgidus est. Boreās **nūbīs** fugat, **caelum** serēnat, **frīgus** facit. Alter est Auster, quī et Notus vocātur. Hic ventus ā merīdiē oritur. Tepidus igitur madēnsque est. Saepe **caelum** nūbibus obscūrat et **pluviam** fert. Tertius, quī Eurus nōminātur, ab oriente venit. **Quārtum** Zephyrum nōmināmus. Hic ventus ab occidente spīrat. Neque madēns nec frīgidus, semper nōbīs grātus est. Zephyrus saepe **nūbīs candidās** fert.



aurora **boreal**is = ***north**ern dawn*
Australia = ***south**land*
fact = *a thing* ***made**, **done**, **caused***
frigid = ***cool**ing*, ***chill**ing*
nominate = *mention the* ***name** of*
tepid = *lukewarm*
convene = ***come** together* § 220, 4
ventilate = *let in* ***draft** of air*
Zephyr = ***west** wind* § 26

fer-t *bring-s* **fuga-t** *rout-s*
h-ōrum *of-these, of-them* § 117 *b*
igitur *therefore* § 66 *a*
madēns *damp* **nōbīs** (*to*) *us*
nūbēs *cloud* **pluvia** *rain* § 79
quī *which, that, who, as* § 115
regiō, regiōnem *part, quarter*
saepe *often* **semper** *always*
serēna-t *clear-s*

DĒ TELLŪRE IPSĀ

Multa adhūc lēgimus dē sōle, dē lūnā, dē stellīs; multa quoque dē tellūre cum illīs comparātā. Nunc autem plūra dē ipsā tellūre lēctūrī sumus. Dē interiōre tellūre pauca nōta sunt. Nēmō penitus **in terram** vīdit aut īnspexit. Nēmō **in intima** terrae penetrāvit aut ea nōvit. Solum terrae alibi molle alibi firmum. Interior terra firma ac solida est. Quō penitius **in eam** penetrātur, eō firmior ac solidior fit.

Useful Observations

(*a*) **Pauca** (line 4) must be plural, as it is the subject of **sunt**. Plurals ending in **-a** are neuter.

(*b*) **Multa** (direct obj. of lēg**imus** in line 2) must be accusative. Native Latin (not Greek) accusatives in **-a** are *neuter* and *plural*.

(*c*) Prepositions govern *either* the *Accusative* or the *Ablative*. The word **intima** must be accusative, for there is no such ablative ending as **-a**. Therefore **intima** must be a *plural* form and mean *inmost* (*things* or *parts*) since it must also be *neuter*.

comparable = *to be* ***compared***
firmness = ***solidity***, ***hard****ness*
inspect = ***look****-into* § 220, 7
intimate = *knowing the* ***inmost***
mollify = *make* ***soft***, ***soft****en*
noted = *well* ***known***, ***mark****ed*

alibi *in one place . . .* **alibi** *in another (place)* § 117
adhūc *up to* ***this*** *(point)* ***so far***
īnspexit ***has looked into***
-ior, **-ius** *-er, more, rather, too*
lēctūrī ***going*** *to read* **sumus** ***are***
multa *many* (***things***) **pauca** *few*
nēmō ***no one*** **nunc** *now*
nōvit *has learned, knows*
plūra *more* (***things***) § 150
penitus *deep* (into)
penitius ***deeper***, ***farther*** (into)
quō *the* **eō** *the* (Int. 5 *j*)
solum *ground* **vīdit** *has seen*

DĒ TERRĀ ET AQUĀ

Tellūris trīs partīs aqua cingit. Reliqua pars ex aquā ēdita est. Haec terra firma dīcitur. Terra et aqua omnibus rēbus **inter sē** differunt. Haec liquida et fluēns, illa firma ac solida. Haec nātūrā ipsā ubīque aequa est. Illa alibi aequa ac plāna, alibi aspera atque īnfōrmis. Haec ubīque **ad** tellūris **rotunditātem** accommodāta atque cōnfōrmis aequor aequitāte dīcitur. Illa alibi plānitiēs, campī immēnsī, alibi collēs, vallēs et montēs asperī.

Select from the reading lesson above:

1. Words that are connected by conjunctions meaning *and:* (*a*) Five pairs of adjectives; (*b*) Three groups of nouns.
2. Six nouns with adjectives. Which show gender? (p. 5, obs.; §§ 54, 55 *f*).
3. Three predicate nouns (§ 74, 3); six predicate adjectives.

Select the following from the reading lesson (p. 16):

1. Neuter plurals.
2. Neuter singulars (p. 5, obs.).
3. Feminine nouns (p. 5, obs. *c*).
4. Feminine adjectives.
5. (pp. 7, 11) Ablative cases.
6. Accusative cases.

accommodated = *adjusted, fitted*
aquatic = *fond of* ***water***
asperity = ***rugged****ness*
conforming = ***adapt****ing-****self***
fluent = *flowing,* ***run****ning*
immense = *unmeasured*
informal = *not of* ***regular form***
relic = ***remain****ing,* *the* ***rest*** *(of)*

aequor ***even*** *expanse, sea (level)*
campus *plain, level surface*
coll-ēs *hill-s*
ex *up-out-of*
illa *that, former*
haec *latter*
inter sē *from each other* § 74, 9
ubī- *-where*
-que *every-* § 119

DĒ ĀERE ET AETHERE

Āēr fluēns terram et aequor **ex omnibus partibus** cingit atque amplectitur. Āēr tenuis ac fluidus. Āerī tamen pondus est. **Pondere suō** terram et aequor petit, atque terram et aequor, nōs et omnia[1] premit. Īnferior āēr[3] crassus ac dēnsus, superior rārus et magis tenuis. **Quō** altius **ex aequore** ītur, **eō** magis āēr rārēscit et tenuis fit. **Quō** magis ad aequor[2] dēscenditur **eō** dēnsior ac magis crassus fit. Quantam in altitūdinem āēr **ē terrā** patēscat, nōtum nōn est. Restat ultimus, omnia cingēns, Aethēr. Hic rārissimus est ac tenuissimus.[3] Immēnsus aethēr[3] āerem et omnia[1] amplectitur. § 152

Āerī pondus **est** *There* ***is*** *weight* ***to air.*** §§ 51, 105
(***to-air*** weight ***belongs***) *Air* ***has*** *weight.* See Int. § 5 *e*
Omn**ia** cingēns, *embracing* (*surrounding*) *everything.*
Quō altius ex aequore ītur, **eō** rārior fit. § 74, 19
The *high****er*** *up-from sea-level you-go,* ***the*** *rar****er*** *it becomes.*

fluent = *flowing* § 97 **ponderous** = ***weight****y* §§ 41, 42
omnipotent = ***all****-powerful* attenuate = *make-****thin***
appetite = *a* ***seek****ing-for* § 220 **ultimatum** = ***last*** *offer*

amplecti-tur *surround-s* **patēscat** *extends, spreads out*
crassus *thick, dense* **premi-t** *press-es, weighs down*
ē, ex *up from* **īnferior** *lower* **re-sta-t** *stand-s back, remain-s*
-ior, -ius *-er* **magis** *more* **tamen** *yet, nevertheless*

[1] Study the following examples carefully.
Castra **capī** videt *he sees the camp* (*be*) ***taken.*** § 40 *b*
Imperāta faciunt *they do the* (***things*** *that are*) *commanded.*
Propter vulnera mīlitum ***because*** *of the soldiers'* ***wounds.***
Note. — If a native Latin (not Greek) noun ending in **-a** is used as the *subject of an infinitive*, as the *object of a verb* or *preposition*, it is instantly known to be *neuter* and *plural.* § 82 *d*

[2] How may the case of **aequor** be known?

[3] The gender of **āēr** and **aethēr**?

DĒ POLĪS CAELĪ AC TELLŪRIS

Stella Polāris ūnō in locō fīxa vidētur. Regiōnem illam polum **caelī** dīcimus. Cēterae stellae circum eam volvī videntur, quod tellūs circum axem suum volvitur. Tellūs volvitur ab occidente orientem versus. Stellae igitur ab oriente ad occidentem volvī videntur. Polum **tellūris** vocāmus eam partem quae sub stellā polārī posita est. Polus ipse terminus est **axis terrae**. Terminī **axis** sunt duo. Duo igitur sunt polī **tellūris**, ē quibus alter Polus Septentriōnālis, alter Austrālis appellātur. Eae regiōnēs semper frīgidae sunt. Omnia ibi frīgore rigent. Tōtō annō nix alta et glaciēs humī iacent.

Select the following from the readings, pp. 14, 18, 19.

1. Ablatives (w. prep.).
2. Ablatives (without prep.).
3. Accusatives (w. prep.).
4. Accusatives (without prep.).
5. Direct objects.
6. Predicates nominative.
7. Predicates accusative attached to direct objects.
8. All genitives.
9. All pronouns.
10. All adverbs.
11. Adjectives (comp.).
12. Adjectives (superl.).
13. Prepositions (w. Acc.).
14. Prep. (w. Abl.).
15. Verbs and pronouns understood (pp. 9, 11, 18).

annual = ***year**ly, of a **year***
biennially = *every two **years***
glacier = *stream of **ice***
exhume = *un**earth*** § 220, 6
adjacent = *that **lie** near*
(Sierra) **Nev**ada = ***snow**-capped*
rigidity = ***stiff**ness*
post**position**e = ***placed** after*
subscribe = *write (name) **under***
exterminate = *put an **end** to*

humī (Loc.) *on the ground* § 76
ibi *in it, there, among them*
igitur *therefore, then*
ipse (emphatic) ***himself**, **itself***
nix, **nive** *snow* § 78
omn-ia *all (things), every-thing*
quae, **quem**, **quibus** *which, that*
rigent *are rigid, stiff, frozen*
posit-a *situated, placed, put*
versus, **versum** *-ward, toward*

DĒ IV. ANNĪ TEMPORIBUS

Aliās sōl ad septentriōnem scandit. Tum altus in caelō vidētur. Plūs **lūcis** atque **calōris** nōbīs ministrat. Hoc diēs longōs facit. Noctīs item brevīs facit. Tum terra calēscit. Tempestās calida fit. Aliās sōl ad austrum dēscendit. Nōbīs minus **calōris lūcis**que ministrat. Haec rēs brevīs diēs, noctīs longās facit. Terra frīgēscit. Tempestās frīgida fit. Quā dē causā quattuor **annī** tempora sunt. **Eōrum** ūnum tempus est Vēr. Aliud tempus Aestās vocātur. Tertium Autumnus, quārtum Hiems dīcitur. § 150

DĒ VĒRE

Vēre sōl in caelō scandit. Singulī diēs longiōrēs fīunt. Singulae noctēs breviōrēs fīunt. Sōl **vēris** calēscit. Nix **hiemis** liquēscit. Auster pluviam fert. Herba ē terrā nāscitur. Nūdī agrī iterum viridēs fīunt. Arborēs folia prōdūcunt. Avēs ex austrō revertuntur. Silvae cantū sonant. Flōrēs aperiuntur. Iuvat in agrōs silvāsque exīre. Iuvat loca hieme dēserta vidēre. Bovēs iterum per collīs et vallīs herbā pāscuntur. Virī et puerī cum equīs exeunt. In agrīs labōrant. Agrōs arant. Sēmina et arborēs serunt. Arborēs serit dīligēns agricola, **quārum** adspiciet frūctum ipse numquam. Serit arborēs, quae alterī saeculō prōsint. § 140

arable (land) = *tillable* (land)
aviator = *bird**man***
bovine = *of **cows*** §§ 80, 219, 2
calorie = *measure of **heat***

nude = ***bare*** **pastor** = ***feeder***
sonorous = *loud **sound**ing*
tempest = (*rough*) *weather* § 78
verdure = ***green, green** things*

ad-spici-e-t *shall-look-upon*
iuvat *it helps, is pleasant*

prōsint *may be useful* § 220, 12
seru-nt *they sow* or *plant*

DĒ AESTĀTE

Aestāte sōl altus in caelō est. Sōl **aestātis** calidus. Nōs calōre suō ūrit. Terra calida est. Caelum serēnum atque caeruleum. Diēs longissimī, noctēs brevissimae sunt. Prīmā aestāte rūra flōrea sunt. Omnia flōrent. Apēs per agrōs vagantur. Mel dulce ē flōribus legunt. Cōpiam **mellis** sibi faciunt atque in hiemem servant. Cōpia **pābulī** esse incipit. Frūctūs mātūrēscere incipiunt. Hominēs pābulum metere incipiunt. Cōpiam **pābulī** equīs et bōbus cōnficiunt atque in hiemem servant. Frūctūs mātūrōs legere incipiunt. Cōpiam **frūctuum** sibi cōnficiunt atque in hiemem servant. Mediā aestāte frūmenta mātūrēscunt. Agrīs color est aureus. Frūmentum mātūrum metitur. Cōpia **frūmentī** cōnficitur atque in reliquum annum servātur. Extrēmā aestāte omnia calōre ūruntur. Agrī āridī sunt. Flōrēs ārēscunt. Herba ārēscit. Bovēs inopiā **aquae** labōrant. Omnia sitī labōrant. Omnia umbrās **arborum** et frīgus petunt.

Make a list of the genitives (pp. 9–11, 14, 20–1 ; cf. p. 7, obs.).

apiary = ***bee*** *farm* **arid** = ***dried***
auri-ferous = ***gold-bearing***
copiously = *with a good* ***supply***
extremity = ***last*** *part, end* § 92
flourish = ***bloom***, *blossom*
fructiferous = ***fruit-bearing***
hibernate = *sleep over* ***winter***
incipient = ***beginning*** § 130
pervade = *go* ***through*** § 220, 10
reserve = ***keep*** *back,* ***stow*** *away,* ***store*** *up,* ***save*** *up* § 220, 13
rural = *of the* (***country***), ***fields***
umbrella = *little* ***shade***
combustible = *easily* ***burned***

aureus *golden, of gold* § 109 *c*
caeruleum *blue, azure*
dulce *sweet, pleasant*
labōra-nt *suffer, toil* § 136
meti-tur *is reaped* § 136
pābulum *fodder*
sitī *on account of thirst* § 74, 15
ūri-t *burn-s, scorch-es* § 220, 4

DĒ AUTUMNŌ

Autumnō sōl paulātim ad austrum dēscendit. Singulī diēs **breviōrēs** fīunt. Singulae item noctēs **longiōrēs** sunt. Tempestās **frīgidior** esse incipit. Prīmō autumnō arborēs frūctibus curvant. Zephyrus lēniter spīrat. Sōl autumnī iam nōn ūrit. Autumnus omnibus **grātus** est.

Frīgus autem in diēs singulōs crēscit. Folia arborum paulātim variōs trahunt colōrēs. Terra frīgēscit. Iam agrī māne pruīnā albēscere incipiunt. Herba paulātim moritur. Tum dēmum folia ārēscunt, moriuntur, cadunt. Hinc atque hinc pīnūs **nigrae** stant. Reliquae arborēs **nūdae** foliīs sunt. Avēs in austrum migrant. Hominēs mātūrant ultimōs frūctūs legere, bovēs ex agrīs cōgere, omnia in hiemem parāre. § 127

Extrēmō autumnō caelum nūbibus obscūrēscit. Ventus saevit atque arboribus sonat. Madēns auster gelidum imbrem fert. Omnēs hominēs tēctum petunt et circum focum suum congregantur. § 182

Select from the readings (pp. 20–23). (See obs., pp. 5, 16, 18.)

1. Neuters in **-um** (Nom.), **-a** (Acc.), or **-a** (pl.).
2. Nouns shown by adjectives to be feminine. § 55 *f.*
3. Masculine and feminine nouns having the same ending.
4. Ablative of (*a*) time, (*b*) means, (*c*) with preposition.

decadent = ***falling down*** § 220, 5
crescent (moon) = ***growing*** ——
emigrate = ***move out*** § 220, 6
respiration = ***breathing***
attract = ***draw*** *to-self*, ***take*** *on*
detecting = *uncovering*

dēmum *finally* **focum** *hearth*
gelidum *icy, cold, chilly*
imbrem *rain* **lēn-iter** *soft-ly*
mātūra-nt *hasten* **nigrae** *dark*
paulātim *by degrees* **pīnūs** *pines*
saevi-t *rave-s* **stant** *stand* (*out*)

DĒ HIEME

Hieme **sōl** humilis ab austrō vidētur. Merīdiē vix calēscit. Brevissimī **diēs, noctēs** longissimae sunt. Nam ad occāsum properat **sōl hībernus**; **nox hīberna** morātur ac tardātur. In diēs frīgēscit. **Terra** frīgore et pruīnā rigēscit. **Tempestās** perfrīgida fit.

Prīmā hieme nix in altīs montibus esse incipit. **Cōpia** nivis in diēs crēscit. **Omnia loca superiōra** paulātim nive albēscunt. **Flūmina et lacūs** rigent gelū. Post paulō **īnferiōra** quoque **loca** nive alba sunt. **Caelum** iam serēnum iam nūbibus obscūrum est.

Tum dēmum **summa hiems** in terram ruit. **Ventī** per terrās turbine flant. **Omnia** furōre tempestātis miscentur. **Nox ātra** terrae impendet. **Hiems** omnia nive cingit. Multōs diēs **tempestās** furit. Posteā **fragor** ventōrum cadit. **Boreās** nūbīs fugat atque caelum serēnat. **Omnia** silent. Tum **sōl, lūna et lūcida sīdera** omnīs agrōs silvāsque nive candidās dēspiciunt.

Select from the readings, pp. 20–23, nouns and adjectives whose declension is known by endings, viz.: §§ 52, 55 *c*

1. **-a** (sing.), **-ās** (Ac.), **-ae**, **-ā**, or **-ārum**	First Declension.
2. **-um** (N.), **-ī** (G.), **-ō** (D. Ab.), **-ī** (pl.), **-ōs**	Second Declension.
3. **-e** (Ac.), **-ī** (Ab.), **-īs** (Ac.), or **-is**	Third Declension.
4. **-ū**, **-ūs** (G.), **-ūs** (pl.), **-uum** (G.)	Fourth Declension.

album = ***white*** (*paged book*)
hibernate = *sleep during* ***winter***
pro**miscu**ous = ***mixed*** *up*
summit = ***highest*** *point*
tardiness = ***slowness*** § 182

ātra *black* **in diēs** *daily*
impendet *over-hangs, hovers over*
rui-t *fall-s, burst-s upon* § 136 *e*
sile-nt *are still, are* ***silent***
turbine *in a whirl* § 78 *a*

LIFE IN ANCIENT ITALY

Let us take a peep into Central Italy of two thousand years ago. What shall we see in the land of those neighbors of ours, who lived out their lives under that famous old "Republic," which had gathered up and was still gathering the fruits of the many civilizations that had gone before, and whose lofty aims and all-embracing power were already showing signs of decline when Christ was born? Where shall we look first? (p. xiv, 7.)

In Ītaliā sumus. Longē ā Rōmā absumus. Nam nōbīs est in animō circum Arpīnum paululum errāre. Arpīnum oppidum est Latī. Oppidānī Latīnī sunt et latīnē loquuntur. Sed cīvēs Rōmānī dīcuntur, propterea quod sub imperiō Rōmānō versantur. Iam diū cīvitāte dōnātī sunt.

Apud Arpīnum stāmus. Ibi multōs īre et venīre vidēmus. Aliī ex oppidō, aliī ex agrīs veniunt. Hī Arpīnum eunt; illī Arpīnō exeunt. Aliī oppidānī, aliī agricolae sunt. Servī cum puerīs veniunt. Hī equīs, illī pedibus eunt. Puerōs legimus; nam eōs maximē amāmus. Duōs ē multīs ēligimus. Iī nōn longē ab nōbīs absunt; nam eōs latīnē loquī audīmus. §§ 185, 212

Select (pp. 10, 24–5) *a*. Neuters; *b*. Genitives; *c*. Ablatives.

Nōbīs es-t in animō errāre *we have in mind to stray;*
(to-us is-it in mind to-wander) *we intend to wander.*

auditor = ***hearer*** § 207 **versa**tile = *able to* **turn** *the hands to many things,* ***lively***
erratic = ***wandering***

dōnātī sunt (*are having-been-presented*) *have been* or *were presented* § 101 **imperiō** *government, rule* § 77 *b* **Latī** *of Latium* **Latīnī** *Latins*

iam *now* **iam diū** *long since* **latīnē** *in* (*the*) *Latin* (*manner*) **oppidānī** *town's people*

Hī puerī amīcī sunt. Alterum Theodōrum, alterum Aemilium appellāmus. Theodōrus male loquitur. Aemilius bene et latīnē loquitur. Nam hic Rōmānus, ille Graecus est. Aemilius fīlius est cīvis Rōmānī quī nōn longē ab oppidō in fundō habitat. Theodōrus fīlius est magistrī quī Arpīnī habitat.

Saepe māne puerōs ā fundō venīre et Arpīnum īre vidēmus. Saepe vesperī eōs ex oppidō in fundum proficīscī vidēmus. Equō semper eunt. Aliās et Theodōrus et Aemilius ex oppidō exīre videntur et posterō diē in oppidum revertī; aliās Aemilius sōlus vesperī domum redit sōlusque māne in oppidum venit.

Quid agunt? Discipulī sunt. In lūdum cotīdiē eunt. Pater Theodōrī lūdī magister est. Is Appolonius appellātur. Aemilius autem fīlius est Paulī. Paulus appellātur Lūcius Aemilius Paulus. Plērīque enim Rōmānī tribus nōminibus vocantur. Plērīsque Graecīs ūnum tantum nōmen.

Diē (p. 12) shows **diēs** to be of the *fifth* declension.
Select *two forms each* of nouns to show their declension.

-em and **-e** (pp. 3, 11, 13); and
-em and **-ē** (p. 13); and
-īs and **-ī**, **-ōs** (pp. 21, 24–5)
-īs and **-ae** (pp. 8, 10) First
-ibus and **-a** (p. 11); and

-īs and **-ēs** (pp. 11, 20, 23) Third
-ēs and **-ē** or **-ēbus** (p. 8) Fifth
-īs and **-a**, **-ī** (pp. 20, 22) Second
-ibus and **-ūs** (p. 22) Fourth
-ēs and **-ibus** (pp. 21–2) Third

benevolent = *wishing* ***well*** § 69
elude = ***play*** *out of reach of*
malcontent = ***ill*** *satisfied*
cotīdiē *every day, daily*
fundus *river bottom, farm, plantation, estate*

paternal = ***father****ly*, ***father****'s*
solitary = ***alone***, ***lone****ly*
revert = ***turn*** *back* § 220, 13
in lūdum *to school* § 74, 10, 12
posterō diē *on the following day*
red-i-t *go-es back* § 220, 13

IN LŪDŌ LITTERĀRIŌ

Lūdus Arpīnī est. Summī eius regiōnis virī fīliōs eō mittunt. Ibi puerī legunt, scrībunt, numerīs operam dant. Ibi et Graeca et Latīna discunt. Romānī enim hōc tempore maximam litterīs Graecīs operam dant. Philosophōs Graecōs sequuntur. (Omnēs adhūc maximī poētae, ōrātōrēs, philosophī Graecī sunt.) Nūllus adhūc Rōmānus aut summus poēta aut philosophus est. Itaque Rōmānī et graecē et latīnē loquuntur. Magistrīs Graecīs ūtuntur. Prīmō domī hīs studiīs operam dant. Posteā Rōmam, Athēnās, Rhodum eius reī causā proficīscuntur.

Appolonius pūrē et graecē loquitur. (Hic nōn est Appolonius ille, quī multōs annōs Rhodī magister artis dīcendī erat. Ille Appolonius Molō appellātus est. Noster Appolonius Sardibus in Ītalìam vēnit.) Theodōrus latīnē loquī discit. Cēterī discipulī bene et latīnē loquuntur. Aemilius bene et graecē loquī vult. Et eius reī causā socium sibi Theodōrum ascīscit.

Quid hodiē agunt? Nōs cum puerīs in lūdum ingredimur. Hī prīmō numerīs operam dant. Eōs numerāre audīmus. Ūnā cum eīs numerāmus. Nam nōbīs quoque discendī sunt numerī Latīnī. Ita eōs discere cupimus. Cum Aemiliō et Theodōrō numerōs et mēnsūrās discimus atque eōdem tempore cum nostrīs numerīs et mēnsūrīs comparāmus.

consequent = ***following*** *up*
cupidity = ***eager***ness, ***desir***e
discipline = ***learning***, ***train***ing
in-gredients = *things* **go**ing ***in***
a-scīsci-t *take-s, accept-s* § 220
eō *to it* § 119 *d* **ita** *so, therefore*
mensuration = ***measur***ing
enumerate = ***count*** *out* § 220, 6
society = ***companion***ship
utilize = *make* ***use*** *of*, ***employ***
operam dant *pay heed, study*
summī *prominent, great* § 92

POMPEII AS SEEN FROM AN AËROPLANE

DĒ NUMERĪS

Numerōrum quīnque genera sunt. Ūnum genus est eōrum quī ipsum numerum indicant. Huius generis sunt **ūnus, duo, trēs, quattuor, quīnque, sex** et cētera. Hī indicant dē quot numerō rēbus agātur. Numerī *cardinālēs* appellantur. Paucī ex hīs dēclīnantur; plērīque semper īdem scrībuntur.

Alterum genus est eōrum quibus ōrdō indicātur Huius generis sunt **prīmus, alter, tertius, quārtus, quīntus, sextus,** et cētera. Hīs indicātur nōn vērus numerus sed dē quotā ōrdine rē agātur. Hī omnēs dēclīnantur prīmā et secundā dēclīnātiōne. Numerī *ōrdinālēs* dīcuntur, quod tantum ōrdinem nōtant.

Tertium genus est eōrum quī singulīs totidem numerō rēs attribuunt. Huius generis sunt **singulī, bīnī, ternī, quaternī, quīnī, sēnī,** et cētera. Hīs indicātur quotēnae rēs singulīs tribuantur. Omnēs prīmae et secundae dēclīnātiōnis sunt, plērumque plūrālēs. Hī numerī *distribuentēs* appellantur.

Quārtum genus (Nom.) is neuter. See note, p. 5, and §§ 42, 54. What is the acc. sing. and pl. of **genus**? **tempus** (p. 20)? **aliud lūmen**. **id lūmen** (pp. 5, 10)? **sīdus** (p. 11)? **nōmen** (p. 29)?

general = *relating to a* ***class***
identity = ***sameness*** § 112 *b*
agātur *it is treated, account is taken, one speaks, discusses*
est eōrum *consists of those*
tot *so many* **quot** *as many* § 64
totidem *just as many* § 119 *b*
inscribe = ***write*** *upon* § 220, 7
tribute = *what is* ***given***
dē quotā (ōrdine) rē *about which thing (in order)*
quotēnae . . . singulīs, *how many . . . (to) each*
tribuant *assign, give* cf. § 139

Quārtum genus est eōrum quī dē duplicandō, dē triplicandō, dē multiplicandō agunt. Huius generis sunt **simplex**, **duplex**, **triplex**, **quadruplex**, **quīncuplex**, et cētera. Hī indicant quam multae sint reī plicātūrae. Omnēs dēclīnātiōne tertiā dēclīnantur. Omnēs adhūc numerī nōmina adiectīva sunt.

Quīntum genus est adverbiōrum numerālium. Huius generis sunt **semel**, **bis**, **ter**, **quater**, **quīnquiēns**, **sexiēns**, et cētera. Haec indicant quotiēns fīat, quotiēns numerētur, quotiēns repetātur aut capiātur. Adverbia nōn dēclīnantur sed eadem ubīque scrībuntur.

Maximus numerus Latīnus est **mīlle**. "Mīlle librī" scrībere licet. Suprā hunc numerum necesse est **duo mīlia librōrum**, **centum mīlia librōrum**, **bis centēna mīlia librōrum** scrībere. **Mīlia** nōmen est substantīvum. Quā dē causā cāsus genitīvus eī ubīque succēdit.

Find the bases of nouns (pp. 28–9) by comparing forms (§ 54).

adjective = ***added name*** *denoting quality* — **duplicate** = *the* ***double*** *of* — **substantive** = (*name*) ***standing out by itself*** — **biscuit** = ***twice*** *cooked* § 83 — **capiātur** (*a thing*) *is taken* — **plicātūrae** *folds, repetitions* — **fīat** (*something*) *is done* § 213 — **sim-plex** *one-fold, simple* — **-iēns, -iēs** *times* § 120 *g* — **suc-cēdi-t** *come-s up* or *after* — **lice-t** *it is lawful, permitted* — **ubī-** *-where* **-que** *every-* § 119 *e*

Indeclinable Numerals. (Many numerals are declined, § 120.)

quīnque *five* quīnquiēns *5-times* **decem** *ten* deciēs *10-times* quīn**decim** *fifteen* quīndeciēs *15-times* **vīgintī** *twenty* vīciēs *20-times* **vīciēs quīnquiēs** *25-times* **vīgintī quīnque** *25* quīnquāgintā *fifty* quīnquāgiēs *50-times* **centum** *hundred* **centi**ēns *100-times* quīn**gentiēs** *5-hundred times* **mīlle** *1000*

DĒ COLŌRIBUS

Colōrēs radiīs lūcis fīunt. Nocte obscūrā nūllus cernitur color. Absente lūce, color abest. Cum prīmum lūcēscit, omnia colōrēs propriōs trahunt. Suus quidem cuique color est. Tenebrae ātrae vel nigrae dīcuntur, quod colōrem habent nūllum.

Lūx clāra candida est. Sed lūcī sunt radiī variī. Omnēs coniūnctī atque iūstīs modīs mixtī albam vel candidam faciunt lūcem. Dispersī ac sēparātī aliī aliō sunt colōre. Nōnnūllī oculīs cernī nōn possunt. § 62 *g*

Colōrum īnfīnīta varietās. Dē paucīs ac summīs breviter dīcendum est. Nix alba vel candida est. Sanguis ruber. Rosae variae sunt. Aliae albō colōre; aliae vīvō, aliae suāvī rubrō; nōnnūllae etiam flāvō. Aurō color est flāvus. Herbae arborumque foliīs viridis. Caelō ac marī caeruleus. Violae violāceus. Inter caeruleum autem et violāceum est color caeruleus obscūrus, quī Indicus vocātur. Summī igitur colōrēs sunt **ruber, luteus, flāvus, viridis, caeruleus, indicus, violāceus.**

Select (pp. 28–9, 30): *a.* Indicatives; *b.* Subjunctives (§ 216); *c.* Datives; *d.* Ablatives; *e.* Masculine nouns. See § 55 *f*.

Suus cui-que color est, *every thing has its* (its-own to-each-thing color is) *particular color.* § 105. Int. § 5 *e*

Omnēs coniūnctī (*when* or *if*) *all* (are) *taken together* (§ 95): **et iūstīs modīs mixtī** *and* (if) *mixed in the right proportions.* **Dispersī ac sēparātī** (*if* or *when*) *scattered and separated.* **Dīcendum est** *it is to-be-spoken, we must speak.*

indigo = *Indian blue*
property = *what is one's own*
sanguinary = *bloody*
cum prīmum *when first, as soon as*
possunt *can* **quidem** *indeed* § 69
summī *most important*

DĒ MĒNSŪRĀ TEMPORIS

Tempus hōrīs, diēbus, mēnsibus, annīs, saeculīs mētīmur. Brevissimum spatium pūnctum temporis dīcimus. Modī igitur temporis sunt pūnctum, hōra, diēs, mēnsis, annus, saeculum. Quā ratiōne tempora nōtāmus, dē eā nunc legē-
mus.

Apud nōs diēs initium capit ā mediā nocte. Pertinet ad mediam noctem proximam. Tempus diēī aut noctis hōrā nōtāmus, ut sextā hōrā Ante Merīdiem [6 A.M.] vel decimā hōrā Post Merīdiem [10 P. M.]. Ā mediā nocte ad merīdiem hōrās duodecim numerāmus. Ā merīdiē ad mediam noctem posteram hōrās duodecim numerāmus. Diēs igitur in vīgintī quattuor hōrās dīvīsus est.

Trīgintā diērum spatium vulgō mēnsis habētur. Tempora mēnsis numerō vērō diēī indicāmus, ut prīmō diē, secundō diē, tertiō diē, quārtō diē, reliquīsque ōrdine diēbus ūsque ad ultimum diem mēnsis.

Annus est in duodecim mēnsīs dīvīsus. Quōrum prīmus est Ianuārius, ultimus December. Septembrī sunt diēs trīgintā; Aprīlī, Iūniō, Novembrī totidem. Reliquīs omni-
bus praeter Februārium sunt diēs trīgintā ūnus. Huic mēnsī sōlī sunt diēs duodētrīgintā.

Omnibus ita complētīs mēnsibus, vērus annus exāctus nōn est. Quārta ferē pars diēī reliqua est. Semel igitur quattuor annōrum spatiō ūnus addendus est diēs. Is diēs mēnsī brevissimō additur Februāriō. Hoc quadriennium

addendus est *is to be added, has to be added* § 104
initium capi-t *take-s its start*
mēnsī sunt *they measured* § 101
metī-mur *we measure* § 211
modus *limit, measure*

paulō longius facit. Is igitur diēs omittendus interdum est. Quod accidit ter annōrum quadringentum spatiō. Tempus annī mēnsī et diē nōtātur, ut diē septimō mēnsis Mārtī [March 7] aut diē vīcēnsimō septimō mēnsis Maī.

Spatium centum annōrum saeculum dīcitur. Tempus saeculī annō indicāmus, ut annō nōnāgēnsimō octāvō ['98]. Omnēs ferē gentēs tempus hodiē indicant numerō annī post Chrīstum nātum aut ante Chrīstum nātum. Ita dīcimus Annō Domīnī mīllēnsimō quadringentēnsimō nōnāgēnsimō secundō Columbum Americam invēnisse et annō quadrāgēnsimō quārtō ante Chrīstum Caesarem interfectum. § 182 *b*

Omnēs ferē gentēs tempus hodiē mētiuntur atque indicant, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Rōmānī quidem tempus mēnsī sunt eīsdem ferē modīs quibus nōs ūtimur. Addenda sunt autem bīduum, trīduum, quadrīduum. Nam prō duōbus diēbus illī **bīduum** dīxēre. Ad hōs quōs suprā dīximus modōs accēdēbant biennium, triennium, quadriennium, et cētera. Spatium annōrum duōrum **biennium** dīxērunt.

Sed longē aliā ratiōne hōrās diēī et diēs mēnsis nōtāvēre ac numerāvēre. Annī autem apud Rōmānōs cōnsulibus nōtātī sunt. Temporibus enim reī pūblicae Rōmānae Chrīstus nōndum nātus est. Et trecentīs post annīs imperātōribus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī ille vix nōtus fuit. Quid plūra? Hae rēs in longiōrem diem cōnferendae sunt. § 67

ac-cēdē-ba-nt *were add-ed*
cōnferendae sunt *are to be put off, must be put off*
eīsdem *by the same* — **quibus** *as*
fu-it *he-was, has been* § 115 *b*
inter-dum *between whiles, at times*
nōn-dum *not yet*
nātus est *was born* § 101 *a*
quod *and this, which, that*
spatium *period, lapse* § 77 *b*

DĒ SPATIŌ

Intervāllum temporis Rōmānī spatium vocant. Intervāllum locī apud eōs et spatium vocātur. Saepius autem dē locō quam dē tempore dīcitur. Omnia suum locī modum occupant. Omnia suum spatī modum continent. Omnia in spatiō sunt ibique continentur. §§ 62 *b*, 74, 3, 5

Spatiō omnī nūllus est modus aut terminus, nūllum initium aut fīnis. Sine fīne in longitūdinem pertinet. Sine fīnibus in longitūdinem et in lātitūdinem patet. Sine terminō in altitūdinem pertinet. Nūllā ex parte fīnibus coërcētur aut continētur. Atque praeter fīnīs in omnīs partīs patēscit. Spatium immēnsum, īnfīnītum, interminātum. Id tamen vacuum nōn nōvimus. Spatium omne terrā aut aquā, āere aut aethere plēnum.

Ratiōne, dēclīnātiōnis, aestās, aestāte, altitūdinem are feminine. Select feminine nouns (pp. 12, 17, 20–21, 23, 28, 30, 33).

Select (pp. 23, 29, 31–32): *a*. Nominative forms; *b*. Ablatives.

Write out the declension: p. 33, **modus** (§ 75); **omnia** (§ 79 *b*); **nūllā** (like **ūna**, § 120); **terrā** (§ 77 *a*); **initium, intervāllum** (§ 77 *b*); p. 32, **bīduum** and **biennium** (sing. only, § 77 *b*); **trecentīs** (pl. § 120 *d*); p. 29, **duplicandō** (§ 129); **librōrum** (§ 76); **mīlia** (§ 120 *c*); **generis** (like **vulnus**, § 78 *b*); **hī** (*these, they*, like pl. §§ 75, 117 *b*); p. 20, **tempus** (**tempor-**) sing. only (cf. § 78 *b*); **loca** (pl. like **castra**, § 77 *b*); **locus** (§ 75).

con-tine-nt *with-hold, hold in, con-tain, bound, occupy*
īn-fīnī-tum *un-end-ed* § 98
in-mēn-sum *un-measure-d*
ibi *in it* **locī** *of space, room*
nōvimus *we have found out, know*
omnī *all, as-a-whole* § 88
pate-t *lie-s open, extend-s*
per-tine-t *reach-es, extend-s*
praeter (w. Acc.) *beyond, past*

ALIA STUDIA

In lūdō Rōmānō omnia dīligenter in studiīs versantur. Hī legunt, hī scrībunt. Nōnnūllī mēnsūrīs spatī, circulī, ponderis operam dant. Aliī arithmetica discunt. Appolonius eōs multa dē gravitāte, dē spatiō, dē mōtibus sīderum docet. Longum est omnia studia magistrī puerōrumque perspicere. Sed pauca ac summa nōtābimus, quae iam nōbīs magnō erunt ūsuī ad librōs Caesaris, Cicerōnis, Vergilī aliōrumque scrīptōrum Rōmānōrum legendōs. § 159 *g*

Theodōrus, ut iam ante dīximus, Graecus est et latīnē loquī discit. Audit reliquōs dīcere: proximā nocte dē tertiā hōrā lūnam orīrī; servum prīmā vigiliā venīre.

Ille rem difficilem habet hōrās diēī ac noctis rēctē et latīnē dīcere. Etiam nunc multa dē eā rē ex Aemiliō quaerit. Aemilius haec omnia, ut potest, explicat atque prōpōnere cōnātur. Haec rēs nōbīs tantum negōtī quantum Theodōrō facit. Quā dē causā, quod in longiōrem diem collātūrī fuimus, repraesentābimus; et hodiē discēmus, quā ratiōne Rōmānī hōrās diēī numerent et quō modō diēs mēnsis dīcant. Deinde quōsdam labōrēs cotīdiānōs sequēmur nōtābimusque quantum differant ab nostrā cōnsuētūdine. § 119 *b*

explicit = *well* ***explained***

-bi-, -ē- *shall-, will-* § 164
ĉollāt-ūr-ī *going to put off*
habe-t *ha-s, hold-s, regard-s*
iam *now, soon, already*
et-iam *even, also* **nunc** *now*
in (w. Acc.) *till, for, unto*
nōtā-bi-mus *we shall notice*

ponderous = *having great* ***weight***

per-spicere *look through, over*
prō-pōnere *set forth, explain*
re-praesentā-bi-mus *shall bring back to the present, do now*
scrīp-tor *writ-er*
sequ-ē-mur *we shall follow*
tantum *as-much . . .* **quantum** *as*

DĒ HŌRĪS DIĒĪ ET VIGILIĪS NOCTIS

Apud illōs diēs initium capit ab ortū sōlis; pertinet ad occāsum sōlis. Sed singulī diēs semper aut longiōrēs aut breviōrēs fīunt. Vēre, cum longiōrēs fīunt, sōl in diēs oritur mātūrius paulō, paulō tardius occidit. Itemque autumnō, cum noctēs longiōrēs fīunt, ortum retardat, occāsum mātūrat. Numquam duōs continuōs diēs eādem longitūdine invenīmus neque duās umquam continuās eādem longitūdine noctīs.

Rōmānī quemque diem sīve longum sīve brevem in hōrās duodecim dīvidunt. Quā rē fit, utī, longiōre diē, quaeque hōra paulō longior sit; item, breviōre diē, quaeque hōra paulō brevior sit. Sexta hōra circiter merīdiem est; occidēns hōrae duodecimae sōl fīnem dat.

Noctem nōnnumquam in hōrās duodecim, saepius autem in quattuor vigiliās dīvidunt, quod urbis et castrōrum vigiliae quārtam partem noctis vigilant et per noctem quater mūtantur. Ita vigilia est quārta pars noctis. Spatium vigiliae aestimātur hōrārum circiter trium. Sed noctēs nōnnumquam longiōrēs, aliās breviōrēs sunt. Quā dē causā fit, utī mediā aestāte propter noctium brevitātem vigiliae brevissimae sint; itemque summā hieme propter brevitātem diērum vigiliae longissimae sint.

Select (pp. 31, 32, 33, 35) **-ā-**, **-ē-**, **-e-** verb forms (§§ 187–201); Irregular verbs (§ 212); **-ī-** verb forms; *e.g.* **mētīmur** (§ 207).

cum (**quon-**, **um-**) *when, at which time, at what time*
um-quam *at any time, ever*
n-umquam *at no time, n-ever*
nōn-numquam *sometimes* § 119 *b*
-que *and*
item-que *and likewise.* Cf. § 119 *a, b*
quem-que, **quae-que** *every (one)*
sit (Sub.) *be, is, shall be* § 183
utī (w. Sub.) *that;* (w. Ind.) *as*

DĒ DIĒBUS MĒNSIS

Apud Rōmānōs prīncipēs mēnsium diēs erant Kalendae et Īdūs. Prīmus diēs mēnsis ā pontifice calābātur et Calendae sīve Kalendae dīcēbātur. Īdūs Mārtiae erant diēs quīntus decimus mēnsis Mārtī. Itemque Īdūs Maiae, Iūliae, Octōbrēs diēs quīntus decimus. Cēterōrum mēnsium Īdūs dīcēbātur tertius decimus diēs. Nōnae cuiusque mēnsis vocābātur diēs nōnus ante Īdūs.

Diēbus numerandīs nōs respicimus. Rōmānī autem semper prōspexēre. Illī enim dīcēbant nōn ipsum diēī numerum vel quot diēbus post Kalendās mēnsis fieret sed quot diēbus ante posterās Nōnās vel Īdūs vel proximās Kalendās. Sī quid accidit prīmō diē mēnsis Mārtī, illī dīxēre id Kalendīs Mārtiīs fierī. Sī quis secundō diē Mārtī vēnit, dīxērunt eum ante diem sextum Nōnās Mārtiās (a. d. VI. Nōn. Mārt.) venīre; sī tertiō diē Mārtī, ante diem quīntum Nōnās Mārtiās (a. d. V. Nōn. Mārt.). Et quod nōbīs plūs negōtī facit, apud illōs mōs erat numerāre et Nōnās aut Īdūs aut Kalendās, ante quās fierī dīcerent, et diem, quō rēs fieret. Quā dē causā fit, utī apud eōs numerus semper ūnō māior sit quam apud nōs.

Select: *a.* First and Third Declension *noun* forms
b. First and Second Declension *adjective* forms

Calends = *days to be* ***called*** *out* — **approxim**ate = ***next*** *to,* ***close*** *to*
moral = *conforming to* ***custom*** — **pontific**al = ***priestly*** § 220, 2

faci-t *make-s, cause-s, do-es* — **Nōnae** *Nones, 9th day before Ides*
fie-rī *be done, become, happen* — **cuius-que** *of each, of every*
Īd-ūs *Ide-s* **Īd-ibus** *on the Ides* — **sī** *if* **quid** *any(thing)* § 71
Mārtī, Mārtiae (Adj.) *of March* — **quot** *how many* § 64

KALENDĀRIUM

	Dates given in full	Abbreviated
On Dec. 1.	**Kalendīs Decembribus.**	**Kal. Dec.**
On Dec. 2.	quārtō (diē ante) Nōnās Decembrīs.	IV. Nōn. Dec.
	or ante diem quārtum Nōnās Decembrīs.	a.d. IV. Nōn. Dec.
On Dec. 3.	tertiō (diē ante) Nōnās Decembrīs.	III. Nōn. Dec.
	or ante diem tertium Nōnās Decembrīs.	a.d. III. Nōn. Dec.
On Dec. 4.	prīdiē Nōnās Decembrīs.	prīd. Nōn. Dec.
On Dec. 5.	**Nōnīs Decembribus.**	**Nōn. Dec.**
On Dec. 6.	octāvō (diē ante) Īdūs Decembrīs.	VIII. Īd. Dec.
	or ante diem octāvum Īdūs Decembrīs.	a.d. VIII. Īd. Dec.
On Dec. 13.	**Īdibus Decembribus.**	**Īd. Dec.**
On Dec. 14.	ūndēvicēsimō Kalendās Ianuāriās.	XIX. Kal. Ian.
	or ante diem XIX. Kalendās Ianuāriās.	a.d. XIX. Kal. Ian.
On Dec. 15.	duodēvīcēsimō Kalendās Ianuāriās.	XVIII. Kal. Ian.

Kalendārium Iūliānum

Our Days	March, May, July, October	January, August, December	September, April, June, November	February
1	**Kal.**	**Kal.**	**Kal.**	**Kal.**
2	a.d. VI. Nōn.	a.d. IV. Nōn	a.d. IV. Nōn.	a.d. IV. Nōn.
3	a.d. V. Nōn.	a.d. III. Nōn.	a.d. III. Nōn.	a.d. III. Nōn.
4	a.d IV. Nōn.	prīd. Nōn.	prīd. Nōn.	prīd. Nōn.
5	a.d. III. Nōn.	**Nōn.**	**Nōn.**	**Nōn.**
6	prīd. Nōn.	a.d. VIII. Īd.	a.d. VIII. Īd.	a.d. VIII. Īd.
7	**Nōn.**	a.d. VII. Īd.	a.d. VII. Īd.	a.d. VII. Īd.
8	a.d. VIII. Īd.	a.d. VI. Īd.	a.d. VI. Īd.	a.d. VI. Īd.
9	a.d. VII. Īd.	a.d. V. Īd.	a.d. V. Īd.	a.d. V. Īd.
10	a.d. VI. Īd.	a.d. IV. Īd.	a.d. IV. Īd.	a.d. IV. Īd.
11	a.d. V. Īd.	a.d. III. Īd.	a.d. III. Īd.	a.d. III. Īd.
12	a.d. IV. Īd.	prīd. Īd.	prīd. Īd.	prīd. Īd.
13	a.d. III. Īd.	**Īd.**	**Īd.**	**Īd.**
14	prīd. Īd.	a.d. XIX. Kal.	a.d. XVIII. Kal.	a.d. XVI. Kal.
15	**Īd.**	a.d. XVIII. Kal.	a.d. XVII. Kal.	a.d. XV. Kal.
16	a.d. XVII. Kal.	a.d. XVII. Kal.	a.d. XVI. Kal.	a.d. XIV. Kal.
17	a.d. XVI. Kal.	a.d. XVI. Kal.	a.d. XV. Kal.	a.d. XIII. Kal.
18	a.d. XV. Kal.	a.d. XV. Kal.	a.d. XIV. Kal.	a.d. XII. Kal.
19	a.d. XIV. Kal.	a.d. XIV. Kal.	a.d. XIII. Kal.	a.d. XI. Kal.
20	a.d. XIII. Kal.	a.d. XIII. Kal.	a.d. XII. Kal.	a.d. X. Kal.
21	a.d. XII. Kal.	a.d. XII. Kal.	a.d. XI. Kal.	a.d. IX. Kal.
22	a.d. XI. Kal.	a.d. XI. Kal.	a.d. X. Kal.	a.d. VIII. Kal.
23	a.d. X. Kal.	a.d. X. Kal.	a.d. IX. Kal.	a.d. VII. Kal.
24	a.d. IX. Kal.	a.d. IX. Kal.	a.d. VIII. Kal.	a.d. VI. Kal.
25	a.d. VIII. Kal.	a.d. VIII. Kal.	a.d. VII. Kal.	a.d. V. Kal.[1]
26	a.d. VII. Kal.	a.d. VII. Kal.	a.d. VI. Kal.	a.d. IV. Kal.[2]
27	a.d. VI. Kal.	a.d. VI. Kal.	a.d. V. Kal.	a.d. III. Kal.[3]
28	a.d. V. Kal.	a.d. V. Kal.	a.d. IV. Kal.	prīd. Kal.[4]
29	a.d. IV. Kal.	a.d. IV. Kal.	a.d. III. Kal.	——[5]
30	a.d. III. Kal.	a.d. III. Kal.	prīd. Kal.	
31	prīd. Kal.	prīd. Kal.		

For leap years, viz.: [1] VI. Kal. [2] V. Kal. [3] IV. Kal. [4] III. Kal. [5] prīd. Kal.

DĒ SPATĪ MĒNSŪRĀ

Montēs altī sunt. Mūrī altī aut humilēs dīcuntur. Pēs modus est altitūdinis. Altitūdinem mūrōrum pedibus mētīmur. Montīs humiliōrēs collīs vocāmus. Altitūdinem collium pedibus aestimāmus. Alius modus altitūdinis est pedēs mīlle. Altitūdō montium mīlibus pedum aestimātur.

Iter aut longum aut breve dīcimus. Līneae aut longae aut brevēs dīcuntur. Līnea sōlum in longitūdinem pertinet. Modī longitūdinis sunt pēs et passus. Modus itineris est passūs mīlle. Līneārum longitūdō pedibus vel passibus, longitūdō itinerum mīlibus passuum aestimātur.

Fīnīs aut lātōs aut angustōs arbitrāmur. Agrī aut lātī aut angustī exīstimantur. Fīnēs in longitūdinem et in lātitūdinem patent. Agrōs in longitūdinem et lātitūdinem mētīmur. Pēs et passus modī sunt longitūdinis lātitūdinisque. Longitūdō et lātitūdō pedibus, passibus, mīlibus passuum aestimantur.

Modus agrī apud Rōmānōs iugerum fuit. Nōs quoque agrum iugeribus mētīmur. Sed iugera quibus illī sunt ūsī multō minōra fuēre quam quibus nōs ūtimur. Apud illōs iugerum in longitūdinem pedum ducentum quadrāgintā et in lātitūdinem pedum centum vīgintī patēbat. § 74, 19

For the form of **iter** (line 7), see § 82 *e*. Find the bases of **pēs**, **iter**, **lātitūdō** (p. 38); **arborum**, **tenue**, **vada** (p. 39); **sīdus**, **lūmen** (p. 11); **mel**, **color**, **hiemem** (p. 21); **genus**, **ōrdō** (p. 28). What is the nom. and acc. sing. of each? (p. 5, note.)

itinerary = *list of routes*

fīnīs *ends, limits, boundaries*

iugerum (Roman) *acre*

linear = *of lines*

sunt ūsī (*are having-used*) *have used, used, did use*

Aliae arborēs altae, aliae humilēs sunt. Truncī arborum magnārum crassī dīcuntur. Truncus arboris parvae et gracilis tenuis est. Folium arboris tenue est. Pēs modus crassitūdinis est. Crassitūdō truncōrum magnōrum saepe est pedum circiter trium; saepius pedum circiter duōrum; saepissimē ūnīus pedis.

Aquam aut altam aut brevem dīcimus. Flūmen alibi angustum et altum, alibi lātum est et breve. Lacūs plērumque lātiōrēs et altiōrēs sunt. Mare vāstissimum est atque altissimum. Altitūdō multōrum flūminum alibi nōn est amplius pedum trium aut quattuor, alibi amplius pedum quadrāgintā. Loca, quā altitūdō flūminis minima est, saepe vada dīcuntur. §§ 64, 70, 212

Flūmina nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trānseuntur, sed aliās nāvibus vel pontibus trānseunda sunt. Ā rīpīs flūmina plērumque minus altā sunt. Plērīque lacūs secundum ōram brevissimī, ā mediō autem sunt altissimī. Paucī lacūs sunt in altitūdinem pedum amplius mīlle. Mare secundum ōram plērumque breve, per medium autem est in altitūdinem multōrum mīlium pedum.

Nōmen, lūmina; **sīdus, sīdera, tempus, tempore** are neuter.

Select all neuter noun and adjective forms on pp. 8, 10, 18, 29, 33, 38–9. Make a list of the adverbs on pp. 24–5, 28, 31–2, 33–4.

navy = *fleet of* ***ships*** § 79

alibi *in one place . . .* **alibi** *in another place* § 117 *a*

amplius *more* **crassī** *thick*

gracilis *slender, thin*

ab initiō *from (at) the start*

attenuate = *make* ***thin*** § 88

minus alta *not so deep*

secundum (w. Acc.) *along*

trānseunda su-nt *are* ***to be*** or *have* ***to be*** *crossed* § 215

vada *wading places, fords*

Ab initiō omnēs hominēs ferī erant. Omnia ad corpus suum referēbant, quod aliōs modōs habēbant nūllōs. (Idem faciunt hodiē hominēs barbarī ac ferī.) Omnia digitīs numerābant. Digitī aut palmae lātitūdine, pedis, gradūs aut passūs longitūdine omnia mētiēbantur. Ex hīs prīstinīs modīs paulātim ortī sunt illī modī, quibus plēraeque gentēs hodiē ūtuntur. § 182 *a, b*

Rōmānī omnia hīs modīs prīstinīs mēnsī sunt. Hī modī multum ā nostrīs differēbant. Passus apud nōs est trēs pedēs; apud illōs pedēs aequābat quīnque. Pēs autem, quō Rōmānī ūsī sunt, paulō brevior erat quam quō nōs ūtimur. Illī enim erant corpore paulō minōre quam nōs itemque breviōre statūrā. Ita brevius gressī sunt quam nōs gradimur. Gradus apud illōs fuit dīmidia pars passūs. Apud nōs autem gradus et passus dīcitur. §§ 62 *g*, 89

Digitī lātitūdō *digitus* dīcēbātur. Palmus erat lātitūdō palmae vel manūs passae, digitōsque quattuor aequābat. Pedis erat longitūdō palmōrum quattuor, digitōrum sēdecim. Modī igitur spatī apud Rōmānōs fuēre digitus, palmus, pēs, gradus, passus, passūs mīlle, centum mīlia passuum, bis centēna mīlia passuum.

For the form of **corpus** (line 9) see § 82 *b*. Select all accusatives used with prepositions (pp. 13, 16, 18, 19, 22, 31, 34, 40).

-bā- *was-, were-, did-, -ed*
digitus *finger, toe* § 23
gradus *a step* §§ 180–2
gressī sunt (*are* ***having-walked***) *have walked, walked* § 22
manūs passae *of the open* or *spread-out hand* § 81
ā nostrīs *from ours* [§ 161
ortī sunt *are* ***having-arisen***
palma *palm* (*of the hand*)

DĒ CIRCULĪ MĒNSŪRĀ

Globus rotundus est. Circulus quoque rotundus est. Ex solidīs globus, ex plānīs circulus. Hic et orbis appellātur, ille et sphaera dīcitur. Circulus vērus circum pūnctum circinō circumdūcitur. Quod pūnctum centrum est. Circinātiō circulī vērī ex omnibus partibus aequō spatiō ā centrō abest. § 221 *b*

Solida in longitūdinem, in lātitūdinem, et in crassitūdinem mētīmur. Circulī in diametrum et in circinātiōnem sunt mētiendī. Pedibus, passibus, mīlibus passuum mētīrī licet. Alia autem ratiō circulōrum mētiendōrum est. Hāc ratiōne modus circulī est pars. Omnīs circulōs sīve magnōs seu parvōs in trecentās sexāgintā partīs dīvidimus. Dīmidium circulī partīs centum octōgintā aequat. Quadrāns partīs nōnāgintā aequat. Globīs quoque haec ratiō mētiendī accommodāta est. § 129

Select all feminine forms (p. 41). Note **ratiō, ratiōne** f.

Librī legendī sunt *books are to be read, ought to be read* § 106
Librōs legendōs cūrō *I take care of* ***the books to be read,***
I oversee ***the reading of the books***
Haec ratiō librōrum legendōrum *this plan* ***of reading books***
Diēs librīs legendīs dictus est *a day was set* ***for the books to be read,*** *a day was set* ***for reading the books*** § 158 *c*
Eī est liber *a book* ***belongs to him, he has*** *a book*
Liber eī est legendus *for him there is a book* ***to be read,*** § 104
he has *a book* (that is) ***to be read, he has to read*** *a book*
Eī legendum est *for him there is* ***reading to be done,***
he has reading (that is) ***to be done,***
he has reading to do, has to do reading
circinō *with compasses* **in diametrum** *for diameter* **orbis** *ring*

DĒ GRAVITĀTE

Aliās rēs levīs, aliās gravīs esse dīcimus. Omnibus rēbus, quās nōvimus, pondus est. Suum cuique pondus est. Montēs in interiōra terrae nītuntur. Ōceanus pondere suō in terram nītitur. Idem facit āēr et omnia terrestria. § 111

Sī qua rēs ē terrā ēmittitur, in terram nūtat atque eōdem gravitāte fertur. Nix et pluvia ē caelō cadunt. In terram incidunt. Aqua flūminum ē montibus fluit et in mare labitur. Eius reī causa quae sit, mīrāmur. Ex nōbīs quaerimus. Causam gravitātem esse dīcimus. § 221 *b*

Aqua cadēns sē in globulōs fōrmat. Terra sē in globum fōrmāvit. Lūna sibi fōrmam globōsam suscēpit. Sōl sibi eandem fōrmam sūmpsit. Idem fēcēre sīdera. Idem faciunt omnia, quibus nihil est impedīmentō ad eam rem faciendam. Omnia terrestria sē in vicem trahunt. Altera alterīs cōpiam ponderis faciunt. Omnia gravitātem inter sē dant. In centrum terrae feruntur. In terram ex omnibus partibus nītuntur. Ea rēs terram globōsam fēcit. Sed quae vīs pondus vel gravitātem faciat ignōrāmus. § 220, 14

Select all accusatives with prepositions. **Marī** is Abl.

gravity = ***heaviness***
ignorant = ***not knowing*** § 220, 7

cadē-ns (when) *fall-ing*
ē-mitti-tur *is thrown up* § 220, 6
eō-dem *to the same, back to it*
fer-t-ur *bear-s itself, is borne, carried* § 212
in centrum *toward the center*
labi-t-ur *glide-s* § 182 ***lapse***

alleviate = ***lighten up*** § 220, 2
ponderous = ***weighty*** § 42, 1

mīrā-mur *we-wonder* ***admire***
nīti-t-ur *rest-s (itself)* § 180
nūta-t *nod-s, droop-s, settle-s*
terrestr-ia *earthly things*
sūmps-it *has taken on* § 219, 4
trahu-nt *draw, pull upon*
in vicem *in turn* **vīs** *force* § 80

DĒ ARITHMETICĪS

Arithmetica dē numerīs agunt. Prīmum numerōs scrībere et scrīptōs legere discendum est. Eōs et arabicē et rōmānē discimus. Quō factō, summās arithmeticōrum artīs ōrdine dōcēmur. Prīmum īnstituimur ad summam aliquot numerōrum cōnficiendam; deinde ad alium alīī numerum dētrahendum; tertium ad singulōs numerōs aliquotiēns dūcendōs; quārtum ad reperiendum quotiēns alius aliō numerus contineātur. §§ 119 *b*, 120 *f*

Sī quot numerōrum summa quaeritur, inter sē addendī sunt. Exemplī grātiā: quot sunt vīgintī quīnque et quīndecim. Respondētur quadrāgintā esse. §§ 59, 142

Cum dētrahitur, maior numerus minuendus, minor eī dētrahendus est. Exemplī grātiā: sī ducenta quīngentīs dētrahuntur, quot sunt reliqua? Respondētur trecenta reliqua esse. Sī tria tribus dētrahuntur, quid est reliquī? Respondētur nihil esse reliquī. §§ 64, 70–2, 104

Exemplī grātiā: Quot sunt bis bīna? Bis bīna sunt quattuor. Quaerō quot sint quater quaterna. Respondēs quater quaterna sēdecim esse.

Sī quī numerus dīvidendus est, in aequās partīs dīvidimus. Exemplī grātiā: sī quaeris quotiēns centum quīnquāgintā nōngentīs contineantur; respondeō centum quīnquāgintā nōngentīs sexiēns continērī. Quaeritur quotiēns quaterna sēdecim cōnficiant. Respondētur quater quaterna sēdecim cōnficere. Quaeritur quotiēns bīna in decem īnsint. Respondētur quīnquiēns bīna in decem inesse. § 67

minuend = (*number*) ***to be*** *lessened* **bis bīna** *twice two* §§ 67, 120 *e*

DĒ PARTĪTIŌNE

Multa adhūc dē integrīs numerīs dicta sunt. Dē integrīs enim rēbus agēbātur. Saepe autem in aequās partīs dīvidendum est. Haec rēs partītiō dīcitur. § 220, 5

Sī qua rēs integra in duās partīs aequās dīvīsa est, utraque pars dīmidium dīcitur. Dīmidium et dīmidia pars vocātur. Sī quam rem in trīs partīs aequās dīvīsimus, quaeque pars triēns vocātur. Trientem et tertiam partem dīcimus. Sī cuius reī duae ablātae sunt partēs, tertia pars reliqua est.

Sī quid in quattuor partīs partītur, quaeque pars quadrāns vocātur. Quadrantem et quārtam partem dīcimus. Sī cui reī trēs partēs dētractae sunt, quārta pars reliqua est. Item dīcitur quīnta pars, sexta pars, septima pars, et cētera. Duodecimā pars ūncia appellātur.[1] § 113

addenda = *things* ***to be*** *added*
equalize = *make* ***even*** or ***equal***
detraction[1] = ***taking*** *from*
dividend = ***to be*** *divided* § 106
integrity[1] = ***whole****ness*
legends = *things* ***to be*** *read*
annihilate[1] = *reduce to* ***nothing***
partition = ***separation***[1]
quadrant = ***quarter***
subtrahend[1] = *to be* ***taken*** *away*

āctum est *discussion took place*
ab-lātae sunt (*are having-been-taken away*) *have been taken*
dē-tractae sunt *have been taken away*
dicta[1] **sunt** (*are having-been-said*) *have been said, were said*
dīvidendum est *division has to be made, one must divide*
dīvīs-imus *we have divided*
sī cui *if to any* (*from any*)
sī qua, sī quam *if any* § 113
sī cuius *if of any* §§ 110–3
quae- *one* **-que** *every-* § 119 *b*
utra- *one* (of two) **-que** *each*
partī-tur[1] *is parted, divided*
triēns *a third*
ūncia ***inch***, ***ounce***, *etc.*

[1] Write a list of words having the same root (§ 47). Define each. Make other lists. Consult *Etymological Dictionary* of W. W. Skeat.

DĒ ARTE LEGENDĪ

Parvulī audiendō loquī discimus. Posteā legere docēmur. Prīmum vōcēs nōscimus; vōcēs legimus. Deinde litterārum figūrās nōtāmus, litterāsque discimus. Ab initiō rem difficilem habēmus. Aliās ab aliīs litterās vix discernimus. Sed cotīdiē plūs possumus. Cotīdiē amplius prōgredimur. Paulātim prō dīligentiā nostrā facilius fit. Iam omnia legere possumus. §§ 73 *e*, 150

Omnēs legere docendī sunt. Omnīs legere posse oportet. Prīmum ars legendī nōbīs est ōrnāmentō, nōbīs ūsuī est. Priōrēs bona et pulchra scrīpsēre. Quod bonī aut pulchrī scrīptum est, id legendō accipere licet. Legentī aditus est ad ea, quae librīs scrīpta sunt. Hīs rēbus hūmāniōrēs fīmus. Legentibus aditus est ad ea, quae ad cultum atque hūmānitātem spectant, quae ad animōs omnium hominum meliōrēs faciendōs pertinent. §§ 56, 3; 72; 159 *g*

Omnīs posse oportet (that) ***all be able*** *is necessary* § 152
Ars nōbīs (Dat.) **ūsuī est** *the art . . . is (for) use to us*
Quod bonī aut pulchrī *what (of) good or (of) beautiful* § 72
Id . . . accipere licet *gaining that is permitted; one may gain that*
Legentī *for* (a) *reading* (man), *for* (one) *who reads* § 94
Ad animōs hominum meliōrēs faciendōs pertinent *tend to make men's minds better, tend to improve men's minds* § 158

ad-itus *ac-cess* **amplius** *more* **parvulī** (when) *small* §§ 94, 95
bon-a *good* (things) **plērumque** *most* § 70
ea, quae *those* (things), *which* **paulātim** *gradually* **plūs** *more*
figūr-ās *shape-s, form-s* **prīmum** *first* **priōrēs** *former men*
habē-mus *regard* § 219, 3 **scrīps-ēre** (*they*) *have written*
hūmānitās *refinement* **spectant** *look, face, tend*
iam *soon* **nōsci-mus** *we learn* **vix** *hardly* **vōc-ēs** *phrase-s*

Deinde nōbīs disciplīnae est. In scholā, multum audiendō, multum videndō, plērumque autem legendō accipimus. Plēraeque rēs legendae sunt. Ita multa et magna accipimus ac discimus. Item parātī sumus ad plūra et maiōra accipienda. Hīs omnibus rēbus parātiōrēs exīmus ad omnīs labōrēs vītae subeundōs. §§ 129, 135, 158

Tertium, aliquid novī cotīdiē accidit. Aliquid pulchrī semper scrībitur. Aliquid bonī cotīdiē cognitum est. Summae rēs interdum geruntur. Salūs reī pūblicae omnī tempore agitur. Hae rēs nōbīs cognōscendae sunt. Hās omnīs rēs legendō accipere licet. § 131

Quārtum, omnibus sunt sociī atque amīcī. Omnibus aliquid negōtī est. Aliī amīcitiae causā nōs sequuntur; aliī negōtī grātiā ad nōs veniunt. Sī quis ad nōs ventūrus est, litterīs nōs certiōrēs facit. Litterīs dē amīcōrum adventū certiōrēs fīmus. Item dē negōtiō sociōs certiōrēs facimus. Quid igitur miserius est quam quī alium, utī litterās sibi praelegat, roget? § 59

Ad maiōra accipienda *for learning greater things* § 159 *b*
Hae rēs nōbīs cognōscendae sunt *for us these things are to be investigated, we ought to find out about these things*
Nōbīs sunt amīcī *to us there are friends, we have friends* Int. 5 *e*
Hoc nōbīs cognōscendum est *we have this to investigate*
Eum certiōrem facimus *we make him rather-certain, we inform him*
Nēmō est, quī accipiat *there is no one* ***that*** *receives* or *gets* § 151 *b*
Nēmō est, quīn accipiat *there is no one* ***but*** *gets* (***who*** *doesn't get*)

adventus *coming* **agitur** *is at stake* **ali-quid** *some-thing*
prae-leg-a-t (that) *he read-to*
parāt-iōr-ēs *better prepared*
quam quī *than* (one) *who*
rēs *-wealth* **pūblica** *common-*
ad sub-eundōs *for under-going*
vent-ūr-us *going to come* § 103

Multī sunt, quī ūnās aut bīnās litterās, ūnam aut duās epistulās cotīdiē accipiant. Nēmō est, quīn litterās interdum accipiat. (Litterae plērumque brevēs sunt, epistula longior et maiōre cūrā scrīpta.)

Nōs litterās **a**, **b**, **c** vocāmus. Apud Rōmānōs litterae **l**, **m**, **n**, vel elementa (**el-em-en-ta**) dictae sunt. Graecī litterās **alpha**, **bēta**, et cētera dīxēre. Hinc saepe litterās cūnctās alphabētum dīcimus. § 137 *b*

Hīc pauca praecipienda sunt. Cum legitur, sinistrā manū tenendus est liber. Dextra manus lībera esse dēbet. Folia enim librī dextrā vertuntur. Ad lūcem vertendum est tergum, ut lūx in folium incidat. Oculī ā lūce āvertendī sunt, nē in oculōs incidat. Cavendum est nē qua umbra in librum incidat. §§ 139, 221

Apud nōs folia ab alterā parte lībera sunt, utī manū vertantur. Apud Rōmānōs folia librī neutrā ex parte lībera erant. Illī folia nōn vertēre sed tōtum librum volvērunt. Hāc rē fīēbat, ut liber et volūmen vocārētur. § 147 *g*

Hoc praecipiendum est *this ought to be directed, this ought to be given as a precept, this should be taught*

debt = *that which is owed*
dexterity = ***skilfulness***
incident = ***falling upon*** § 220, 7
liberty = ***freedom*** § 91
manual = ***handbook*** § 81
oculist = ***eye*** *specialist* § 75
paucity = ***fewness, scarcity*** § 64
umbrella = *little* ***shade***

cūnctās (**coniūnctās**) *all taken together, all*
dēbe-t *owe-s, ought, should* § 219
foli-a *leave-s* p. 18, note
hīc *here* **hinc** *hence, from this*
legi-tur *reading is done* § 106 *c*
qua umbra *any shadow* § 113
nē (w. Sub.) *not, that not*
sinistra *awkward, left, unlucky*
tergum *the back* § 77 *b*
ut, utī (w. Sub.) (*in order*) *that*
volv-ērunt *they rolled*

DĒ ARTE SCRĪBENDĪ

Parvī legere discimus. Eōdem tempore scrībere docēmur. Prīmō litterārum figūrās aegrē dūcimus. Tardē ac magnā cūrā nōbīs scrībendum est. Paulātim prō cotīdiānō ūsū et prō dīligentiā nostrā facilius fit. Iam omnia celeriter scrībere possumus. §§ 130–2, 155

Scrībere magnō nōbīs est ūsuī. Nēmō est enim quī omnia memoriā tenēre possit. Nēmō est, quīn quid memorandum interdum habeat. Multō facilius est memoranda scrīptīs mandāre quam omnia memoriā tenēre cōnārī. §§ 113, 151 *b*

Nōbīs omnibus sunt amīcī sociīque. Nēmō est, quīn ad amīcōs scrībere interdum velit; nēmō cui ad sociōs interdum scrībendum nōn sit. Multī sunt quī cotīdiē scrībant. Nōnnūllī plūrīs epistulās cotīdiānās aut scrībunt ipsī aut scrībendās cūrant. Hīs enim negōtium est cum multīs.

Ita, sī quid novī est, litterās ad amīcōs dant. Item dē negōtiō suō sociōs certiōrēs faciunt. Sī quis iter factūrus est, litterās ante sē mittit. Ita dē eius adventū sociī certiōrēs fīunt. § 102

Nōbīs scrībendum est *for us there is writing to be done,* ***we have*** *writing* (that is) *to be done, we have to write, must write*

accelerate = ***quicken*** § 69
conative = *inclined to* ***try*** § 127
docile = ***teachable***
induce = ***draw*** *into* § 220, 7
identify = *prove to be the* ***same***
commend = ***entrust, give over***
negotiation = ***business*** *dealing*
novelty = ***new*** *thing* [§ 220, 9
plural = ***more*** *than one*
unused = ***inexperienced***

aegrē *with difficulty, hardly*
cotīdiānus *daily* **cui** *for whom*
fact-ūr-us *going to make* § 102
inter-dum *at times, sometimes*
parvī (when) *small* §§ 92, 94
quī *who* **quī-n** *who-not, but*
scrīptīs *to* (things) *written*
vel-i-t *wish-es, will-wish* § 140

Plērīque dextrā manū scrībunt. Perpaucī dextrā bene ūtī nōn possunt. Hī sinistrā manū scrībere cōguntur. Ubi scrīptūrī sumus, prīmum cūrāmus oculōs ā lūmine āvertendōs, tergum aut latus ad lūmen vertendum. Dextrā scrībentibus lūx ā latere sinistrō lūcēre dēbet, nē umbra manūs in scrīptum cadat. Sinistrā scrībentibus eādem dē causā lūcem ā latere dextrō lūcēre oportet. §§ 148, 152

Apud nōs scrībitur pēnicillīs aut pennīs aut māchinātiōnibus. Librī māchinātiōnibus celerrimē imprimuntur. Namque omnium rērum, quae ad scrībendum ūsuī sunt, summam facultātem habēmus. Sed longē aliter apud Rōmānōs rēs sēsē habēbat. Nam omnia ferē, quae tantō nōbīs ūsuī ad scrībendum sunt, illīs ignōta fuēre. §§ 92, 159 *g*

Illī vulgō epistulās stilō tabulīs cērātīs scrīpsērunt, librōs autem calamīs papȳrō. Stilus erat ferrum ab alterō extrēmō ad scrībendum praeacūtum, ab alterō lātum ad cērā scrīpta dēlenda. Librī apud illōs manū scrīptī sunt. Ars imprimendī iam omnīnō ignōta fuit. Quod librī servus Rōmānus aegerrimē multīs diēbus scrībere potuisset, id hodiē pūnctō temporis māchinātiōne cōnficitur.

Scrībent-ibus *for* (those) *writing, for those who write* § 97
Rēs aliter sē habet *the matter stands* (holds itself) *otherwise*

cogent = ***compelling, forcing***
ind**el**ible = *not to be* ***erased***
lateral = *of the* ***side*** § 78 *b*
utility = ***use****fulness* § 201

aeger-rimē *with great trouble*
calam-īs *with reed pens* § 74, 12
cērā *in wax* **cērātīs** *waxed*
im-primu-ntur *are printed*
nam- *for* **-que** *at any rate* § 119
nōta *known* **ignōta** *unknown*
potuisset *would have been able*
quod librī *what of a book* § 72
scrīpt-um (thing) *written* § 77 *b*
ūsuī ad *for use for, useful for*

EXTRĀ LŪDUM

Multa iam in lūdō Rōmānō vīdimus, multa mōre ac ratiōne populī Rōmānī didicimus et cum nostrīs rēbus comparāvimus. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre, sed hoc ūnum satis erit dictum. Puer Aemilius studiīs libenter operam dat. Multum legit; scrībit multum; graecē multum cum Theodōrō colloquitur; nam memoriā tenet summum Rōmānōrum ōrātōrem philosophumque, Cicerōnem, etiam Arpīnī esse nātum; eum litterārum Graecārum studiōsum fuisse, itemque Gaium Caesarem. Eōs quoque adulēscentīs Rhodī apud alterum Appolonium, quem suprā dīximus Mōlōnem, artī dīcendī operam dedisse. Puer sē quoque ōrātōrem fierī cupit. Hodiē dīligenter studiīs operam dedit. Iam hōra nōna fit. Et iam fīnis est. § 221 *b*

Puerī ē lūdō ēgressī sunt. Aemilius iam domum in fundum est profectūrus. Hodiē amīcum Theodōrum sēcum dūcere in animō est. Eōs in fundum secūtūrī sumus. Mātūrāmus Arpīnō proficīscī. Nam ante puerōs pervenīre eōrumque adventum vidēre volumus.

Itaque in fundum proficīscimur et magnō itinere eō īre contendimus atque nōn amplius quīnque aut sex mīlibus passuum prōgressī fundum ante nōs cōnspicimus. Ibi complūrīs servōs labōrāre vidēmus. Aliī ex hīs agrōs arant,

ad-olescent = ***growing up*** § 223
ad-ult = ***grown up*** (*person*)

didic-imus *we have learned*
ē-gressī sunt *are having walked out, have come out*
fu-isse (to) *have been, was* § 127

native = ***born*** *in, arising in*
satisfy = *do* ***enough*** (*for*) § 70

liben-ter *glad-ly* (*is glad to*)
eō *to it*
per-venīre *come over, arrive* § 220
profect-ūr-us *going to set out*
secūt-ūr-ī *going to accompany*

Longitude 13° East from Greenwich 14°
Fidenae
Tibur
Gabii
ROME
Treba
Marsi
Antinum
Betifuli
Praeneste
Portus Augusti
Tiber R.
Tusculum
Toleria
Bivium
Anagnia
Hernici
Caraceni
Aufidena
Ostia
Alba Longa
Aricia
Velitrae
Signia
Verulae
Bovianum vetus
Latins
Via Latina
Lavinium
Ardea
Cora
Norba
Longula
Ecetra
Arpinum
Atina
Aesernia
SAMNIUM
Setia
Aquinum
Casinum
Venafrum
Antium
Astura
Privernum
Via Appia
Fabraterianova
Liris R.
Interamna Lirinas
Fundi
Lautulae
Allifae
Formiae
Auruncoi
Suessa
Teanum Sidicinum
Cales
Caiatia
Cape Circaeum
Circei
Tarracina (Anxur)
Caieta
Gulf of Caieta
Minturnae
Trifanum
Calatia
TYRRHENIAN SEA
Sinuessa
Savo R.
Casilinum
Capua
Sinonia
Palmaria
Pontia
Pontiae Is.
Volturnus R.
Clanius R.
Suessula
Acerrae
Atella
CAMPANIA
Liternum
Puteoli
Pandataria
Cumae
Aenaria I.
Cape Miseno
Neapolis
Sinus Cumanus
Herculaneum
Capreae I.
VICINITY OF ROME
Scale of Miles
0 10 20 30 40 50
THE M.-N. WORKS
13°
14°
41

aliī equōs, bovēs, ovīs cūrant atque cūstōdiunt. Eōrum ūnus bovēs ad vīllam agit. Fīdī canēs ā tergō sequuntur eīque magnō sunt auxiliō ad bovēs ex agrīs cōgendōs.

Vīlla ipsa nōn longē abest ā flūmine Fibrēnō, quod in Līrim īnfluit. In eō flūmine pōns est, isque nōnnūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur. Paulus ad utramque partem eius flūminis possessiōnēs habet. Hominēs cum carrīs ponte trānseunt. Bovēs autem trādūcunt vadīs Fibrēnī, quā altitūdō flūminis minima est. § 220, 15

Ad vīllam accēdimus. Exterior domus nōbīs parum placet. Rōmānī enim exteriōribus rēbus nōn student. At domus interior satis bona et ampla omnibus rēbus ōrnāta est. Ad portam accēdimus. In līmine legimus CAVĒ CANEM. Canis autem abest. Prīmum in vestībulum ingredimur. Post hoc in ātriō sedet dominus ipse Paulus. Chilō magister servōrum cum eō colloquitur.

Prīmum dominus, quid novī sit, ex eō quaerit. Ille dīcit bōbus iam minus aquae in agrīs esse; ad flūmen cotīdiē agendōs; quendam ex servīs Gallīs paulō ante effūgisse; hūc accēdere quod certā dē causā alius Gallus nōmine Brennus poenās dare dēbeat. Deinde dominus Chilōnem laudat, quod bovēs ad flūmen agendōs cūret. Mandāta eī in proximum diem dat; operis labōrēs partibus iūstīs aequat; statuit, quō quisque proficīscātur, quid crās faciat; cuique iūstam partem labōris tribuit. § 111

laudable = ***praise**worthy*

ātrium-ī (*reception*) *room*
auxiliō (*for*) *help*
cavē *beware*
canis *dog*
dēbeat *ought*

eliminate = *push from* ***door**step*

parum *little* § 70
pōns *bridge*
place-t *please-s, suit-s* 3 § 230
statui-t *decide-s, settle-s*

Iam exitūrus Chilō iterum dē Brennō mentiōnem facit. Dominum rogat, quid dē eō faciendum putet. Hic prīmō recūsat quōminus magistrum dē eō supplicium sūmere iubeat. Chilō quidem Graecus nōn bonō animō in Gallōs vidētur. Posteā autem īnstantī Chilōnī cēdit. §§ 102, 154

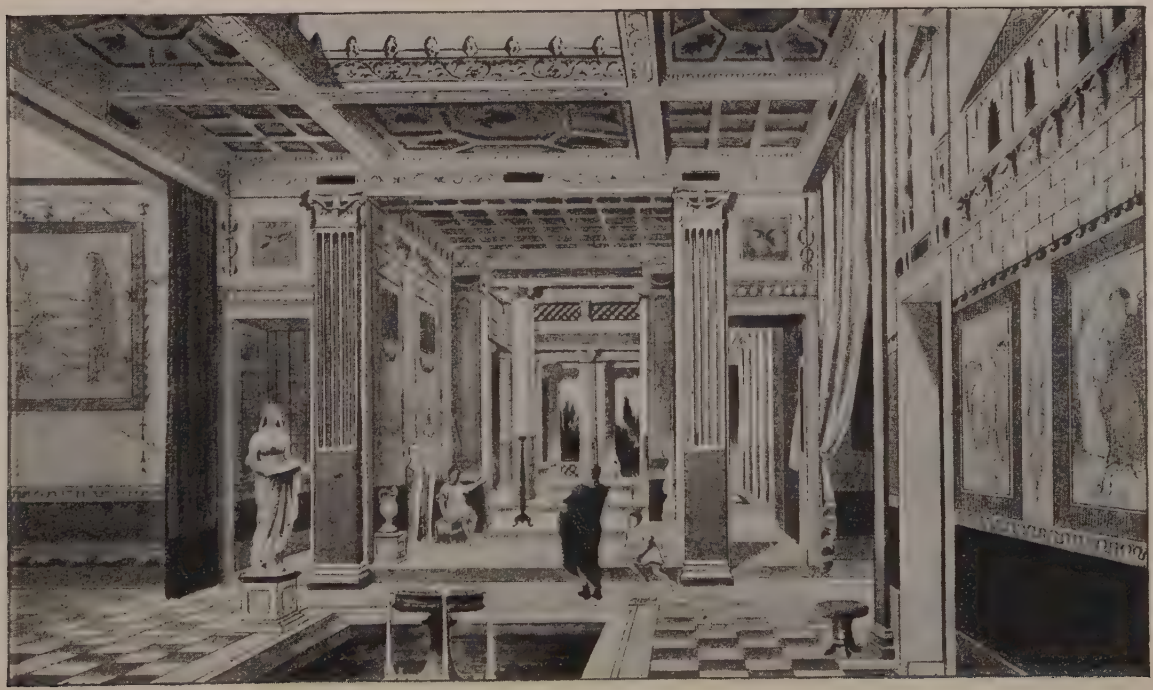
Dominum in ātriō relinquimus. Inde in peristylium prōgredimur. Ibi flōribus, pictūrīs, statuīs ōrnātum est. Ibi apertum caelum suspicimus. Fōns in mediō fluit. Ab utrāque parte columnae tēctum domūs sustinent. Volitant per āera columbae. Piscēs aquīs nātant. Ignis perpetuus in ārā Vestae lūcet. Sōl occidēns summās iam columnās suāvibus illūminat radiīs. Ad focum congregantur domina, fīliae, servae. § 51

In familiā Rōmānā sunt pater, māter, fīliī, famulī. Quōrum famulī et servī vocantur. Pater domum regit. Dominus dīcitur. Vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem. Patrī domus omnis est cūrae. Patris est domicilium sibi suīsque parāre, domum aedificāre aut aedificātam cōnservāre, omnia, quibus ad vīvendum opus est, prōvidēre. Pater patris avus est. Patrēs et avī maiōrēs dīcuntur. § 98

Māter domina est. Mātrōna quoque dīcitur. Mātrī cūra domūs est. Mātris est līberōs ēducāre, rēs domesticās prōvidēre, domum cūrāre atque omnia domestica perspicere.

Patrī . . . est cūrae *is* (*for*) *a care to the father* **Eī . . . est auxiliō** *is* (*for*) *a help to him* **Patris est** *it is the father's* (*duty*) **Bonō animō in** (*with* or) *of good mind toward* §§ 57, 62 *g*

columba *dove* **ignis** *fire*
peristylium -ī *open court*
piscēs *fish* **put-e-t** *think-s*
sūmere *take* (*from*), *inflict* (*on*)
summās *tops of* **focum** *hearth*
tēctum -ī *roof* **vīta -ae** *life*



DOMUS RŌMĀNAE PERISTYLIUM

Servae quidem līberōs cūrant, molita cibāria cōnservant, panem faciunt, victum parant, omnia in ōrdine servant, dominae auxilium ferunt, huic oboediunt, eius voluntātī obtemperant, eī cēdunt. Māterfamiliās līberōs vestiendōs, victum parandum, omnia in ōrdine servanda cūrat.

Rōmānī bellō captōs in servitūtem abdūcunt. Sed hīs licet aliquot annōs serviendō lībertātem redimere. Tum manū mittuntur ac līberātī sīve lībertī dīcuntur. Servī dominō, dominae, magistrō oboediunt. Hīs cēdunt, eīs fīdī sunt atque auxilium ferunt. Servōrum est audīre, cēdere obtemperāre, servīre, fīdī esse. Servī agrōs arant et sēmentīs faciunt. Frūctūs legunt frūmentumque metunt. Dominō hortus, agrī, animālia, opera omnia cūrae sunt. Ille agrōs arandōs, sēmentīs faciendās, frūmenta metenda, pābulum colligendum servandumque, frūctūs legendōs cūrat. Dominum prūdentem esse oportet. Hinc prōverbium illud habēmus: "Ut sēmentem fēceris, ita et metēs." § 147 *b*

Līberī aut fīliī aut fīliae sunt. Fīlī fīlius nepōs dīcitur. Fīliī et nepōtēs minōrēs sīve posterī dīcuntur. Fīliī puerī, fīliae puellae vocantur. Servī quoque nōnnumquam puerī appellantur. Līberī inter sē frātrēs dīcuntur. Fīliī sē frātrēs appellant. Fīliae sē sorōrēs vocant. Frāter mā-

belli-gerent = *war-making*
horticulture = *gardening*
molar = *grinding* (*tooth*)
conservation = ***keeping*** *together*
service = *drudgery, toil*
vestibule = *hall for* ***clothing***
victuals = *prepared* ***food***
voluntary = ***willing*** § 137

ab-dūcu-nt *they carry off* (*away*)
audīre, ob-oedīre *hear* (to)
cibāria *food stuffs* **cibus** *food*
capt-ōs (*men* who are) *taken* § 94
met-ē-s *thou shalt reap* § 197
manū mitte-re *let out of hand*
obtemperant *conform, agree* (to)
panis *bread* **red-imere** *buy*

ternus līberīs est avunculus. Frāter paternus eīs patruus est. Līberī Rōmānī patribus maiōribusque oboediunt, cēdunt et eōrum voluntātī obtemperant. Līberōs semper patribus maiōribusque oboedīre oportet. Hinc mandāmentum illud: "Patrem et mātrem honōrātōte."

Dum omnia in peristyliō lūstrāmus subitō fōrīs clāmātur. Paulus clāmōrem audit. Exit. Exeunt māter fīliaeque. Nōs quoque exīmus. Cum Theodōrō reversum vidēmus Aemilium. Quem servī magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū excipiunt, equōsque in stābula dēdūcunt. Simul et raucīs et suāvibus linguīs salūtātur. Nam in hīs servīs sunt Āfrī, Gallī, Germānī, Graecī. Hī plērīque ambōbus puerīs cupiunt atque amīcī sunt. Graecī prīncipēs Theodōrō salūtem dīcere contendunt. Spērant enim per eius auctōritātem sēsē ōlim lībertātem cōnsequī posse, quod vident Aemilium bonō in eum animō esse. § 157 *b*

Statim prōgrediuntur pater et māter puerōs salūtātum. Prīmae puellae Theodōrō salūtem dīcunt et, cum Aemilia maior eum ad domum comitātur, Aemilia minor, puella novem annōrum, manum frātris prēndit et sēcum gaudēns sēvocat. Tum lēnī vōce, nē audiātur: "hodiē," inquit, "est ante diem tertium Kalendās Maiās." Cui frāter:

Salūtātum *to greet.* **Salūtem dīcere** *wish good health.*

ambiguous = *driving at* ***both***
gaudy = *showing* ***joy***, ***rejoicing***
leniency = ***gentleness***, ***mildness***

com-itā-tur *ac-com-pani-es*
ex-cipiunt *take up, welcome*
honōrātōte *ye shall honor* § 189
inquit *says she* **ōlim** *one day*

apprehend = ***seize*** *upon* § 220, 2
secede = *go* ***apart*** § 220, 13
simultaneous = ***at once*** *with*

quem = **et eum** *and . . . him*
raucus -a -um *hoarse, guttural*
re-versum (who has) *come back*
strepitus -ūs *noise, din, uproar*

TOGA VIRĪLIS
(ā fronte vīsa)

TOGA VIRĪLIS
(vīsa ā tergō)

MĪLES LEGIŌNĀRIUS

TOGA PRAETEXTA
(puerīlis)

Et quibus cōnsulibus? Dīc mihi rēctē. § 96 *b*

Iterum tibi dīcō. Tertiō diē ante Kalendās Maiās Gaiō Iūliō Caesare et Mārcō Bibulō cōnsulibus. Satīn dictum?

Et quid novī aut mīrī est? Quā rē commōvēris?

Num Nōnārum Maiārum oblīvīsceris? Nihilne memi- 5
nistī? § 145 *b, c*

Nōnne, soror cāra, oblīta ipsa es mē cotīdiē Arpīnum in lūdum īre ibique tōtō diē summīs rēbus operam dare?

Minimē, frāter cāre. Eās omnīs rēs memoriā teneō. Sed hodiē gaudeō maximē. 10

Quā rē gaudēs? Dīc mihi.

Nōn tibi dīcō. Cōgitā tantum, quid reī sit. § 72

Numquam cōgitāre possim. Nihil rem intellegō. § 141

Quī vocāris? Nōnne suspicere coepistī?

Nunc puer suspicit aliquid dē suā diē nātālī esse. Sed 15
ut sorōrem vexet, dissimulat atque ita respondet:

Aemilius vocor. Quid novī in eō est?

Quem ad modum vestītus? Ecquid intellegis?

Togā vestītus sum, ut mōs est Rōmānīs.

Nōnne togā praetextā? Tuā causā gaudeō. 20

Certē. Sed cūr meā causā gaudēs? § 59

Mihi dīcendum esse putō. Nōnīs Maiīs annōs sēdecim complēveris. Tum vir esse incipiēs; togā virīlī vestiēre. Tibi praenōmen dabitur itemque cognōmen. §§ 164 -ē-, 184

Satīn dictum? = **satis-ne dictum** (**est**)? *has enough been said?*
Nōn-ne oblīta ipsa es? *Art thou not become forgetful thyself?*

cogitation = *act of* ***thinking*** **commotion** = ***excitement*** § 192

certē *yes* **coep-istī** *hast begun* **nātālī** *birth-* **pos-si-m** *I could*
cūr? *why?* **incipi-ē-s** *wilt begin* **praetexta** *bordered* **quī**? *how?*

Subitō ā domū "Age Aemilia" vocātur. Puer manum sorōris prēndit. Iūnctīs manibus ad portam currunt et cum reliquīs in domum ingrediuntur. In peristylium ītur. Tum Claudia cēnam parandam cūrat. Māter enim Claudiae gentis est eīque nōmen Claudiae. Aemilia maior cum eā manet et eī auxilium fert. Aemilia minor patrem in ātrium sequitur. Aemilius, absentem sorōrem utī effugiat, Theodōrum sē sequī iubet atque in hortum prōcurrit. Inde casās servōrum petunt. Theodōrus cum Graecīs colloquitur. Aemilius interim dē Brennō dīcī exaudit. Ea rēs quae sit, mīrātur neque tum quaerere potest, quod eōdem ferē tempore servus accurrit puerōs petītum atque ad cēnam vocātum.

Cum hōc servō in domum revertuntur, ubi exspectantī patrī et sorōribus in ātriō occurrunt. Inde in trīclīnium ītur. Torīs discumbitur. Theodōrō licet ad socium Aemilium accumbere. Lentē apud Rōmānōs cēnārī mōs est. Victus in pane, lacte, olīvīs cōnsistit. Paulus et Claudia vīnum aquā miscent sed eius reī parcī sunt. Līberī nūllum omnīnō vīnum ad sē adferrī patiuntur. §§ 137 *a*, 224

Dum cēnātur, Aemilia minor iterum mentiōnem facit dē Nōnīs Maiīs. Frāter autem, cum exaudiat, dissimulat; cum Theodōrō graecē colloquitur. Pater fīlium laudat, quod tam bene loquitur tantamque operam studiīs dat.

current = ***run**ning, **rush**ing*

casa -ae *hut* **cēna -ae** *dinner*
discumbitur *reclining is done, they take places* § 220, 5
ex-audi-t *over-hear-s*
ex-specta-nt-ī (who is) *waiting*

parsimonious = ***spar**ing*

iube-t *bid-s* **lentē** *slowly*
oc-curru-nt *come* or *run upon*
petu-nt *go to* **torus** *couch*
trīclīnium -ī *dining couch(room)*
vocātum *to invite, summon* § 157

A DINING ROOM

From a Pompeian wall painting

A ROMAN AND HIS WIFE

Vatican Museum, Rome

Portrait sculpture from a tombstone

Post cēnam omnēs ad focum congregantur. Aemilius autem commovērī vidētur; nam paululum temporis ibi morātus discēdit. Theodōrus sequitur. Domō ēgressī ad flūmen casāsque servōrum proficīscuntur. (Interim secunda ferē hōra noctis facta est.) Iam apud servōs movērī atque ad flūmen concurrī cōnspiciunt. Puerī nē videantur, umbrā sēsē tenent atque eō pervenīre mātūrant. §§ 100, 137 *b*

Sunt in rīpā flūminis laurī duae, quae arborēs tantum inter sē distant, quantum locī longitūdō hominis iacentis occupāre potest. Ubi eō ventum est, Aemilius videt Brennum, Gallum dē quō suprā dictum est, humī iacēre, manibus ad alteram arborem, ad alteram pedibus vinctīs. Duo Thraeces ingentī magnitūdine corporum eī verbera parant. §§ 62 *g*, 95 *b*

Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Theodōrō signum dat atque eum ad sē vocat. Quid reī sit, ostendit. Quid suī cōnsilī sit, ēdocet. Tum puerī sēsē recipiunt. Alter in alteram partem circuitū iter facit atque utrimque ad laurōs per tenebrās accēdunt. Prīmō verbere, quod tempus inter eōs reī agendae convēnit, vincula Brennō laxant. Quī līberātus subitō praeter omnium opīniōnem ex humō exsilit. Thraeces timōre perterritī dif-fugiunt.

Morāt-us (after) *having delayed*, (after *he*) *has delayed, waited* **ē-gress-ī** (after) *having stepped out*, (as soon as *they*) *get out* **tantum distant** *are as far* (apart) — **quantum locī** *as* (can occupy) *of space* **homin-is iacent-is** *of a man* (who is) *lying* (down) § 94 **ēo ventum est** *arrival has been made* or *they have come there* § 106 *c* **quod tempus . . . convēnit** *which was agreed upon* (as) *the time* **reī agendae** *of doing the thing, to act* **līberātus** (when) *set free*

concurrī *a rush* (*be*) *being made* **umbrā** *shadow* **verber-a** *lashes* **ex-silit** *leaps up, springs up* **utrimque** *from either side* § 119 *f*

Tum vērō puer nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, hāc rē Chilōnī nūntiātā, apud patrem causam dīcere cōgātur. Itaque, Brennō quam celerrimē potest ad sē vocātō, domum īre contendit Brennum sibi servum postulātūrus. Sed ubi eō ventum est, verētur, nē patrī suā sponte persuādēre nōn possit. Itaque Gallō forīs relictō, sorōrem minōrem Aemiliam petit. Quid suī cōnsilī sit, celeriter ēdocet, eamque sēcum ad patrem dūcit. §§ 153, 196

Līberī in ātrium ingressī prīmum patrī subrīdent neque ēloquī audent; deinde quid reī gerātur, quaerentī Aemilia dīcit: sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs, quās ab eō petere velint. Eā rē permissā, sorōrcula petit, utī hōc tempore frāter summā apud patrem gratiā sit; ipse, quam fidem postulet, eam frātrī det memor proximārum Nōnārum. § 107 *c*

Eā rē impetrātā, Aemilius ipse loquitur: sē proximīs Nōnīs annōs sēdecim complētūrum; sī quā eō tempore apud patrem grātiā sit, illud ūnum sibi cōnfēstim concēdātur et Brennus Gallus sibi in servitūtem trādātur. Tum pater duōs fīliōs amplexus sē eam rem libenter concēdere dīcit. Brennum ad sē vocārī iubet. Gallus Aemiliō trāditur et manūs novō dominō dare iussus libenter facit.

nōn exspectandum (**esse**) *that waiting ought not to be done* § 106 *d* **hāc rē nūntiātā** (as soon as) *this affair* (had been) *reported* § 96 **dum . . . cōgātur** (while he ***be*** compelled) *till he* ***is*** *compelled* § 224 **postulāt-ūr-us** *intending to ask* **sibi servum** *as a slave for him* **verētur nē possit** *fears that he can* **suā sponte** *of his own efforts* **verētur ut possit, verētur nē nōn possit** *fears that he cannot* **quaere-nt-ī** *to* (*him* when he is) *asking, to* (*him* as he) *asks* (them) **com-plēt-ūr-um** (**esse**) (*is*) *going to complete* **libenter** *gladly*

forīs *outside* **gerī** *be done, go on* **sub-rīdent** *stand smiling*

Paulō post Chilō dominum petit: Brennum quoque, superātīs Thraecibus, effūgisse. Cui Paulus respondet eum nōn abesse atque fīliō Aemiliō esse novāsque tabulās habēre. Aemilius statim Chilōnem apud patrem accūsat, quod Graecus superbē et crūdēliter servīs Gallīs imperet. Tum dēnique pater sē ā fīliīs circumventum sentit; sed, quod eō tempore domī nihil molestiae fierī vult, fīlium tacēre iubet. Chilōnī autem suādet, ut praeterita condōnet atque monet ut in reliquum tempus omnīs suspīciōnēs vītet. § 147 *a, e*

Posterā nocte, dum cēnātur, tabellārius Rōmā venit. Dīcit sē ā M. Crassō vēnisse; sibi ad Paulum esse datās litterās, quās ipsī in manūs daret. Paulus litterās ad sē ferrī iubet. Libenter accipit. Tabellāriō grātiās agit eumque respōnsum exspectāre iubet. Tum līnum incīdit. Litterās aperit, apertāsque suīs exspectantibus praelegit. Sunt Crassī manū scrīptae eiusdemque signum Paulus cognōscit. Sunt autem sine nōmine sed ita:

"S. v. b. e. e. v. Libentissimē lēgī tuās litterās in quibus dīxistī Aemilium tuum iam sēdecim annōs proximīs Nōnīs complētūrum. Hodiē tam multa habeō quae scrībam, ut mihi exspectandus videātur adventus tuus. Licēbit, Aemilium, cum vir sit, ad mē dūcās.

D. Rōmae IV. Kal. Maiās, Iuliō et Caesare cōs."

fīliō esse *belongs to his son* **novās tabulās** *a clean sheet*
S. v. b. e. e. v. = **sī valēs, bene est, ego valeō** **D.** = **datae** § 98

unmolested = *unannoyed* **signet** = *ring, ring for sealing*
preterit = gone *by, past* **inevitable** = *unavoidable*

in (l. 9) *for* **in-cīdi-t** *cut-s* **superb-ē** *haughti-ly* **sī** §§ 224–5
līnum *string, cord* (of *linen*) **tabellārius** *letter carrier*

Suīs subrīdēns Paulus tabulās cōnfēstim ad sē ferrī iubet. Quibus lātīs scrībit ita:

"L. Paulus Crassō suō S. D.

Nōs cotīdiē tabellāriōs dē Tusculānō exspectāmus, quī sī vēnerint, erimus certiōrēs quandō nōbīs domō proficīscendum sit. Quod spērō fore VIII. Īd. Mai. aut postrīdiē. Nisi quid accidit, in Tusculānum nōs ventūrōs prō certō putāmus a. d. IV. Īd. Sī quid erit impedīmentī, faciēmus tē statim certiōrem. Ita postrīdiē eius diēī sub vesperum apud tē fore spērāmus. Datae Arpīnō prīd. Kal." § 113

Hīs litterīs datīs atque profectō tabellāriō, Aemilia minor ex patre quaerit, quā dē causā Crassus scrīpserit litterās suās esse datās IV. K. Mai., Iūliō et Caesare cōnsulibus; num Bibulum esse mortuum? Cui pater: id per iocum factum. Quoniam ad hanc rem perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē eā breviter, quā rē facta sit, prōpōnere. Eō quidem tempore apud Rōmānōs longē nōbilissimus fuit Gnaeus Pompeius, dītissimus Mārcus Licinius Crassus, cuius ad Paulum litterās modo lēgimus, prūdentissimus autem Gaius Iūlius Caesar. §§ 114, 143

S. D. = **salūtem dīcit** **quī sī vēnerint** *and if they come*
Num Bibulum esse mortuum *Bibulus hasn't died* (has he) § 145 *c*
id per iocum factum (*that*) *this was done by-way-of joking*

accident = ***happening, befalling*** **imprudent** = *not* ***looking ahead***
Dives = *the* ***rich*** *man* **ridiculous** = *causing* ***laughter***

aliēnum *strange, out-of-order* **profectō** (*as soon as he*) *set out*
cōnfēstim, statim *straightway* **sub** *toward* **suīs** *to his family*
fore = **futūrum** (**esse**) *will be* **tabulae** *wooden writing tablets*
lātus -a -um (*when*) *brought* **Tusculānum** *Tusculan villa*

Priōre annō cōnsulātum petēns Caesar Lūcium Lucceium collegam sibi satis amīcum fore spērāverat. Id sī fieret, optimātēs intellegēbant magnō cum perīculō sibi futūrum, ut ambō cōnsulēs populāribus favērent. Itaque nē agrōs tōtīus Ītaliae paulātim occupāre aut agrum pūblicum sibi colere aut prōvinciās spoliāre prohibērentur, M. Bibulum collegam Caesarī creārunt. § 62 *g*

Interim Caesar societātem cum Pompeiō et Crassō fēcit, nē quid fieret in rē pūblicā, nisi quod hīs tribus virīs placuisset. Ipse autem summā erat apud populum propter līberālitātem grātiā. Lēgem tulit, quā magna pars agrī pūblicī populō distribuerētur. Huic lēgī optimātēs per M. Bibulum et. M. Catōnem resistēbant. Tum dēmum Caesar lēgem ad populum tulit. Et cum Bibulus iterum resistendī causā in forum vēnisset, ita expulsus est, utī reliquam annī partem domō sē tenēret. Posteā Caesar sōlus omnia in rē pūblicā ad suum arbitrium administrāvit.

Paulus, hīs rēbus expositīs, pollicētur fīlium Rōmam sēcum ductūrum. Hāc rē cōnstitūtā, Aemilius dīcit sibi esse in animō socium Theodōrum ūnā dēdūcere. Rogat, utī patris voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Paulus respondet sibi placēre, sī Appolonī pāce fierī possit. § 220, 12

nē occupāre prohibērentur *that they might not be prevented from seizing* **ne quid fieret** *that nothing might take place (be done)*

arbitrary = *to one man's* ***notion*** **pact** = ***agreement***
administrator = ***manager*** **legal** = ***lawful***
constitution = ***settled law*** **resistance** = ***standing against***
license = ***permission, allowing*** **spoliation** = ***plundering, robbing***

optimātēs *aristocrats* Cf. § 91 **populārēs** *popular party*

Kalendīs Maiīs mātūrius paulō quam necessitās temporis postulat, puerī Arpīnum in lūdum proficīscuntur. Patrī Appoloniō sēsē persuāsūrōs exīstimant, utī fīlium Rōmam īre patiātur. Prīmus Theodōrus patrem adit. Is ita cum Appoloniō agit: paucīs diēbus amīcum suum Aemilium togam virīlem esse sūmptūrum; quō factō, Rōmam in urbem iter cum patre Paulō esse factūrum; magnō sibi ūsuī fore, sī ūnā cum eīs iter fēcerit; itaque sē rogāre, utī patris voluntāte sibi iter unā facere liceat; id nōn suā sponte petere sed rogātum atque sollicitātum ab Aemiliō. §§ 56, 3; 159 *g*

Ita puer īnstat. Prō hōc Aemilius facit verba: puerum multa latīnē discere posse; magnō nōn sōlum huic sed sibi ipsī ūsuī fore, sī puer ūnā iter fēcerit, quod tantō sibi auxiliō ad Graeca discenda sit; praetereā in itinere tam longō sēsē amīcum Theodōrum magnopere dēsīderātūrum. § 226

Appolonius rem concēdendam putat, sed ut spatium intercēdere possit diemque utī ad dēlīberandum sūmat, negat sē mōre Graecōrum posse id fīliō dare. Dīcit quamquam sibi grātissimum sit, ut Theodōrus Rōmam videat, tamen neque sē velle neque mōrem Graecōrum patī ut suī molestiae cuiquam aut impedīmentō sint. § 159 *g*

Huic cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possint, ad Paulum eunt ut eō dēprecātōre ab Appoloniō impetrent: Theodōrum patre invītō Rōmam iter facere nōn posse.

cui- *to one* **-quam** *any-* § 119 *c*
dēprecātor (as an) *intercessor*
dēsīderāre *miss* **diēs** *time*
im-petr-e-nt *they may obtain*
īn-stat *stands on, persists*
inter-cēdere *inter-vene* § 220, 8
invītus *unwilling* **iter** *trip*
rogātus (because *he* was) *asked*
suā sponte *of their own efforts*
sūmat *may take* § 159 *e*
suī *his* (people)
sūmptūrum (esse) *will put on*

Itaque Paulus rem suscipit atque ā magistrō impetrat, utī fīlium ūnā proficīscī patiātur. Eā rē cōnstitūtā, diem dīcunt, quā diē Theodōrus ea, quae ad profectiōnem pertinent, in fundum ferat. Is diēs erat III. N. Mai. § 225

Prīdiē Nōnās Maiās tabellārius Formiīs venit, quī sē ā M. Cicerōne cōnsulārī missum esse dīcit. Paulō trādit epistulam, in quā clārus ille Arpīnās scrīpsit sēsē IV. Nōn. Mai. in Tusculānum profectum; diē, quō dictum erat, amīcum Paulum fīliumque libentissimē ibi exceptūrum.

Nōnīs Maiīs in peristyliō domūs magna fit grātulātiō. Familia omnis eō convenit iuvenem Lūcium Aemilium Paulum grātulātum, quod togam virīlem sūmpserit. Et quoniam est eōdem praenōmine, quō pater, appellātus, licet appellētur L. Aemilius Paulus iunior; pater L. Paulus senior.

Servī omnēs dominō futūrō salūtem dīcunt. Chilōnī, petente Aemiliō, mandātur, eō diē utī servīs quiēs ab labōre dētur. Idōneīs verbīs adulēscēns omnibus grātiās agit, quod bonō in sē animō sint. Et cum advesperāscit Brennum ad sē vocat atque ea, quae ad proficīscendum pertinent, comparārī iubet. § 57, "in"

Prīmā lūce domō proficīscuntur Paulus, Aemilius, Theodōrus, Brennus. Bīduō post, cum iter nōn intermittat, hōrā diēī circiter duodecimā Tusculum perveniunt. Inde in Tusculānum contendunt, ubi Cicerōnem eōs in hortīs exspectantem inveniunt. Ille Arpīnātīs libentissimē suscipit. Paulī

diē, quō *on the day, on which* **eōdem** *by the same . . .* **quō** *as* § 115

juvenile = *of young people* **verbosity** = *wordiness*

Arpīnās -ātis *son of Arpinum* § 45 **profectum (esse)** *had started*

iuniōris manum prēndit. In ātrium ītur. Orātor adulēscentem ad Quīntum frātrem dēdūcit. Terentia coniūnx et fīlia Tullia Paulum salūtant. Dē Arpīnātibus quaeritur. Dē Claudiā et fīliābus exquīritur. § 137

Cicerō diū cum Paulō colloquitur. Fāta sua queritur. Reī pūblicae statum miserātur: Sēsē omnīnō ā rē pūblicā abesse; Graecīs litterīs operam dare; scrīpta sua pūblicāre. Aemilius sermōnem ōrātōris vōcēsque mīrātur. Longum est omnia ēnārrāre. Illud ūnum satis erit dictum. Adulēscentī librum ōrātiōnum, quās in Lūcium Catilīnam habuerit, sēsē datūrum esse pollicētur. § 225

Posterō diē dē hōrā tertiā ē Tusculānō profectī viā Latīnā ad urbem accēdunt et circiter merīdiem nōta moenia cōnspiciunt. Portā Capēnā urbem ingrediuntur. Aemiliō multa mīranda videntur. § 100

"Mīrātur portās strepitumque et strāta viārum."

In forum ītur. Hinc tabernae, ubi librī, pictūrae, statuae exposita sunt; hinc servī et servae vēneunt. Ibi morātur ignōbile vulgus. Nam frūmentum pūblicum exspectant. Nihil agunt. Nihil student, nisi lūdīs et circō. Sēcūrī fātōrum reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis praetereunt equitēs Rōmānī et patrēs cōnscrīptī; aliōrum enim oblītī, suī memorēs sunt. Ūnus ex omnibus Gaius Caesar omnia

patrēs cōnscrīptī *enrolled fathers, senators* (*heads of families*)

commiserate = *take* ***pity*** *on*

sermon = *a* ***talk***, *a* ***speech***

con-iūnx *wife, husband*
ex-quīri-tur *inquiries are made*
lūd-ī *game-s* **memor** *mindful*
moen-ia *wall-s* (of a city)
porta *gate*
sēcūrī *careless*
strāt-a *pavement-s*
taberna *shop* **venīre** *be sold*

nōn modo videt sed etiam perspicit plānēque sentit. Reliquī omnēs clārissimam fortūnātissimamque rem pūblicam in exitium ruere patiuntur. §§ 107 *c*, 223 *b*

Inde mātūrius paulō, quam litterīs dictum est, in Mārcī Crassī domum veniunt. Ibi amīcē excipiuntur. Omnia ibi mīranda videntur; nam Crassus, cum multās domūs possideat, ūnam sibi et eam magnificentissimam aedificāvit, eaque rēgālī lūxū ōrnāta est. Paulus diū cum Crassō et Pūbliō fīliō adulēscente colloquitur. Ibi Aemilius dīcī audit Caesarem proximō annō Galliae prōvinciae prōcōnsulem sē fore spērāre; Pūblium velle ūnā cum eō in prōvinciam īre; nihil omnīnō in senātū Caesarī impedīmentō esse, ex quō M. Catōnem in carcerem dūcī iusserit; Bibulum semper ā senātū abesse; iam nōn Catōnem eō cōnsiliō tōtum diem dīcendō cōnsūmere, ut alicui lēgī resistat.

Postrīdiē eius diēī Aemilius cum patre et M. Crassō in cūriam venit. Ibi patrēs cōnscrīptōs, summōs reī pūblicae virōs, videt atque loquī audit. Dē summā rē pūblicā dēlīberātur. Multae ā Caesariānīs dīcuntur sententiae, quae optimātibus displicēre videntur. Hī saepe inter sēsē aspiciunt; plērumque silent; sibi exspectandum statuunt, dum perāctō cōnsulātū Caesar in prōvinciam abierit. Hūc accēdit, quod lēgātī ab Ariovistō rēge Germānōrum Rōmam vēnēre societātem postulātum. Senātus hortante Caesare dēcernit, cōnsulēs videant, utī ad Ariovistum mūnera amplē remittantur, ipse rēx atque amīcus appellētur. § 137 *b*

Inde in M. Crassī domum proficīscuntur. Iam strepitum ac tumultum in viīs audiunt. Accelerant, ut quid reī sit

cūria -ae *senate house* **ruere** *rush* **sentīre** *understand*

cognōscant. Incendium fierī sentiunt. Aedificium magnum ārdet. Cuius sit, quaeritur. Crassus dominum arcessit. Ārdēns parvō emit pretiō. Proxima quoque ab utrāque parte aedificia parvō coëmit. Servōs suōs arcessit, ut ignīs restinguant aedificiumque reficiant, ut quam prīmum sibi ūsuī sit ad suam rem familiārem augendam. Nam Crassus ab nōn nūllīs dīcitur avārus esse et pecūniae cupidus.

Miserī habitantēs correpta sua ex aedificiō in omnīs partīs efferunt aut fugā sibi salūtem petunt. Brevī tempore servī arcessītī adsunt et magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū operī ignis restinguendī īnstant.

Atque in eā rē omnium intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte latrō impetum in Aemilium facit, sīve spoliandī causā seu quod magis vērī simile est abdūcendī et retinendī, dum pater magnā redimat pecūniā. At Brennus celeriter latrōnem bracchiō arripit ac longē per terram sternit. Quod nisi fīdissimus adfuisset Gallus neque eum prōpulsāsset, nēquāquam facile dīcī potest, quid dē Aemiliō factum esset. § 119 *b*

Posterō diē Paulus, quod ipse paucōs diēs apud Crassum morātūrus erat, Theodōrum et Aemilium cum Brennō domum remittit, nē plūs temporis studiōrum dīmittant. Illī autem, multīs rēbus et in itinere et in urbe cognitīs, libenter Arpīnum ad studia sua revertuntur.

avarice = ***greediness***
edification = *up-**building***
arcessere *summon*
bracchium *arm*
ārdē-ns (while it is) *burn-ing*
cor-repta (that were) *snatched*
coëmere *buy up*
īnstāre *be at*
incendiary = *starter of **fires***
pecuniary = *of **money**, **monetary***
latrō *brigand*
morārī *stay* § 191
quam prīmum *as soon as possible*
rēs familiāris *estate, property*
red-imere *ransom* §§ 219, 4; 220, [13
sternere *lay low*

ARMINIUS PUER SUĒBUS

Rhēnus antīquitus Gallōs ā Germānīs dīvidēbat. Gallī cis Rhēnum, plērīque Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolēbant. Hōrum magna pars fīnium ex silvīs ac palūdibus cōnstābat; illī agrōs ferācīs possidēbant. Antīquī Gallī hūmāniō-rēs erant; nam prīvātōs ac sēparātōs agrōs habēbant. Frūmentō, lacte, pecore vivēbant. Maximam partem agrīcultūrā, parum vēnātiōne ad vīvendum nītēbantur.

Germānī antīquī ferī ac barbarī erant neque multum frūmentō sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvēbant. Parum agrīcultūrae studēbant multumque erant in vēnātiōnibus. Prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil erat. Ita sēdīs fīxās nōn habēbant. Lātē quotannīs vagābantur. Meliōra semper petēbant loca, ubi ovēs, iūmenta, bovēs pāscerentur. Potentiōrēs gentēs optimum occupābant agrum. Īnfirmiōrēs fīnibus expellēbantur. §§ 84, 97

Hīs rēbus factum est, utī paucīs annīs ante Caesaris in Galliam adventum quaedam Suēbōrum nātiōnēs ad superiōrem partem flūminis Dānubī accēderent. (Eōrum gēns erat longē maxima et potentissima Germānōrum omnium.) Paucī ex Suēbīs id flūmen trānsiēre nōn longē ab eō locō ubi ex monte Abnobā prōfluit. In hīs erat prīnceps Nasua nōmine.

ameliorate = *make* ***better***
antiquity = ***ancient****ness*, ***old****ness*
optimistic = *expecting the* ***best***
sediment = ***settlings***

ferāx *rich* **factum est** *happened*
ferus *wild* **gēns, gentis** *tribe*
hūmānus -a -um *civilized*
iūmenta *yoke animals* **-itus** *-ly*
lac, lactis *milk* **lāt-ē** *wide-ly*
nītē-ba-ntur *depend-ed, lean-ed*
ovis *sheep* **palūs** *marsh* § 43
pāsce-re-nt-ur *might feed* § 181 *b*
quotannīs *every year, yearly*
vēnātiō -ōnis *a hunt, hunting*

Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum Nasua domiciliō sibi ac sēdibus suīs dēlēgerat. Flūmen est Isāra, quod ex Alpibus ā merīdiē in Dānubium īnfluit. Collis ā mediō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Isāram vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine, nōn magnā interiectā plānitiē, pariter acclīvis collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius. Uterque collis ab superiōre parte silvestris. Hic tōtus locus altissimīs montibus undique continēbātur. Hinc atque hinc secundum flūmen loca erant aperta, quō pāstōrēs bovēs et iūmenta agerent. §§ 119 *d*, *f*, 159 *g*

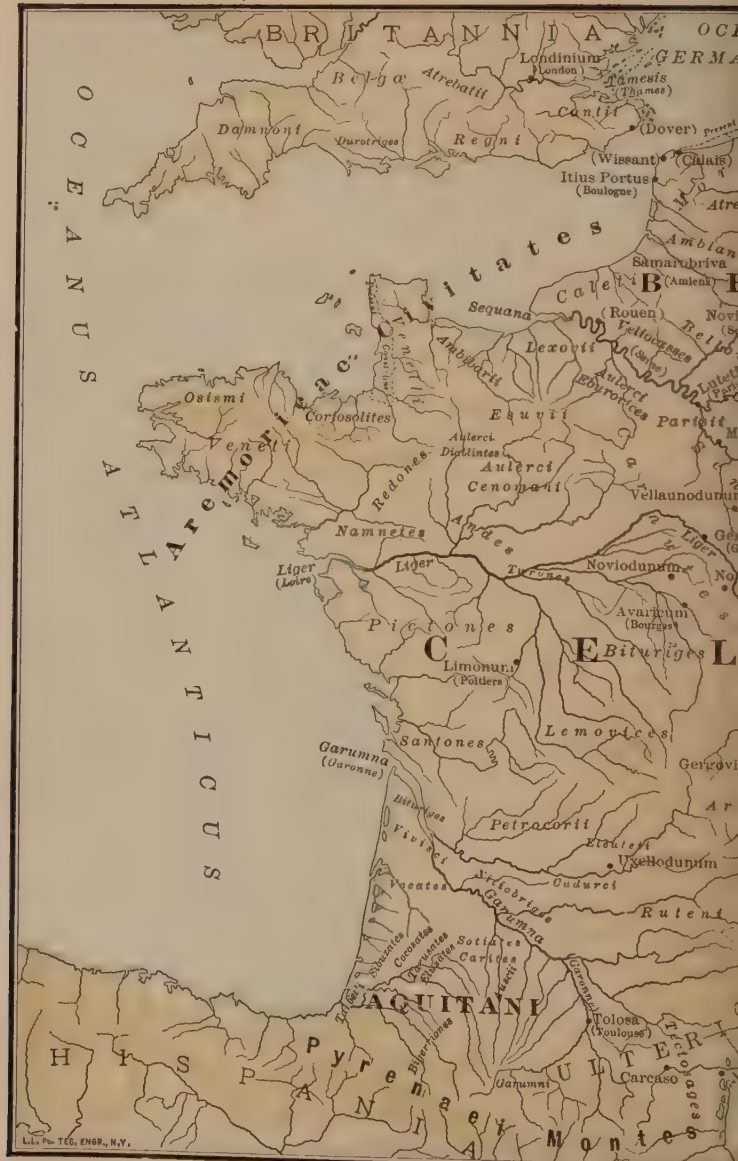
In rīpā eius flūminis in umbrā arborum magnārum Nasua casam aedificārat humilem, proximō annō relinquendam, quod nōn longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licēbat sēdēsque quotannīs erant mūtandae.

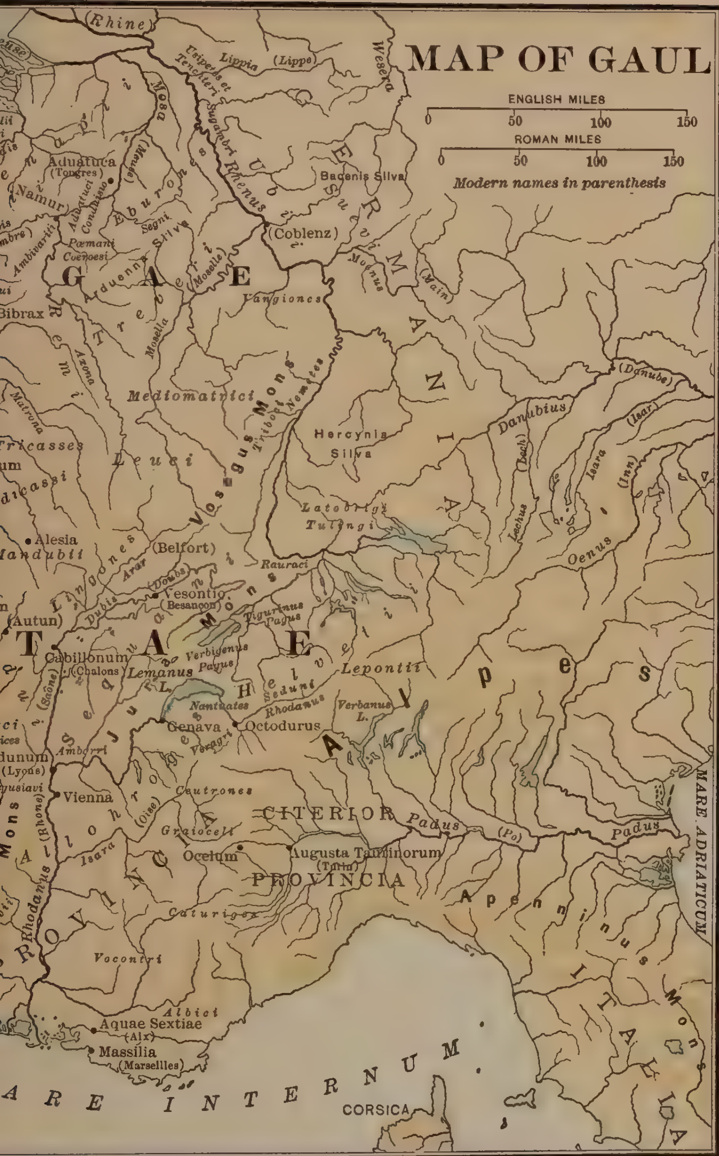
Eō quī secūtus est autumnō, quī fuit annus Mārcō Messālā et Mārcō Pīsōne cōnsulibus, paulō post merīdiem diēī clārī atque serēnī, puer ūndecim annōrum, flāvō capīllō, oculīs caeruleīs, cervī pelle vestītus prō casā Nasuae stābat. Paulō robustior prō aetāte erat; namque nōbīs quīndecim esse annōrum vīsus esset; tantā enim statūrā, tantīs membrīs, tantāque erat magnitūdine corporis.

Pater in vēnātiōne aberat. Servus aderat nūllus. Māter intrā casam versābātur. Puer in aliquam rem intentus vidētur. Omnia paulisper apud casam lūstrat. Patris vēstīgia in harēnā cōnspicit. Cupit ipse vēnātum īre.

de-clivity = *down-sloping* **relinquish*ing*** = *abandoning*
nascent = *being born, rising* **vestige** = *trace, track* § 77 *b*

aequāl-iter *even-ly* **aetās** *age* **harēna** *sand* **lūstrat** *surveys*
capīllus *hair* **cervus** *buck* **pellis** *skin* **quō** *where-to* § 119 *d*


BRITANNIA
OCEANUS ATLANTICUS
Aremoricae Civitates
Belgae
Atrebatii
Londinium (London)
Tamesis (Thames)
Cantii
(Dover)
Damnoni
Durotriges
Regni
(Wissant)
(Calais)
Itius Portus (Boulogne)
Samarobriva (Amiens)
Caleti
Sequana
(Rouen)
Veliocasses
Lexovii
Ambibarii
Aulerci Eburovices
Parisii
Osismi
Corfosolites
Esuvii
Veneti
Aulerci Diablintes
Aulerci Cenomani
Redones
Vellaunodunum
Namnetes
Andes
Liger (Loire)
Liger
Turones
Noviodunum
Avaricum (Bourges)
Pictones
Bituriges
Limonum (Poitiers)
Lemovices
Santones
Garumna (Garonne)
Petrocorii
Vivisci
Uxellodunum
Vocates
Cadurci
Garumna
Ruteni
Sibuzates
Cocosates
Tarusates
Ebusates
Sotiates
Carites
AQUITANI
Tolosa (Toulouse)
Tectosages
Carcaso
Garumni
Biberriones
HISPANIA
Pyrenaei Montes
L.L. Pb. TEG. ENGR., N.Y.



MAP OF GAUL
ENGLISH MILES
0 50 100 150
ROMAN MILES
0 50 100 150
Modern names in parenthesis
Rhine
Lippia
(Lippe)
Usipetes et Tencteri
Sugambri
Wesera
Mosa
(Meuse)
Aduatuca
(Tongres)
(Namur)
Aduatuci
Condrusi
Eburones
Segni
Silva
Pæmani
Cœroesi
Ambivariti
Rhenus
Ubii
Bacenis Silva
(Coblenz)
Suebi
GERMANIA
Moenus
(Main)
Arduenna Silva
Treveri
(Moselle)
Mosella
GALLIA
Vangiones
Bibrax
Remi
Axona
Matrona
Mediomatrici
Nemetes
Triboci
Vosegus Mons
Hercynia Silva
Danubius
(Danube)
(Isar)
Isara
(Inn)
(Lech)
Lechus
Tricasses
Leuci
Latobrigi
Tulingi
Alesia
Mandubii
Lingones
Arar
(Belfort)
Rauraci
Oenus
Dubis
(Doubs)
Vesontio
(Besançon)
(Autun)
Tigurinus Pagus
Cabillonum
(Chalons)
(Saône)
Verbigenus Pagus
Lemanus L.
Helvetii
Seduni
Lepontii
Alpes
Nantuates
Rhodanus
Verbanus L.
Genava
Octodurus
Veragri
Jura
Sequani
Ambarri
(Lyons)
Segusiavi
Vienna
(Rhone)
Ceutrones
CITERIOR
Padus
(Po)
Padus
MARE ADRIATICUM
Graiocelí
Allobroges
Isara
(Oise)
Ocelum
Augusta Taurinorum
(Turin)
PROVINCIA
Apenninus Mons
Rhodanus
Caturiges
Vocontii
Albici
Aquae Sextiae
(Aix)
Massilia
(Marseilles)
MARE INTERNUM
CORSICA
ITALIA

Subitō pharetram cum sagittīs rapit. Gladium puerīlem petit. Haec cingitur arma. Tum sinistrā manū arcum, dextrā duās hastās rūdīs corripit. Ad casae portam respiciēns adversō flūmine proficīscitur sēque celeriter ē cōnspectū effert. § 181 *b* 5

Cum Arminius (nam puerō nōmen erat Arminiō) circiter ducentōs passūs ā casā prōgressus esset, fēminea vōx repente ā tergō sonat. Linguā raucā nōbīsque aliēnā "Age Arminī" vocātur. Prōspectus impediēbātur arboribus, quae inter puerum atque mātrem intercēdēbant. Ille cōnsistit. Respicit. Dum dubitat quid faciendum sit, iterum maiōre vōce "Arminī" clāmātur.

Arminius respondendum nōn exīstimāvit neque mātrī concēdendum putāvit. Duōbus ante diēbus pater Nasua domō exierat. Sē domī relictum indignābātur. Nōn dubium erat quīn illō ipsō diē pater domum redīret. Cupiēbat cum patre redeunte in viā congredī et cum eō revertī. § 220, 13

Hīs rēbus adductus nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum armīs dēsīderātīs atque inventīs vēstīgiīs māter cōnsequerētur sēcumque domum redūceret. Itaque cōnstituit optimum esse quam celerrimē potuit prōcurrere. §§ 69, 90

Eā rē cōnstitūtā, quam maximō poterat cursū prōvolāvit et circiter quīngentōs passūs prōgressus cum lupō congreditur. Quī cum fugere nōllet, puer eī sagittam in apertās faucīs mīsit. Fera īrāta impetum in puerum facit atque iterum vulnerāta hastā cōnficitur.

adversō flūmine *upstream* § 96 **indignābātur** *was irritated*
arcus *bow* **adductus** *induced* **pharetra** *quiver*
fera *wild (beast)* **lupus** *wolf* **red-ī-re-t** *would re-turn*
hasta *spear* **inventīs** *found* **sagitta** *arrow*

Intereā dēsīderātīs armīs māter fīlium vēnātum proficīscī sēnsit, et verita nē cum ferīs congrederētur, servōs vocat et subsequī iubet. Ipsa vehementer commōta praecurrit et prīma fīlium, vixdum lupō interfectō, est cōnsecūta. Simul puerum incūsat, quod sōlus exīsset, et glōriātur, quod tam parātus esset ad perīculum subeundum.

Cum autem servōrum auxiliō puer lupō pellem dētraheret, vōcēs hominum pedumque sonitus audiuntur. Nasua cum suīs accēdit. Duo magna cervōrum corpora reportābant. Erant praetereā trēs hominēs Nōricī, quī dīcēbantur cum eīs in vēnātiōne armīs congressī pugnam commīsisse ac superātī esse. Hōs captōs manibus post tergum vinctīs trahēbant.

Nasuae cum id nūntiātum esset, utī puer lupum sōlus interfēcisset, factum magnopere laudat. Sociī autem, magnā grātulātiōne factā, puerum altē sustulērunt atque in casam patris reportārunt.

Ubi eō ventum est, Nasua sociōs dīmittit. Duōs ex captīvīs servīs cūstōdiendōs trādit. Prīncipem autem captīvōrum sēcum retinet et in casam dūcit. Is enim rēgiō erat vultū nōbilīque genere nātus. Nasua eum suō beneficiō habēre obstrictum volēbat. Itaque vincula eī laxat, vīctum commūnicat. §§ 5 *f*, 130, 134 *b*

Tum pater, māter, fīlius colloquī incipiunt. Dē vēnātiōne quaeritur ac respondētur. Dē fīlī virtūte praedicātur. Ā captīvō etiam quaeritur. Ille prīmō nihil respondēre sed tacitus permanēre. Post paulō autem, cum eōs nōn esse inimīcō in sē animō vīdisset, loquī coepit, et quō amplius loquēbātur, eō līberius atque audācius dīcēbat.

predication = *statement* **tacitly** = *quietly* **utī** (line 13) *how*

Tum dēmum Nasuam in lūdum prōvocat. Dīcit aleā cōnsulerent, utrum ipse in servitūte manēret an sē in lībertātem vindicāret. Nasua assēnsit, et aleā semel atque iterum iactā, Nōricus nōn sōlum suam sed etiam suōrum lībertātem cōnsequitur. Suēbī dextram prēndit. Fidem inter sē dant.

Rūrsus in lūdum prōvocātur. Prīmō recūsātur, quō minus dē lībertāte contenderētur. Tum dēnique homō Nōricus lībertātem, fīlium Suēbus in lūdō pōnit. Semel atque ultimum iacī convenit. Iacitur. Iterum Nōricus vincit. Iterum hominēs fidem inter sē dant. Arminius vocātur. Dēditur. Dominō manūs dare iubētur. Servus est factus.

Posterō diē Vocciō (Nōricō enim nōmen erat Vocciōnī) domum suam revertī cōnstituit. Suōs ad sē vocat et ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparārī iubet. Iūmenta emit. Frūmentum flāgitat, ut cōpia cibī in itinere suppeteret. Trium enim diērum molitīs cibāriīs opus fuit.

Miser Arminius in cōnspectū servōrum, patrum, amīcōrum in servitūtem abdūcitur. Immōtus tamen, fortis et aequō animō mōre suōrum condiciōnem accipit.

"Spem vultū simulat, premit altum corde dolōrem." Dominō servīre incipit. Hūc illūc currit. Imperāta facit.

Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, hōrā diēī circiter quārtā proficīscuntur, et magnīs itineribus Nōreiam contendunt. Tertiō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, eō perveniunt.

cordially = ***heartily*** §21 **convenient** = ***agreeable*** § 220, 4

alea *die, dice* **dēnique** *at last* **premit** *represses, conceals*
iacī *be thrown* **imperāta** *orders* **simulat** *pretends* **spem** *hope*
opus fuit *there was need* (of) **utrum** *whether* **vultus** *fac*

Cum ad Nōreiam accēderent, subitō magnum strepitum atque tumultum audiērunt. In servum incidērunt, quī auxilī causā veniēbat. Dīxit multitūdinem Boiōrum ex fīnibus exīsse. Hōs repente in agrum Nōricum praedandī causā vēnisse et oppidum Nōreiam oppugnāre.

Quod ubi Vocciō audiit, alium in aliam partem mittit. Ex agrīs hominēs convocārī atque in ūnum locum convenīre iubet. Quōrum magnō numerō coāctō atque armātō, oppidum circumveniunt. Undique fit in Boiōs impetus.

Hostēs autem ancipitī perīculō perterritī terga vertunt ac per ōrdinēs Nōricōrum ērumpunt sēque fugae mandant atque in proximās silvās abdunt. Paucīs diēbus discēdunt et eō tōtō annō vagātī ad Helvētiōs perveniunt. Hī Boiōs amīcē suscipiunt et sociōs sibi ascīscunt.

Post hostium fugam statim soror Nōrica ad rēgem Vocciōnem vēnit grātulātum, quod tam opportūnō adventū rediit hostīsque tam necessāriō tempore in fugam dedit. Nōricī rēgem suum magnā grātulātiōne factā suscēpērunt. In prīmīs rēgis soror multa dē errōre frātris quaerit. Cui Vocciō Arminium mōre suōrum statim in servitūtem dat, quod servōs aleā acceptōs diūtius retinēre nōn placēbat. Ita Nōricae servus est factus. Puer autem in diēs dominam benignam amāre discēbat eīque bene servīre cupiēbat.

Proximā aestāte multī barbarī fīnibus ab Suēbīs expulsī sunt et magnā cum multitūdine hominum in Nōricōs vēnērunt. Ibi agrōs vāstābant, aedificia incendēbant, vīcōs cēpē-

circum-vent = *come-around*
e-ruption = *a breaking out*
anceps *double* **abdunt** *conceal*
depredations = *plunderings*
association = *alliance* § 220, 2
benignus -a -um *kind, generous*

runt, multōs ex incolīs in servitūtem abdūxērunt. Extrēmō tamen autumnō proeliō superātī sunt et prīmā hieme cum omnibus cōpiīs discessērunt sēque trāns flūmen Dānubium recēpērunt.

Eā quae secūta est aestāte, quī fuit annus Gaiō Caesare et Mārcō Bibulō cōnsulibus, Vocciō cum Suēbīs pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre volēbat, nē Boiī aliīque barbarī saepius impetum in suōs fīnīs facere audērent.

Quam ob rem placuit eī, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī societātem cum eō peterent atque postulārent, utī Suēbōs sibi conciliāret; eīque sorōrem suam Nōricam in mātrimōnium dat — multī enim Suēbī Ariovistum in Galliam sequēbantur; ipse uxōrem ex Suēbīs habēbat, et propter eam affīnitātem et fortūnam suam magnā erat grātiā apud Suēbōs et aliōs Germānōs. Itaque lēgātī, Nōrica et Arminius proficīscuntur cum mercātōribus, quī iter in Galliam factūrī erant sēque eōs ad Ariovistum dēductūrōs pollicitī sunt.

Galliae tōtius factiōnēs erant duae. Alterius prīncipēs erant Aeduī, alterius Arvernī. Hī inter sē multōs annōs contendēbant. Sēquanī, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō erant, sēsē cum Arvernīs coniūnxērunt. § 159 *g*

Ubi neutrī victōriam reportant, factum est ut Sēquanī arcesserent Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolēbant. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia quīndecim duce Ariovistō Rhēnum trānsiērunt et Arvernīs subsidiō vēnērunt. Germānō-

Arvernīs subsidiō vēn-ērunt *came for aid to the Arvernians*
Quam ob rem = **et ob eam rem** *and for this reason, and therefore*
placuit eī *it suited him, it was decided by him, he decided* § 133
affinity = ***relation*** (*by marriage*) **mercantile** = ***trading***
reconcile = ***make friendly*** **uxorious** = *fond of a* ***wife***

rum auxiliō Aeduī victī et coāctī sunt Sēquanīs obsidēs dare et iūrāre sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum imperiō essent. §§ 154, 229

Sed Ariovistus, hōc bellō cōnfectō, domum reversus nōn est. Plūrīs autem Germānōs trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūcēbat. In Sēquanīs cōnsēdit. Tertiam partem agrī Sēquanī occupāvit. Locum ac sēdīs sibi sociīsque parāvit. Sēquanī ob eam rem incitātī armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnantur. Sociōs arcessunt et magnam multitūdinem cōgunt.

Hae rēs dum apud Sēquanōs geruntur, cum omnibus cōpiīs suīs Ariovistus in silvās sē ac palūdēs recēpit. Ibi multōs mēnsīs sē castrīs tenēbat neque suī potestātem fēcit. Gallī exspectandō fatīgātī dē pugnā dēspērant et domum discēdere coepērunt. Quōs Germānī dispersōs adortī vīcērunt. § 107

Hōc proeliō factō, Ariovistus magnōs sibi spīritūs magnamque arrogantiam sūmere et superbē crūdēliterque imperāre coepit. Omnia ferē oppida Sēquanōrum occupāvit. Līberōs nōbilissimōrum obsidēs poscēbat. Dē hīs, sī qua rēs nōn ad voluntātem suam facta sit, summum supplicium sūmēbat. Sēquanīs omnēs cruciātūs erant perferendī, neque tamen querī neque auxilium implōrāre audēbant. § 106 *b*

Ubi in Sēquanōs ventum est, rēx Ariovistus lēgātōs Nōricōs honōrificentissimē suscēpit. Nōricam in mātrimōnium dūxit. Pācem cum rēge Vocciōne et amīcitiam cōnfirmāvit. Lēgātōs domum dīmīsit. Uxōrī novae permīsit, utī Arminium servum retinēret. Quī brevī tempore magnā

adortī *surprising* **coāctī** *forced* **gerī** *go on* **exsequī** *enforce*
cōpiae *troops* **fēcit** *made, gave* **suī potestātem** *a chance at him*

erat grātiā apud Suēbam uxōrem et fīliam novem annōrum, cui nōmen erat Velaeda. Multōs etiam amīcōs inveniēbat in servīs rēgis, et nōnnūllōs et Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum obsidēs, quī apud Ariovistum erant, cognōvit. § 105

Cum ab hīs quaereret, quō statū rēs in Galliā sē habērent, sīc reperiēbat: tōtīus Galliae factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Aeduōs, alterius Arvernōs; hōs omnī tempore dē potentātū inter sē contendere; Sēquanōs, quī sēsē cum Arvernīs coniūnxissent, auxilium ā Germānīs implōrāsse; hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia quīndecim Rhēnum trānsīsse; Germānōrum auxiliō Aeduōs victōs et coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare et cīvitātem iūre iūrandō obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque recūsātūrōs, quō(minus perpetuō)sub illōrum imperiō essent; Aeduōs omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse; sed peius Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus domum reversus nōn esset et tertiam partem agrī Sēquanī occupāvisset ibique cōnsēdisset. § 56, 3

Cum autem ex eīs quaereret, quae genera Germānōrum et quam multī in Galliā essent, ita repperit: prīmō Suēbōs et Marcomannōs Sēquanīs auxiliō vēnisse; posteā, cum Aeduīs victīs cīvitātēs Galliae Ariovistō bellum īnferrent et ad eum oppugnandum vēnissent, trāductōs esse plūrīs; nunc esse in Galliā ad numerum c. mīlium; hōs sēparātim cōnsēdisse atque eīs generātim esse datōs agrōs, Marcomannīs, Tribocīs, Vangionibus, Nemetibus, Sedusiīs, Suēbīs.

generātim *by tribes* or *nations*
iūre iūrandō *by a right* (that is) *to be sworn, by oath*
potentātus -ūs *power, supremacy*
prīncipātus -ūs *leadership* § 81
rēs sē habent *matters stand*

Haec omnia Gallōs molestē ferre ac verērī, nē omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent et omnīs Gallōs fīnibus expellere cōnārentur; nam hōrum meliōrem esse quam illōrum agrum.

Dē Rōmānīs quoque pauca interdum audiēbat; populum Rōmānum tōtīus orbis terrārum firmissimum esse ac potentissimum; magnam et superbam habēre urbem, quae Rōma appellārētur; hanc maximam et flōrentissimam tōtīus orbis aestimārī; Rōmānīs rēgem esse nūllum; duōs magistrātūs creārī annuōs, quōs cōnsulēs appellārent; iam Ariovistum lēgātōs Rōmam ad senātum mīsisse, quī et mūnera ferrent et societātem cum populō Rōmānō peterent. § 217 *f*

Rōmānī saepe numerō cum Gallīs bellum gesserant, cum fīnibus suīs eōs aut prohibērent aut expellerent, eōsque plērumque superārant. Antīquitus enim Gallī semel atque iterum in Rōmānōrum fīnīs impetum fēcerant atque etiam ad Rōmam accesserant; et quī ex Gallīs in Ītaliā cōnsēderant et ab utrāque parte flūminis Padī vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, eī contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāverant atque sēsē cum Hannibale, ācerrimō acerbissimōque Rōmānōrum hoste, coniūnxerant.

Hīs rēbus fīēbat, utī eae cīvitātēs Galliae, quae proximae essent, paulātim ā Rōmānīs victae et in prōvinciam redāctae sint. Hanc appellābant 'prōvinciam nostram' sīve 'Galliam prōvinciam.' Quae pars prōvinciae citrā Alpīs posita est, eam 'citeriōrem prōvinciam' sīve 'citeriōrem Galliam' vocābant, et quae pars ultrā Alpīs posita est, eam 'ulteriōrem prōvinciam' sīve 'ulteriōrem Galliam' dīcēbant. §§ 74, 5; 152

citerior *nearer, hither* **remunerate** = *return* ***gifts, repay***

Ibi collocābant legiōnēs, quae praesidiō essent cīvibus Rōmānīs, quī hīs in locīs versārentur. Ibi dispōnēbant praesidia, quae barbarōs intrā fīnīs Rōmānōrum ingredī prohibērent. Ibi prōcōnsul imperium tenēbat, dēlēctūs habēbat, tōtī prōvinciae mīlitēs imperābat. Eō mercātōrēs cum mercibus proficīscēbantur atque inde commeābant ad eās cīvitātēs, quae sub septentriōnibus positae sunt. § 119 *d*

Paucīs diēbus quibus in castra Suēbōrum vēnit, Arminius contentus esse coepit. Omnīs ferē prō amīcīs habēbat. Omnibus praeter Ariovistum cupiēbat. Homō enim erat barbarus, crūdēlis, īrācundus. Ab initiō puer eius imperia vix sustinēbat. Quō amplius eum cognōscēbat, eō magis ōderat. Quod tamen tacēbat, neque cuiquam dīcēbat, et aliquā rē intentus in officiīs semper versābātur.

Quā rē inductus rēx nōn inimīcō erat in puerum animō; namque eum tacēre vidēbat neque aliīs sēsē antepōnere intellegēbat. Fortem, modestum, dīligentem esse sciēbat. Et eius summum in utramque uxōrem studium animadverterat, summam in Velaedam voluntātem, fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat.

Hīs rēbus fīēbat, utī Arminius interdum cūstōs pōnerētur puerīs Aeduīs et Sēquanīs, quī obsidēs in castrīs tenēbantur. Post paulō, ubi bonō in eōs animō est cognitus, fīēbat, utī eum magis prō amīcō quam cūstōde aestimārent.

quae . . . essent = **ut eae . . . essent** *that they might be* § 148 *g*
praesidiō cīvibus (*for*) *a defense* (*protection*) *to the citizens* § 73 *e*
prō amīcīs habēbat *took for friends, regarded as friends* § 58
ire = *anger, wrath* **fortitude** = *bravery* **odious** = *hateful*
custodian = *guardian* **merchant** = *trader* **officious** = *dutiful*
com-meābant *went and came* **dis-pōnere** *put at intervals*

Et in prīmīs obses Aeduus, puer quattuordecim annōrum, nōmine Litaviccus eī maximam fidem habēbat.

Ex eō Arminius multa dē Aeduīs, dē Sēquanīs et dē aliīs cīvitātibus Galliae cognōvit: apud Gallōs quīnque esse genera hominum; hōrum ūnum genus esse druidum, quī sacrīs praeessent; alterum nōbilium, quī essent optimātēs Gallōrum ac plērumque agrī tenērent; in hīs esse prīncipēs cīvitātum, ē quibus magistrātūs creārentur et quīdam dēligerentur ad summās rēs cōnficiendās; tertium genus esse equitum, quī plērumque in bellīs versārentur; quārtum genus esse plēbis, — partim quī sēsē dīvitum et potentiōrum amīcitiae dēdunt et ā patrōnīs 'clientēs' appellantur, partim quī aere aliēnō oppressī 'obaerātī' dīcuntur; quōrum condiciō paulō est suprā servitūtem; — quīntum genus esse servōrum, quōrum plērīque essent, quī bellō captī sint.

Multīs ante annīs Arvernōs cum populō Rōmānō bellum gessisse ac superātōs esse; posteā autem populum Rōmānum pācem cum eīs fēcisse neque stīpendium imposuisse atque eōs lēgibus suīs ūtī voluisse; Rōmānōs enim rārō umquam exercitum ē fīnibus Galliae prōvinciae ēdūcere et Gallōs līberōs esse velle; quā ex rē fierī, utī Gallī multō minus imperium Rōmānōrum quam Germānōrum timēre dēbērent.

Aeduōs populī Rōmānī esse amīcōs, saepe numerō frātrēs et cōnsanguineōs ā senātū appellātōs; eōs rēgem nūllum habēre sed magistrātum creāre annuum, quem 'vergobretum' appellārent; eius imperium summum neque firmissimum esse,

sacrīs (Dat.) **praeessent** *were to take charge of sacrifices.* § 220, 11

aes aliēnum *another's money*
druid-um *of druids* (priests)
ob-aerātī *held for debt, debtors*
stīpendium *tribute, tax*

quod Dumnorīx, frāter Dīvitiācī, quī paucīs ante annīs prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinuerat, facultātēs magnās ad largiendum habēret; hunc nōn sōlum domī sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū alere et circum sē habēre; saepe plēbem dēterrēre, nē imperiīs oboedīrent; quod eius auctōritās apud plēbem prīvātim plūs valēret quam ipsōrum magistrātuum; ipsum rēgnī obtinendī cupidum esse; quā cupiditāte inductum, nisi quid accideret, rēgnum iam occupātūrum.

Dīxit īdem Litaviccus apud Sēquanōs fuisse rēgem patris suī memoriā hominem potentissimum, Catamantaloedem; rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuisse et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcum appellātum esse; nunc autem apud Sēquanōs longē nōbilissimum esse et dītissimum Casticum, Catamantaloedis fīlium; rēgnum obtinēre cupere neque occupāre audēre propter inimīcitiās prīncipum Sēquanōrum et Ariovistī auctōritātem.

Paucīs post diēbus lēgātī, quōs Rōmam mīserat, ad Ariovistum reversī sunt: senātum mūnera accēpisse et petente Gaiō Caesare, quī eō tempore erat cōnsul, Ariovistum rēgem atque amīcum appellāsse. Quibus rēbus Ariovistus magnopere sublātus, praesentibus obsidibus Aeduīs et Sēquanīs, summopere glōriātus est atque ita locūtus: sē quoque frātrem esse Rōmānōrum; Caesarem, quī proximō annō prōcōnsul imperium Galliae prōvinciae obtentūrus esset, sibi suīsque amīcissimum esse. §§ 100, 228–9

Eō quod secūtum est vēre, quī fuit annus Lūciō Pīsōne, Aulō Gabīniō cōnsulibus, crēbrī rumōrēs ad Ariovistum

alere *feed* **audēre** *dare* **sūmptus** *expense* **sub-lātus** *puffed up*

afferēbantur, itemque per mercātōrēs certior factus est Helvētiīs esse in animō dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīre. Exeundī hās esse causās; prīmum, quod prō multitūdine hominum angustōs sē fīnīs habēre arbitrārentur; deinde quod ab nōn nūllīs prīncipibus sollicitārentur. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Ariovistus quōsdam ex Aeduīs et Sēquanīs vidērī nōn inimīcō in Helvētiōs animō esse.

Hīs rēbus commōtus Ariovistus explōrātōrēs in dīversās cīvitātēs Galliae dīmīsit. Eīs negōtium dat, utī ea quae apud eās gerantur cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Eōdem ferē tempore lēgātōs trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit; sed quā dē causā aut quam in partem iter factūrī essent, Arminius nōn cognōvit. § 226

Itaque ad obsidēs Aeduōrum sē recēpit. Litaviccum ad sē vocat. Quaerit ex sōlō quibus dē causīs ē fīnibus Helvētiī exitūrī essent, quī hominēs essent, et quā rē Ariovistus tantō opere commovērētur. Aeduus respondit: hīs paucīs annīs bellō frāctōs esse Aeduōs, Arvernōs, Sēquanōs; nōn esse dubium, quīn eō tempore tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; bellandī cupidōs esse; reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdere; magnō dolōre afficī, quod angustōs fīnīs habērent; montibus enim altīs aut lātīs flūminibus undique continērī; hīs rēbus prohibērī, quō minus aut lātē vagārentur aut facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferrent.

Eīs negōtium dat utī *assigns them the task that* (they find out).

commotion = ***agitation*** | **dubious** = ***doubtful*** § 153
fractured = ***broken*** | **query** = ***seek*** *to know*, ***ask*** § 147 *e*

angustus -a -um *narrow* | **plūrimum possent** *were most able*
dīmittere *send away, let go* | **prae-cēdere** *pre-cede, excel* § 220, 11

Omnem cīvitātem Helvētiam in quattuor pagōs dīvīsam esse; hōrum ūnum pagum Tigurīnum appellārī; Tigurīnōs patrum suōrum memoriā domō exīsse; bellum cum populō Rōmānō gessisse; Lūcium Cassium cōnsulem occīdisse exercitumque eius pepulisse et sub iugum mīsisse; hāc victōriā Helvētiōs īnsolenter glōriārī et virtūtem Rōmānōrum dēspicere cōnsuēsse. § 60

Ubi Arminius ex eō quaesīvit, quis rēx apud Helvētiōs esset, Litaviccus ita respondit: eōs rēgem habēre nūllum; Gallōs enim lībertātem maximī aestimāre; cupere sē ipsōs creāre magistrātūs, quī sibi praeessent; rēgēs habēre nōlle; ipsum nōmen rēgis verērī atque ōdisse. §§ 128, 130

Potentiōrēs tamen vulgō rēgna occupāre cōnārī; quī cum ob eam rem aliās domō expellantur, aliās ā cīvitāte interficiantur (apud Helvētiōs enim poena erat ut damnātī ignī cremārentur), tamen hōc cōnātū nōn dēsistere; omnīs sibi conciliāre; domī coniūrāre; societātēs cum prīncipibus aliārum cīvitātum petere. Atque eō sorōrēs, fīliās, propinquās suās nūptum collocāre. § 157

In hōc genere fuisse Celtillum Arvernum, quī victīs Aeduīs, prīncipātum tōtīus Galliae obtinēret, Orgetorīgem Helvētium, Casticum Sēquanum, Dumnorīgem Aeduum, quōrum prīmus ab Arvernīs interfectus esset, alter timōre poenae perterritus sibi mortem cōnscīvisset, duo reliquī etiam nunc in spem rēgnī obtinendī venīrent.

belli-gerent = ***making war*** **odium** = ***hatred, dislike***
cremate = ***burn** up* **penalty** = ***punishment***
nuptials = ***marriage** ceremonies* **vulgar** = *of the* ***crowd***

cōnscīscere *take upon* **iugum** *yoke* **propinqua** *relative*

Īdem dīxit: Helvētiōs virtūte omnibus praestāre; Ariovistum hoc intellegere atque timēre, nē Sēquanōs dēfēnsum et Germānōs oppugnātum venīrent; — namque bienniō ante Orgetorīx coniūrātiōnem nōbilium domī fēcerat et Helvētiīs persuāsum habēbat, ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent, tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent, imperiōque potīrentur et domiciliō maximē frūmentāria loca occupārent. § 182 *b*

Hīs rēbus adductī Helvētiī cōnstituērunt ea, quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmenta et carrōs coëmere, sēmentīs quam maximās facere, frūmentī quam maximam cōpiam parāre, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt. Profectiōnem in tertium annum lēge cōnfirmant. §§ 129, 158

Orgetorīx sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit. In Sēquanōs et Aeduōs venit pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmātum, societātem petītum, auxilium sibi rogātum. Dumnorīgī fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. Cum eō et cum Casticō societātem suō nōmine facit. Utrīque persuādet, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret. Illīs probat facile esse cōnāta perficere. Dīcit sēsē illīs, illōs sibi rēgnum cōpiīs atque exercitū esse conciliātūrōs. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī fidem et iūs iūrandum inter sē dant, et rēgnō occupātō tōtīus Galliae imperiō sēsē potīrī posse spērant. §§ 108 *b*, 147

biennial = *two-yearly* § 67
conciliation = *winning over*
copious = *well* ***supplied***
probable = *to be* ***proven***

cōnāt-a *things attempted* § 100
cōn-firmāre *establish, assure*
dūcere *lead, draw, decide*
lēgātiō *mission* **lēgātus** *envoy*
op-pugnāt-um (§157 *b*) *to at-tack*
potīrī *get* **prae-stāre** *excel*

Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs, index ad magistrātūs Helvetiōrum vēnit. Dīcit alia domī, alia cum fīnitimīs cōnsilia inīrī, coniūrātiōnem fierī. Orgetorīgem prōditōrem indicat. Omnia ēnūntiat. Haec rēs in vulgus Helvētiōrum effertur. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem indiciō audītō causam dīcere cōgunt. Diem causae dictiōnis cōnstituunt. Iūdex nōminātur. Diē cōnstitūtā ad iūdicium ītur. Eō Orgetorīx omnem familiam suam cōgit. Clientīs obaerātōsque suōs eōdem condūcit. Per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, Orgetorīx mortuus est. Neque abest suspīciō, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit. §§ 152–3

Arminius hāc ōrātiōne Litaviccī intellēxit post eius mortem Helvētiōs nihilō minus ē fīnibus exīre cōnārī et iam ad eam rem parātōs esse. Ariovistum autem eōs timēre vīdit atque lēgātōs trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam auxiliōrum petendōrum causā mīsisse sentiēbat. 118 *c*

Quīndecim post diēbus lēgātī, quōs trāns Rhēnum ab Ariovistō missōs suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, ad eum revertērunt: Harūdēs hominum mīlia vīgintī quattuor eī auxiliō mittere; hōs iam domō profectōs esse. §§ 56, 3; 94 *b*; 159 *g*

Eōdem ferē tempore speculātōrēs ex Aeduīs rediērunt: esse omnīnō itinera duō, quibus itineribus Helvētiī domō exīre possent, ūnum per Sēquanōs angustum et difficile, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur et quā Sēquanīs invītīs

carriage = ***cart, car, wagon***
e-nunciation = *a* ***telling out***
ex-ecution = ***following out***
incited = ***roused, angered***
indicator = ***pointer*** (***accuser***)
speculator = *one who* ***spies***

causa *case* **dīcere** *plead* **quā** § 119 *g* **vix** *hardly*

īre nōn possent; alterum per prōvinciam Rōmānam, multō facilius atque expedītius, proptereā quod inter fīnīs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluat, isque nōnnūllīs locīs vadō trānseātur; in eō flūmine pontem esse; illāc autem Caesare invītō Helvētiōs trānsīre nōn posse. § 119 *g*

Plērōsque Aeduōs et Sēquanōs recūsāre, quō minus per suōs fīnīs eōs īre paterentur; timēre enim, nē agrōs populārentur; spērāre faciliōre itinere adductōs Helvētiōs iter per prōvinciam temptātūrōs et cum exercitū populī Rōmānī armīs congressūrōs. § 153

Ūnōs ex omnibus Casticum et Dumnorīgem nihil eārum rērum dīcere, quās reliquī dīcerent, sed tacitōs permanēre et nihil eīs rēbus commovērī. § 137 *c*

Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Ariovistus nihil sibi timendum putāvit ac satis habēbat in praesentia domī remanēre et, quid Caesar faceret, exspectāre. Dumnorīgī autem et Casticō cūstōdēs pōnere īnstituit. Eius reī causā quōsdam ē suīs in Sēquanōs et in Aeduōs mittit speculātōrēs, quī negōtiātum et mercātum venīre vidērentur. § 157 *b*

Hīs negōtium dat, utī quae agant et quibuscum loquantur cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Nam societātis reminīscēbātur, quam bienniō ante cum illīs Orgetorīx fēcerat, et memoriā tenēbat Dumnorīgem fīliam Orgetorīgis in mātrimōnium dūxisse. § 107 *b*

commotion = ***disturb**ance*
desper**ation** = ***hope**lessness*
facility = ***easi**ness*, ***ease***

con**fine** = *keep in* ***boundaries***
patient = ***allow**ing*, ***suffer**ing*
taciturnity = ***silence***, ***still**ness*

in praesentia *for the present*
negōtiāt-um *to do business*

recūsāre *give back reasons . . .*
quō minus *why not, refuse to*

Dum haec in Sēquanīs geruntur, Helvētiī nōn sibi exspectandum statuunt, quīn domō proficīscantur. Trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Reliquum omne frūmentum combūrunt. Oppida incendunt, ut domum reditiōnis spem tollerent. Quā sublātā, sēsē parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda fore spērant. § 106 *d*

Helvētiī iter per Sēquanōs timēbant. Per prōvinciam iter temptāre mālunt. Sibi Rhodanum esse trānseundum cōnstituunt. (Eīs enim in animō erat Allobrogibus vel persuādēre vel vī cōgere, ut per fīnīs suōs eōs īre paterentur.) Diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlīs, Lūciō Pīsōne, Aulō Gabīniō cōnsulibus. § 151 *b*

Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe Rōmā proficīscī, et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Rhodanum pervenit. Tōtī prōvinciae mīlitēs imperat. Pontem, quī in Rhodanō erat, rescindit. §§ 5 *f*, 148 *g*

Cuius adventū cognitō, ad eum Helvētiī mittunt, quī dīcerent: sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere; rogāre, ut id sibi facere liceat. § 229

Caesar concēdendum nōn putābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit: diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Īdūs Aprīlīs reverterentur. § 147 *d*

imperative = ***demanding***
inter-cede = ***come-between***
male-factor = ***evil-doer***
re-scind = ***cut away*** or ***down***

com-b-ūrere *burn up* § 220, 4
dīcere *say, set* **gerī** *be done*
tollere, sus-tulī, sub-lātus *take away, remove, lift*

Intereā rīpam Rhodanī vāllō fossāque mūnīvit. Hōc opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnentur prohibēre possit; et, ubi lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare, et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. §§ 80, 96, 148 *f*

Quā spē dēiectī Helvētiī, sī vadīs Rhodanī perrumpere possent, cōnantur. Operis mūnītiōne repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt. Lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt. Is ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per fīnīs suōs eōs īre patiantur.

Intereā Caesar mūnītiōnibus Titum Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit. Ipse in Ītaliam magnīs itineribus contendit, duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit et trīs, quae in Ītaliā hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpīs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi pulsīs barbarīs, quī itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnābantur, in ulteriōrem prōvinciam diē septimō pervēnit. § 63 *a*

Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnīs Sēquanōrum cōpiās suās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum fīnīs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī referēbantur et lēgātī ab Allobrogibus et ab Aeduīs veniēbant; Allobrogēs nūntiātum sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī; Aeduī auxilium rogātum et questum, quod

de-jected = ***dis-ap-pointed***, ***down-cast***, ***dis-heartened***

refer = ***relate*** = ***report*** = ***bring*** *back* (*word* or *news*)

mūnīre, **com-mūnīre** *fortify*
per-rumpere *break through*
prae-ficere *put in charge*

quest-um (§ 157) *to complain*
quō = **ut eō** *that by this means*
trādūx-era-nt *had led over*

Helvētiī eōrum fīnīs populārentur: ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs Rōmānī agrī vāstārī, līberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī non dēbuerint. §§ 130, 149

Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar mātūrandum sibi statuit; et Aeduīs frūmentum exercituī pollicentibus, magnīs itineribus hostīs sequitur. Helvētiī trīs iam partīs cōpiārum flūmen Ararim trādūxerant. Caesar subitō ad eam partem pervenit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantīs aggressus magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandāvērunt. Is pagus appellābātur Tigurīnus. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae Lūcium Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. §§ 98 ī, 156

Hōc proeliō factō, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō eius adventū commōtī, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs, ubi Caesar eōs esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum; nē ipsōs dēspiceret; sē virtūte contendere quam dolō nītī mālle. §§ 107 *b*, 143

ag-gressor = ***at-tack**er* § 220, 2 — **merit**ed = *were **deserving***
casually = *by **chance** or **luck*** — **opin**ion = *way of **think**ing*
insolvent = *not **pay**ing* § 220, 7 — **pen**insula = ***almost** an island*

incommodum -ī *defeat, disaster* — **nītī** *rely* — **nōn-dum** *not yet*
mandāre *bid, entrust, give up* — **repente** or **subitō** *suddenly*

Hīs Caesar, quae vīsum est, respondit, sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae pollicēantur, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās eīs intulerint, item sī aliīs satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum. §§ 143, 148 *g*

Dīvicō respondit: Helvētiōs obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuēsse. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem praemittit, quī videant quās in partīs hostēs iter faciant. Suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentia hostem rapīnīs prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et Rōmānōrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset. § 115, p. 28

Hīs omnibus diēbus Caesar frūmentum flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat. Id cum animadvertissent Helvētiī, iter ab Ararī āvertērunt, sī forte Caesarem ā flūmine abdūcerent et frūmentō commeātūque interclūderent.

Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī; cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere. § 134 *b*

avert = *turn away, turn aside*
contain = *withhold, hold in*
exclude = *shut out, cut off*
rapine = *plundering, robbery*
satisfactory = *doing enough*
secession = *withdrawal*

commeātus *supplies*
forte *perchance* [§ 220, 7
īnferre, intulī, illātus *bring upon, carry against, inflict*
inter-clūdere *shut off, cut off*
novissimus *newest, last (of)*
sī abdūcerent (to see) *if they might draw (him) away*
sub-vex-era-t *had brought up*
vīsum est *seemed (good, right)*

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs Aeduōrum prīncipibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs vergobretō Liscō, quī vītae necisque in suōs habuit potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī frūmentum posset, tam necessāriō tempore ab iīs nōn sublevētur. Multō gravius queritur, quod ab iīs sit dēstitūtus, quibus auxiliō venīret. § 66

Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod anteā tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōnnūllōs, quī prīvātī plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre, nē frūmentum cōnferant, quod dēbeant: Aeduōs Helvētiīs cupere dēbēre; Rōmānōs ē fīnibus prōvinciae ēgredī incipere; neque quemquam dubitāre dēbēre, quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint, Aeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem Rōmānōrum cōnsilia hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse. §§ 119 *b*, 219, 4

Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit. Reperit esse

quibus auxiliō venīret *for aid to whom he was coming* §§ 159 *g*, 225
prīvātī plūs possint (though) *private citizens are more powerful*
neque dubitāre dēbēre quīn *nor ought* (anyone) *to doubt, but-that*
sī superāverint, sint ēreptūrī *if they overcome, they will take away*
plūribus praesentibus *when too many were present* § 95 *b*

coercion = ***restraint, checking*** **instance** = ***pressing on, urging***
counsel = ***advice, plan*** [§ 119 *c* **querulous** = ***complaining***
iactārī *be aired* **quem-quam** **tacu-era-t** *had kept quiet*

vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia quotannīs parvō pretiō redimere; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; nēminem domī contrā eum quicquam audēre; neque sōlum domī sed etiam apud proximās cīvitātēs largiter posse; huius potentiae causā sorōrem et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem; ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta sit. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, Caesar satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quā rē in eum animadverteret. § 72

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīvitiācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium cognōverat; nam, nē Dumnorīgis suppliciō Dīvitiācī animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīvitiācum ad sē vocārī iubet. Per interpretem cum eō colloquitur. Petit atque hortātur, ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē Dumnorīge statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

Dīvitiācus Caesarem obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: Scīre sē, illa esse vēra; nec quemquam plūs quam sē dolōris capere. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, futūrum, utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. §§ 115 *c*, 119 *b*

anim-ad-version = *turning mind to, attending to*

grace = *favor* **largess** = *bribery* **sumptuously** = *expensively*

ob-secrare *be-seech, beg*

rēs novae *revolt* **vectīgal** *tax*

Haec cum plūribus verbīs ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit. Rogat, fīnem ōrandī faciat. Tantī eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, ut iniūriās condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat. Frātrem adhibet. Quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit. Quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit. Monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnīs suspīciōnēs vītet. Iniūriās praeteritās Dīvitiācō frātrī sē condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī cūstōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur scīre possit. Posterō diē Caesar, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostīs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit. §§ 61, 73 *a*

Postrīdiē eius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit. Iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte, oppidum Aeduōrum longē maximum et cōpiōsissimum, īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, quod Rōmānōs timōre perterritōs exīstimābant, ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

Caesar cōpiās suās in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum. In summō colle duās legiōnēs novās et omnia auxilia collocāvit. Impedīmenta in ūnum locum

apprehend = ***seize*** *upon*
condone = ***forgive***
orator = ***pleader***
admonition = *a* ***warning, advice***
ad-hibēre *have present* § 220, 2
cōnsuērat *was accustomed* § 225
colle mediō *halfway up the hill*
ostentatious = ***showy*** § 220, 9
preterit = ***bygone***
science = ***knowledge***
inevitable = *unavoidable*
lacessere *harass, annoy*
ā novissimō *on the rear* (*of*)
super-esse *be* (left) *over* § 220, 15

cōnferrī et eum mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī impedīmenta sua in ūnum locum contulērunt. Ipsī phalange factā sub prīmam aciem Rōmānōrum successērunt.

Caesar prīmum suum, deinde suōrum equōs ex cōnspectū sustulit, ut spem fugae tolleret. Quibus sublātīs, suōs cohortātus proelium commīsit. Rōmānī ē locō superiōre pīla mīsēre. Hīs phalangem facile perfrēgērunt, quod plūra hostium scūta pīlīs trānsfīxa et colligāta sunt, ut multī scūtum manū ēmitterent et nūdō corpore pugnārent. Tandem vulneribus cōnfectī et pedem referēbant et, quod mōns suberat circiter mīlle passuum, eō sē recipiēbant. Captō monte et succēdentibus Rōmānīs, Helvētiī rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. § 130

Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ūsque ad noctem pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Diūtius cum sustinēre Rōmānōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque Rōmānī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. § 106 *c*

phalange factā *with a phalanx formed, after forming a phalanx*
proelium commīsit *let the battle go together, joined battle*

fragile = ***break**able*
ancipital = *two **head**ed, **double***

escutcheon = *ornamental **shield***
suc-ceed = ***come up, get up*** *(to)*

colligāta *bound together* § 220, 4
cōn-ferre, con-tulī, col-lātus *bring together, collect, put off*

sub-esse *be near*
tollere, sus-tulī, sub-lātus *lift, take away, remove* § 220, 14

Ex eō proeliō circiter mīlia hominum cxxx. (centum trīgintā) superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continentur iērunt. Caesar litterās nūntiōsque ad reliquōs Gallōs mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent, sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt et flentēs pācem petiērunt. Obsidēs, arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit. Hīs trāditīs eōs in dēditiōnem accēpit. § 115 *c*

Helvētiōs in fīnīs suōs revertī iussit. Allobrogibus imperāvit, utī eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent. Ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Boiōs petentibus Aeduīs ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent, concessit. § 97

Dum haec in Aeduīs geruntur, Arminius inter spem atque metum dubius erat. Dominam et Velaedam amābat. Arioviſtum ōderat. Rēs Sēquanōrum miserābātur. Amīcō Litaviccō et Aeduīs cupiēbat. Suēbōs autem trāns Rhēnum in armīs esse et Ubiīs bellum īnferre intellegēbat. Hīs praeesse patrem Nasuam et Cimberium patruum audiēbat. Saepe ārdēbat effugere sēque ad patrem Suēbōsque cōnferre.

Eōdem tempore multa Arioviſtō erant cūrae. Gallī fīnīs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēbant. Trāns Rhēnum autem cōnfertī Germānī sibi ipsī impedīmentō erant.

adjutant = ***helper, assistant***
se cōnferre *betake himself*
cōnfertī *crowded*
dē-ditiō *giving up, surrender*
facere(i) *make up, give*
flēre *weep* **metus** *fear, dread*
obses, obsidis *hostage*
restitution = ***rebuilding***
per-fugere(i) *flee over* § 220, 10
poscere, poposcī *demand, ask*
prae-esse *be in command* (of)
quī = **et eī** *and* (when) *they*
prō-icere(i) *throw forward*
trā-dere *hand over, deliver*

Hī paulātim cōnsuēscēbant Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam venīre optimōsque agrōs occupāre. Id Gallī molestē ferēbant neque Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī volēbant.

Hīs rēbus adductus hūc illūc animō ferēbātur. Prīmō gaudēre coepit, quod Aeduīs causa inimīcitiae cum Helvētiīs intercēderet, quod veterēs inimīcī Helvētiī cum Rōmānīs essent armīs congressī. Eī autem grātum fuit, quod Aeduus Dumnorīx Caesarī in suspīciōnem vēnisset. Posteā autem cum Helvētiōs proeliō pulsōs in Lingonas fugere, Caesarem īnsequī audīret, ancipitī sententiā commovēbātur. § 147 *g*

Dum dubitat, quid faciendum sit, speculātōrēs, quōs in Aeduōs Sēquanōsque ab eō missōs suprā dīximus, ad eum revertērunt: Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō, Caesarem in prōvinciam nōn revertī exercitumque eius in Lingonibus esse. Prīncipēs autem tōtīus Galliae Celticae ad eum grātulātum vēnisse; hōs petiisse, utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere licēret, quod habuerint quāsdam rēs, quās ā Caesare petere voluissent; quod concilium permissum et paucīs post diēbus Bibracte convocātum esset; neque abesse suspīciōnem, quīn contrā Germānōs coniūrārent.

Hīs rēbus commōtus Ariovistus mātūrat nūntiōs in omnīs partīs dīmittere. Iubet manūs cōgī, in armīs exercērī, exercitum in Tribocōs condūcī, ut, sī quō opus esset ad bellum ēdūcī posset; nam quā dē causā Caesar exercitum suum

Aeduīs . . . intercēderet *there happened* (to be) *a reason of hostility for the Aeduans; they happened to have reason for hostility*
in diem . . . indīcere *arrange* (set) *for a certain day* § 221 *b*
sī quō opus esset *if there should be need of any* § 71 *c*

congressī essent *had met* **manūs** *bands, hands*

in Lingonibus tenēret, nōndum perspexerat; et cuius absentis amīcitiā anteā nīxus erat, eius praesentis imperium magnopere verēbātur. § 70–3

Eōdem tempore, quod parātiōrēs ad bellum erant, prīncipēs Harūdum ad sē vocat. Quōs maximē cohortātus docet, quantō opere commūnis salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Harūdēs in fīnīs Aeduōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātīs, eōs ā sē dīmittit.

Dum haec in Tribocīs geruntur, lēgātī ā Caesare ad Ariovistum missī sunt, quī dīcerent: Haec sibi ad Ariovistum esse data mandāta; nē quōs Germānōs amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; obsidēs Aeduīs redderet. Sī id ita fēcisset, Caesarī populōque Rōmānō perpetuam amīcitiam cum eō esse futūram; sīn obsidēs retinēre et bellō persequī persevērāret, Aeduōrum iniūriās Caesarem nōn esse neglēctūrum. §§ 143, 225

Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī, ut quī vīcissent, eīs, quōs vīcissent, imperārent; Aeduōs bellī fortūnam temptāsse ac superātōs esse; sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet, quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sē ā Caesare in suō iūre impedīrī. Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn esse neglēctūrum, nēminem

cuius absentis *on whose* (friendship . . . when he was) *absent*
eius praesentis imperium *his power* (he feared when) *present* § 94 (Direct Statement.) **Obsidēs redde** *give back the hostages* § 143

nītī, nīxus *rely, depend* **dis-tinērī** See § 220, 5

sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum Caesar vellet, congrederētur; intellēctūrum, quid Germānī virtūte possent. Hōc respōnsō datō, lēgātōs ad Caesarem remittit.

Paucīs post diēbus nūntiī Rōmā missī ad Ariovistum vēnērunt: Iniussū senātūs Caesarem ē fīnibus prōvinciae ēgressum; Gallōs sibi conciliāre cōnārī; iam apud eōs plūrimum posse, et huius potentiae causā inimīcōs rēgis atque amīcī populī Rōmānī dēfendere; haec omnia contrā senātūs voluntātem facere; Rōmae Caesarem reī pūblicae hostem aestimārī; Catōnem, Lentulum, Mārcellum aliōsque summōs populī Rōmānī virōs Caesaris potentiam verērī; magnō opere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis interesse eum aut capī aut interficī; Rōmānīs tamen id facere nōn licēre. Quod sī Ariovistus fēcerit, multīs nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum, quōrum omnium amīcitiam Caesaris morte redimere posset. § 73 *c*

Hīs Ariovistus ita respondit: Sibi esse in animō Caesarem in colloquium venīre invītāre; quem, sī posset, vel captūrum vel interfectūrum; sī minus potuisset, factūrum, utī intellegeret, quid Germānī in bellō possent. §§ 70–1

Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs, Ariovistus castra mōvit et ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod erat longē maximum et mūnītissimum oppidum Sēquanōrum, contendit. Cum septem diērum viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī, Sēquanōs

Cum vellet, congrederētur *when he wished, he should come on*
interesse eum . . . capī *it was the interest* (of the state) *that he be* (either) *captured* (or killed) §§ 66, 73 *c*, 143, 151

estimate = ***reckon***, *rate* § 73 **pernicious** = ***ruinous, destructive***

grātum *favor* **minus** *not so* **quod sī** *but if* **quōrum** *and their*

Rōmānīs frūmentum sumministrāre et Caesarem magnīs itineribus accessisse et Vesontiōnem iam occupāsse.

Quibus rēbus vehementer commōtus Ariovistus cum omnibus cōpiīs in Tribocōs sēsē recēpit nūntiōsque ad Nasuam et Cimberium mīsit, quī ab eīs postulārent, utī quam celerrimē possent, Rhēnum trānsīrent sibique centum pagōs Suēbōrum auxiliō addūcerent aut, sī minus potuissent, quam plūrimōs possent sibi subsidiō summitterent. § 90

Intereā paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae causā morātus Caesar castra mōvit et in Tribocōs profectus est. Ariovistō cum id nūntiātum esset, Caesarem ad sē venīre neque iam longē abesse, lēgātōs ad eum mīsit: Quod anteā dē colloquiō postulāsset, id iam fierī posse, quoniam propius accessisset; diem colloquiō dīceret; nē quem peditem addūceret; uterque cum equitātū venīret. §§ 113, 158 *c*

Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus aequō ferē spatiō ā castrīs utrīusque aberat. Eō ad colloquium vēnērunt. Caesar equīs dēvexit legiōnem, quam ducentīs passibus ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs utī ad colloquium addūcerent, postulāvit. § 147 *e*

Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senatūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit. Postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat; nē Aeduīs bellum īnferret; obsidēs redderet; nē quōs Germānōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur. § 143

postulant = *one who asks*
subsidiary = *giving support*
vehemently = *mightily*
vehicle = *carriage, carrier*

Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs: sēdīs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs. Nōn sēsē Gallīs sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre; aliā ratiōne nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appetierit atque Caesarem nōn prō amīcō sed hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum. § 115 *b*

Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad Caesariānōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in eōs conicere. Quō factō, Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit, nē quod omnīnō tēlum reicerent. Eō factō, Ariovistus intellēxit armīs sibi esse cum Rōmānīs congrediendum. Statuit autem Suēbōs exspectandōs, Rōmānōs frūmentō prohibendōs. §§ 113, 134 *b*

Trīduō post Ariovistus castra prōmōvit et praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit atque mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et Ariovistō pugnandī potestātem fēcit. §§ 58, 103, 226

potestātem fēcit *made, arranged,* or *gave an opportunity* (to fight)

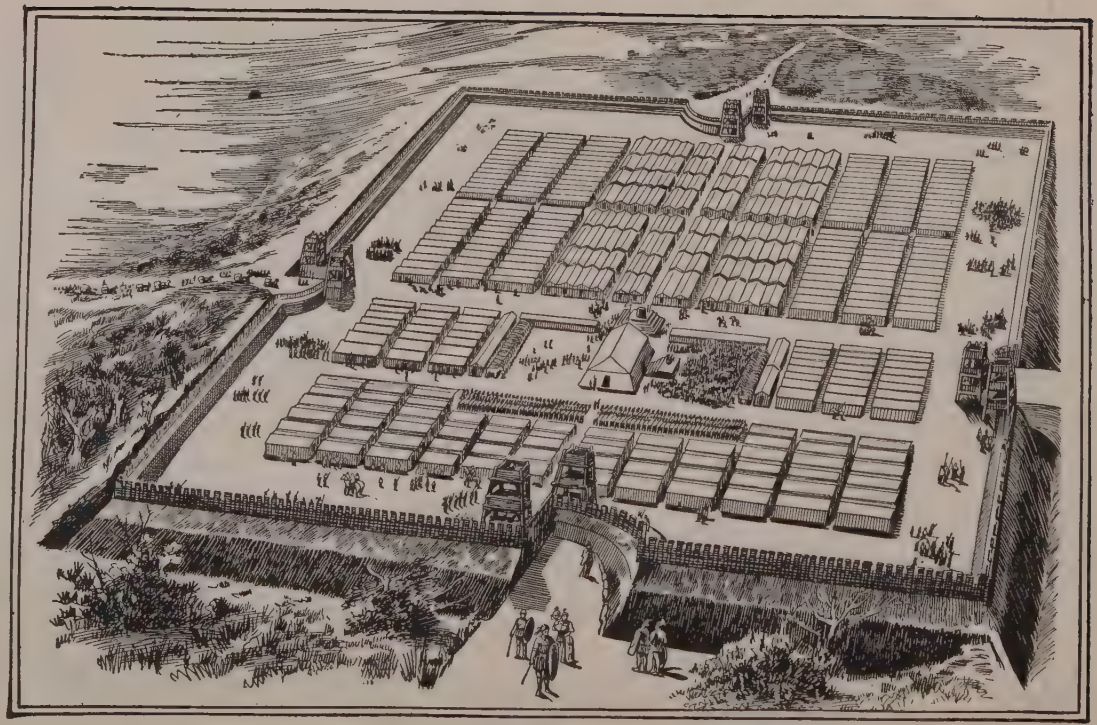
lapidary = *polisher of* ***stones***

predication = ***declara**tion*

ad-equitāre *ride at, dash at*
aliā ratiōne *otherwise, else*
arcessītum (because) *sent for*

prō-dūxit *led forth* § 220, 12
prō-movēre *move forward*
praeter *by* **re-icere** *hurl back*

CAESAR'S INTERVIEW WITH ARIOVISTUS



CASTRA ROMANA

Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus suōs castrīs continuit, quod mātrēsfamiliās sortibus dēclārābant, nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent. Quod ubi Caesar compertum habuit, triplicī aciē īnstrūctā ūsque ad castra Ariovistī accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī cōpiās suās ēdūxēre generātimque cōnstituērunt, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nementēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs. Omnem aciem suam raedīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant in proelium proficīscentīs, nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent. Arminius virōs secūtus est et in cōnspectū Nōricae et Velaedae prō carrīs versābātur.

Caesar proelī committendī signum dedit. Rōmānī ācriter impetum fēcēre. Germānī celeriter prōcucurrēre. Spatium pīla coniciendī datum nōn est. Reiectīs pīlīs, gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī celeriter phalange factā scūtīs impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Sed complūrēs Rōmānī in phalangem īnsiliēbant et scūta manibus revellēbant hostīsque dēsuper vulnerābant.

Quō factō omnēs Germānī terga vertere coāctī sunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī

proficīscentīs (them as they were) *starting out* (for battle)
spatium pīla coniciendī *time to throw javelins* (was not given)

dē-super *from above*
eō *on them* **fās** *right, fate*
īn-silīre *leap up on*
īn-struere *draw up* (in order)
passae manūs *outstretched hands*
raeda *wagon* **prōcurrere** *run*
re-vellere *pull back, tear away*
sors, sortis *lot* **superāre** *win*

aut nāvīs nactī trānsiēre aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus. Quī nāviculam nactus eā profūgit. Reliquōs omnīs cōnsecūtī equitēs Rōmānī interfēcērunt. § 100

Et Nōrica et Suēba rēgis coniūnx in eā fugā periērunt. Īnfāns fīlia Nōricae periit. Famulī plērīque ab equitibus Rōmānīs concīduntur. Arminius Velaedae manum prēndit eamque sēcum ex agmine trāxit. Quōs paulō post eques Rōmānus ferrō petit. Sed P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī tum equitātuī praeerat, equitem dēterret, nē eōs cōnficeret. Tum eōs in equum impōnit sēcumque retinet. Sub occāsum sōlis Crassus suōs in castra redūxit. § 60

Cum ad castra accēditur, porta decumāna patet. Praesidia cēdunt. Equitēs cum captīvīs intrōmittuntur. Viam praetōriam sequuntur. Arminius videt utrimque tabernācula equitum Rōmānōrum et stābula equōrum. Post haec ab utrāque parte tabernācula peditum longīs ōrdinibus recēdunt. Ordinem ac disciplīnam undique mīrātur. Praetōrium in castrīs ferē mediīs est. Hūc contendit Crassus. Imperātōrem in praetōriō petiit; Arminium enim et Velaedam sibi servōs retinēre volēbat. Ad Caesarem adit. Rogat ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.

Caesar ex captīvīs quī sint quaerit. Illī nihil intellegere et tacitī permanēre. Tandem misera Velaeda sē ex prīmō terrōre ac fugā recipere coepit. Ab ignōtō Rōmānō abhorret. Familiārī Suēbō haeret. Neque vultum fingere

agmen *rout*
ferrum *iron*
nāvicula *little boat*
cōnfīsī *relying*
nactus *finding*
vīrēs *strength*
nāre *swim*
utrimque § 119 *f*
via. See p. 142

neque iam lacrimās tenēre poterat. Arminī amplexū haesit atque flēns eī collō pependit. § 134 *b*

Tum per interpretem comperit Caesar puellam barbaram Ariovistī rēgis fīliam esse, mātrem et īnfantem sorōrem in fugā āmīsisse, alteram quoque rēgis coniugem Nōricam perīsse, huic Arminium fuisse servum. Quibus cognitīs rēbus, prōcōnsul vix ipse lacrimās continuit; namque in miserōs ac supplicīs semper misericors et mānsuētus erat.

Itaque cōnstituit Velaedam dīligentissimē obsidis locō servandam eīque Arminium servum cūstōdemque tribuendum. P. Crassō cūstōdiendōs trādidit. Huic adulēscentī Caesar et indulgēbat praecipuē propter patris in sē beneficia et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat maximē.

Multōs diēs puerī miseram apud Crassum agēbant vītam. Omnia verēbantur. Quid dē sē fieret, ignōrābant. Abditī in tabernāculō crūdēlia fāta suōrum miserābantur. Fātum suum sēcum querēbantur. § 64

Interim Caesar propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum trīduum morātus castra mōvit, et quiētā Galliā, mātūrius paulō, quam annī tempus postulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit. Ibi mīlitēs silvās caedere mātūrant. Casās hībernās prō tabernāculīs aedificant. Castra hīberna vāllō fossāque mūniunt. Frūmentum eō comportant. Pābulī magnam cōpiam cōnferunt atque in hiemem servant. Quiētem capere statuunt.

Saepe per hiemem parva Velaeda flēbat et misera mātrem quaerēbat. Puer autem eam cōnsōlābātur animumque verbīs

caedere *cut*
cōnfirmāre *comfort*
miserārī *bemoan*
occīsī *the killed*

cōnfirmābat. Timōrem mittere ac bene spērāre iubet, illud saepe dictāns, quod ēlegantius posteā Vergilius: §§ 154, 222

"Forsan et haec ōlim meminisse iuvābit."

Prīmō autem vēre tempestās calēscēbat. Omnia longō rigōre hiemis solvuntur. Initā aestāte cōpia pābulī esse incipiēbat. Ex Ītaliā Caesar ad exercitum revertī contendit. Rōmānī castra mōvēre. In Belgās profectī sunt. Tum vērō Arminius disciplīnam Rōmānam mīrābātur. Illī enim longē aliā ratiōne ac barbarī bellum gerēbant. Cf. § 69 "**ac**" Rem frūmentāriam dīligentissimē prōvident. Cotīdiē sub vesperum cōnsistunt. Castrīs idōneum locum dēligunt.

Semper locum ex plānitiē ēditum petunt. Castra vāllō fossāque mūniunt, nē quī hostis noctū accēdēns adoriātur. Omnēs operī mūnītiōnis īnstant. Nēminī nisi mūnītīs castrīs discēdere licet. Cotīdiāna exercitātiō vīrīs mīlitum alit eōsque parātiōrēs facit ad omnīs labōrēs subeundōs. Semper, post sē quae sunt, tuentur atque tūta ab hostibus reddunt. Frūmentum commeātūsque ut sine perīculō ad sē supportārī possint, efficiunt. Prūdentiā et cōnsiliō quam vī hostīs superāre mālunt. §§ 130, 137

Extrēmā aestāte, dispersīs ac ferē superātīs Belgīs, Caesar Pūblium Crassum cum ūnā legiōne mīsit ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Esubiōs, Aulercōs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt. Hīs omnibus cīvitātibus in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī redāctīs, obsidibus datīs et pāce factā, in Andēs legiōnem in hīberna dēdūxit. Tum vērō faciendum nōn exīstimābat, utī Velaedam semper

forsan *perhaps* **idōneus** *suitable* **mittere** *let go* **ōlim** *one day*
iuvat *delights* **meminisse** *recall* **sistere** *halt* **solvere** *release*

in castrīs aut in itinere tenēret, et quod cōnstābat paucīs mēnsibus patrem M. Crassum esse Lūcam ad Caesarem ventūrum, eō Suēbōs obsidēs cum Caesare mittit. § 61 *b*

Ibi prīmum vidērunt concursum et dīvitiās Rōmānōrum. Eō enim Cn. Pompeius et M. Licinius Crassus vēnērunt. Eō aliī summī reī pūblicae virī multī et nōnnūllae mātrōnae Rōmānae convēnērunt ad Caesarem grātulātum, quod tantās rēs armīs gessisset. Ibi inter Caesariānōs convēnit Pompeium et Crassum proximō annō cōnsulātum esse petītūrōs ac per eōrum auctōritātem alterum quīnquennium Caesarem Galliam prōvinciam obtentūrum. Cf. § 67

Āctō conciliō Suēbī obsidēs magnam in spem veniēbant clārissimae pulcherrimaeque urbis videndae. Libenter eō proficīscuntur. Sed paucīs diēbus, quibus in M. Crassī domum perventum est, patriās silvās dēsīderābant. § 62 *g*

Bienniō post Velaeda flāvō capillō, oculīs caeruleīs, fōrmā pulcherrimā quīntum decimum iam annum agēns omnibus admīrātiōnī fuit. Quam L. Paulus iunior, dē quō suprā dictum est, apud Crassum vidēns adamāvit atque in mātrimōnium dūcere volēbat. Petentī autem ita respōnsum est: Suēbam virginem Rōmānō numquam nūbere posse. § 97

Eōdem annō P. Crassus ex Galliā ā patre revocātus Rōmam vēnit. Quem obsidēs libentissimē excipiunt, quod anteā prō

aliment = ***nourish**ment, **feed**ing*
concourse = ***gather**ing*
efficient = ***bring**ing **about***
tangent = ***touch**ing* § 219, 3
contingent = ***touch**ing*
tutor = ***protect**or, **guard**ian*

omnibus admīrātiōnī (for admiration to all) *the admiration of all*

ad-amāre *take a liking to*
āctus *over* **flāvō** (See p. 30)
nūbere *wear veil, marry*
patrius *native* **virgō** *girl*

tūtōre habuerant. Iterum cum eō īre volunt. Ille autem cum patre ad Parthōs profectūrus sēcum dūcere nōn potest. Eā spē dēiectī rogant, sē ad exercitum remittat. Itaque eōs Pūblius cūstōdiendōs trādit amīcō Q. Cicerōnī, quī lēgātus in Galliā mīlitābat; illī cum legiōnibus tribus ex Ītaliā proficīscentibus ad exercitum perveniunt. §§ 96, 102

Dum iuvenēs Rōmae apud M. Crassum habitant, quadrienniō intermissō omnī Galliā pācātā, Caesar nāvibus Britanniam bis adierat et prīmum ponte factō exercitum Rōmānum trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam trādūxerat.

Hōc annō complūrēs Galliae cīvitātēs ā populō Rōmānō dēficere et contrā Caesarem coniūrāre coepēre ac Trēverī fīnitimōs Germānōs sollicitābant. Hīs autem ā Labiēnō pulsīs, Suēbī, quī auxiliō veniēbant domum sēsē recēpēre. Cum hīs quīdam Trēverōrum ex cīvitāte excessērunt, et, quod cōnstābat iterum Caesarem exercitum Rhēnum trāductūrum, Arminius quendam Gallum profugum mittit, quī patrī Nasuae dēnūntiāret: Sēsē iam vīvere; obsidis locō in exercitū Caesaris tenērī itemque rēgis Ariovistī fīliam. Monēre, nē Suēbī proelium umquam cum Rōmānīs committerent, nisi in locum inīquum aut in silvās indūcī possent.

Ponte factō atque exercitū trāductō fit ab Ubiīs certior Caesar Suebōs ad extrēmōs suōs fīnīs sē recēpisse atque ibi in silvīs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre. Ita inopiam frūmentī veritus, quod hominēs Germānī minimē agrī cultūrae studēbant, cōnstituit nōn prōgredī longius. Sed

excessive = ***going*** *out* or *beyond* — **prefect** = *one* ***put*** *in charge*
iniquity = *unfair**ness*** — **survive** = ***live*** *over* or *through*

metus *fear, dread, anxiety* § 107 — **veritus** (because *he*) *feared*

nē omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbarīs tolleret, reductō exercitū partem ultimam pontis in longitūdinem pedum ducentōrum rescindit praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendī causā pōnit. Ipse, cum mātūrēscere frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorīgis prīncipis Eburōnum profectus est; quī cōpiās suās nōn condūxit sed missīs per agrōs nūntiīs sibi quemque cōnsulere iussit. Quōrum magna pars in Arduennam silvam profūgit.

Tum cōpiīs suīs in trīs partīs distribūtīs impedīmenta omnium legiōnum Aduātucam contulit. Id castellī nōmen est. Hoc ferē est in mediīs Eburōnum fīnibus. Praesidiō impedīmentīs legiōnem quārtam decimam relīquit. Eī legiōnī castrīsque Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praeficit ducentōsque equitēs eī attribuit. §§ 100 *e*, 220, 12

Partītō exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus ad Ōceanum versus proficīscī iubet; C. Trebōnium cum parī lēgiōnum numerō ad agrum Eburōnum dēpopulandum mittit; ipse cum reliquīs tribus ad flūmen Scaldem extrēmāsque Arduennae silvae partīs īre cōnstituit. Discēdēns post diem septimam sēsē reversūrum cōnfirmat. § 119 *b*

Dīmittit ad fīnitimās cīvitātēs nūntiōs Caesar. Omnīs ēvocat spē praedae ad dīripiendōs Eburōnēs, ut potius in silvīs Gallōrum vīta quam legiōnārius mīles perīclitētur. Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit. §§ 40, 154

Diēs iam appetēbat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedīmenta legiōnemque revertī cōnstituerat. Trāns Rhēnum

famous = *talked of, reported*

ap-petere *be at hand, seek for*
dīripere *rob*

disparity = *inequality*

perīclitārī *be risked* § 181 *b*
pecus *cattle*

ad Germānōs pervenit fāma, dīripī Eburōnēs atque omnīs ad praedam ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo mīlia Sugambrī, quī sunt proximī Rhēnō. Trānseunt Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque. Prīmōs Eburōnum fīnīs adeunt. Magnō pecoris numerō potiuntur. Invītātī praedā longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palūs, nōn silvae morantur. Quibus in locīs sit Caesar, ex captīvīs quaerunt. Profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cognōscunt. Atque ūnus ex captīvīs: "Quid vōs," inquit, "hanc miseram sectāminī praedam, quibus licet esse fortūnātissimōs? Tribus hōrīs Aduātucam venīre potestis. Hūc omnīs suās fortūnās exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit. Praesidī tantum est, ut nē mūrus quidem cingī possit, neque quisquam ēgredī extrā mūnītiōnēs audeat." Oblātā spē Germānī Aduātucam contendunt. § 149 Cicerō omnīs superiōrēs diēs mīlitēs in castrīs continuerat ac nē calōnem quidem ēgredī passus erat. Septimō diē diffīdēns dē numerō diērum Caesarem fidem servātūrum, quod nūlla dē reditū eius fāma afferēbātur, nūllum cāsum exspectāns, quīnque cohortīs frūmentātum in proximās segetēs mittit, quās inter et castra ūnus omnīnō collis intererat. Magna praetereā multitūdō cālōnum, magna vīs iūmentōrum sequitur. Arminius et Velaeda datā facultāte ex castrīs ēgrediendī longē sequuntur. §§ 149 *b*, *g*, 221 *b*

Hōc ipsō tempore Germānī equitēs interveniunt prōtinusque ab decumānā portā in castra irrumpere cōnantur, nec

ap-propinquāre *come close to*
aegrē *hardly* **calō** *camp servant*
ir-rumpere *break into* § 220, 7
prōtinus *straight on, straightway*
sectā-minī *you are seeking*
seges *grainfield*
vīs *drove*
ūsque eō *so far* (that)

prius vīsī sunt, quam castrīs appropinquārent ūsque eō, utī puer et puella, quī in silvīs lentē errārent, suī recipiendī facultātem nōn habērent, sēque fugae mandārint atque in silvās abdiderint. Rē novā perturbantur inopīnantēs Rōmānī. Nēmō tam fortis est, quīn reī novitāte perturbētur. Circumfunduntur hostēs, sī quem aditum reperīre possent. Aegrē portās tuentur Rōmānī; reliquōs aditūs locus ipse mūnītiōque dēfendit. Tōtīs trepidātur castrīs. Alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit. Alius castra iam capta prōnūntiat, alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs barbarōs vēnisse contendit. §§ 94–6

Interim cōnfectā frūmentātiōne mīlitēs Rōmānī clāmōrem exaudiunt. Praecurrunt equitēs; quantō rēs sit in perīculō cognōscunt. Reliquōs arcessunt. Barbarī signa procul cōnspicātī oppugnātiōne dēsistunt. Redīsse legiōnēs crēdunt. Intereā cuneō factō Rōmānī inter sē cohortātī duce C. Trebōniō per mediōs hostīs perrumpunt. Ita mīlitum pars praeter spem incolumis in castra pervēnit, pars ā barbarīs circumventa periit. § 221 *b*

Germānī dēspērātā expugnātiōne castrōrum, quod mīlitēs Rōmānōs iam cōnstitisse in mūnītiōnibus vidēbant, sēsē

indelible = *not to be* ***destroyed***
dif-fident = ***dis-trustful***
casually = ***accidentally***
erratic = *likely to* ***wander***

abdere *hide* **ad-itus** *ap-proach*
cōnspicātī *having spied* § 100
ē-ripere(i) *snatch out, rescue*
ex-audīre *over-hear, hear*

novelty = ***newness, strangeness***
relent = ***slow*** *up,* ***slacken***
pronunciation = ***speaking out***
intrepid = *unfearing,* ***fearless***

in-columnis *un-harmed, safe*
in-opīnāns *un-suspecting*
prae-currere *run ahead* § 220
sign-a (military) *standard-s*

recipere coepērunt. Quōs Arminius ē latebrīs ēgressus adiit hortātusque est utī datā facultāte rēgis Ariovistī fīliam ē manibus Rōmānōrum ēriperent. Eā rē impetrātā, Arminius et Valaeda amīcē ā Sugambrīs susceptī cum eīs trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam sēsē recēpērunt. Paucīs post diēbus cum equitātū Sugambrōrum iuvenēs in Suēbōrum fīnīs ad suōs pervēnērunt.

Bienniō post Ariovistus, quem ā Caesare superātum suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, fīliam Velaedam Arminiō in mātrimōnium dedit. Germānī autem nōmen Caesaris et opēs Rōmānōrum ita verēbantur, utī satis habērent patriās silvās ā populō Rōmānō dēfendere atque annīs quadringentīs vix Rhēnum trānsīre audērent.

credence = ***believing, trust***
cuneiform = ***wedge****-shaped*
hostile = ***inimical, of enemy***
latent = ***hiding, lurking***
opulent = *having* ***resources***
susceptible = *capable of* ***taking***

APPENDIX

SOUNDS

21. Latin letters are always sounded as indicated below by the English words printed under them.[1]

VOWELS

a	**ā**	**e**	**ē**	**i**	**ī**
pars (*side*)	pār (*equal*)	vel (*or*)	pēs (*foot*)	sit (*be*)	sīc (*so*)
parse	par	well	pace	sit	seek

o	**ō**	**u** **ū**	**y**	**ȳ**
cor (*heart*)	nōn (*not*)	vul′-tū (*face*)	Pyr′-rhō [2]	Cȳ′-rō [2]
core	known	wool′too	peer′roe	key′roe

DIPHTHONGS

ae	**au**	**ei**	**eu**	**oe**	**ui**
aes (*money*)	laus (*praise*)	hei (*alas*)	seu (*or*)	coe′-pit	hui (*ho!*)
ice	louse	hey	say͡oo	coy′pit	whee

CONSONANTS

22. Double consonants are sounded separately

buc′-cam (*mouth*)	ad′-dō (*add*)	il′-lī (*him*)	mis′-sī (*sent*)
book′calm	odd′doe	ill′Lee	miss′see
dū′-cam (*lead*)	dē′-dō (*give up*)	vē-līs (*sails*)	mī′-sī (*I sent*)
do′calm	day′doe	way′lease	me′see

23. The following require special attention

bs and **bt** like **ps** and **pt**	ob′-stō (*block*) 'ope′stow	ob-ten′-tō (*held*) ope ten′toe
c and **g** always hard	cin′-get (*gird*) king′get	con′-dō (*build*) cone′doe

[1] Words illustrating the sounds of *short* **a** and *short* **o** should be uttered quickly.

[2] Pronounce *peer* and *key* with the lips rounded as for **ū**.

i-consonant [1] or **j**	**iū′-ra** or **jū′-ra** [2] you′rah	**ma′-ior** or **ma′-jor** [2] ma′yore
n before **c** or **qu** as **ng**	**cin-get** (*gird*) king′get	**in-quit** (*says*) ing′quit
s always as in	**rēs** (*thing*) race	**trēs** (*three*) trace
si and **ti** always as in	**vī-si-ō** (*sight*) we′see oh	**nā-ti-ō-nī** (*tribe*) knotty oh knee
tu always as in	**vir-tū-tī** (*valor*) we′re too′tea	**fōr-tū-nae** (*luck*) fore too′nigh
u (never as in union)	**ū-nō** (*one*) oo′no	**o-cu-līs** (*by eyes*) oh′coo lease
u in **qu-**, **-ngu-**; sometimes in **sua-** and **suē-** as **w**	**in-quit** (*says*) ing′quit	**suē-tae** (*used*) sway′tie
v always as **w**	**vī-tae** (*of life*) we′tie	**vel-let** (*would*) well′let
x always as **ks** or **cs**	**sa-xō** (written for **sac-sō**, *with rock*) sock′so	
ch, **ph**, **th** practically [3] the same as **c**, **p**, **t**	**pul-chrō** (*pretty*) pull′crow	**the-ā-trō** (*theatre*) tay ah′trow

24. Final **-e** is silent in English words of more than one syllable. There are *no silent letters in Latin.* It is not easy for beginners to get the correct pronunciation of the Latin short final **-e.** This will become much easier, if one forms the habit of pronouncing all Latin words with the tip of the tongue well down behind the lower front teeth. The tongue may be bent upward somewhat back of the tip, when necessary.

[1] The **i** is a consonant (sounded as **y** in *yet*) before a vowel at the beginning of a word or root syllable, as in **Iūlia** (*Julia*), **iūra** (*rights*), and **iniūria** (*wrong*), or between two vowels within a word, as in **maior** (*greater*).

[2] In some works these words are written **Jūlia**, **jūra**, **injūria**, and **major.**

[3] Strictly as in *blockhouse*, *uphold*, and *knothole.*

25. It will be very helpful to pronounce the following words several times, then repeat them omitting the final *-t*,

bet	debt	get	let	met	net	pet	set	wet
be-	de-	ge-	le-	me-	ne-	pe-	se-	we-

taking pains to keep the quality of the *vowel* unchanged.

dē'-det	**vel'-let**	**cin'-get**	**es'-set**	**a'-get**
day'debt	well'let	king'get	ess'set	ah'get
dē-de	**vel-le**	**cin-ge**	**es-se**	**a-ge**
sē-de	**mit-te**	**nōn-ne**	**ca-pe**	**e-me**

26. We are utterly indifferent about the pronunciation of vowels before final **-r** in English words. Constant care must be exercised to sound all unstressed Latin vowels distinctly.

To Be Avoided (as pronounced in English)		To Be Strictly Observed in Pronouncing Latin Vowels before Final *r*	
altar		**vin'-car** (*be won*) wing'car	**ca'-pi-ar** (*be taken*) copy are
alter	her	**ca'-pi-er** [1] (*be taken*) copy ere	**nūn'-ti-er** (*be reported*) noon'tea ere
Kaffir	fir	**fir'-mae** (*solid*) fear'my	**vir** (*man*) we're
labor	for	**fōr'-mae** (*shapes*) fore'my	**la'-bor** (*toil*) la'bore
sulphur	fur	**dē'-mur** (*be given*) day'moor	**vul'-tur** (*vulture*) wool'tour
zephyr	myrrh	**Pyr'-rhō** (*to Pyrrhus*) peer'roe	**zep'-hy-rō** [2] (*west wind*) zeppy roe

Note. — Be careful always to pronounce **-er** like the English word *ere* (*before*) in **ergā** (*toward*), **tergum** (*back*), **alter** (*the other*), **inter** (*between*), **iter** (*journey*), **ter** (*thrice*), **per** (*through*), etc.

[1] An older form of the infinitive, **capī**.

[2] To pronounce the Latin **y**, the lips should be rounded as for **ū**. The Latin **r** is made farther back in the mouth than the English **r**.

MILES IMPEDITUS

SIGNIFER

BUCINATOR

27. Diphthongs are always long and do not have to be marked. The quantity of vowels must be learned in order to pronounce each syllable correctly. § 21

28. Vowels are always long in certain combinations and nearly always long in certain positions.

(*a*) A vowel is *lengthened* before **nf**, **ns**, **nx**, **nct**.[1]

Final **u** is always long.

Final **o** is long except in **ego**, **duo**, **modo** (*only*), **cito**.

Final **i** is long except in **mihi**, **tibi**, **sibi**, **ubi**, **ibi**, **nisi**, **quasi**.[2]

(*b*) A vowel is usually *shortened* before **h**, **nd**, **nt**, or *another vowel*.

A vowel is *shortened* before *final* **m** and **t**, and before *final* **l** and **r**, except in a few monosyllables, as **pār**, **sōl**.

in + **fāns**	**cingere**	**prō** + **habē**	habeō	**agāmus**	**vocēre**
īnfāns	**cīnxī**	**prohibē**	**habētur**	**agam**	**vocer**
in + **stō**	**cīnctus**	**habendī**	**habet**	**animālis**	**pār**
īnstō	**cīnctū**	**habent**	**habeam**	**animal**	**paris**

The length or quantity of final **a** and **e**, and of all the vowels in many positions and various root syllables will be easily mastered with the vocabularies.

SYLLABLES

29. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. Lone consonants go with the vowels that follow them; as, **cae-di-tur**.

[1] See Latin Grammar of Hale and Buck.

[2] Sometimes used as long in verse.

30. Where there are two consonants together, the first regularly goes with the preceding, the second with the following vowel.

parte	**illud**	**contentō**	**saxō**
par-te	**il-lud**	**con-ten-tō**	**sac-sō** [1]

But if the last of the two consonants is **l** or **r**, they combine with the vowel that follows; **h** is not counted.

sacrō	**duplicēs**	**tenebrae**	**pulchrō**	**explicuit**
sa-crō	**du-pli-cēs**	**te-ne-brae**	**pul-chrō**	**ex-pli-cu-it**

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

31. The quantity or length of syllables must be learned in order to know where to accent words.

As would be expected, syllables containing long vowels or diphthongs are long, but *those containing short vowels are not all short.*

32. Short vowels followed by *no consonants* make short syllables; as, **ea, e-a**; **duo, du-o**; **tua, tu-a**; **mihi, mi-hi.**

Short vowels followed by *lone consonants* make short syllables: **erat, e-rat**; **vocat, vo-cat**; **legit, le-git.**

But short vowels followed by **x** or **z** or *two consonants* that are *separately uttered make long syllables.*

tentant	**contendēbant**	**saxīs**	**mittunt**	**illōs**
ten-tant	**con-ten-dē-bant**	**sac-sīs**	**mit-tunt**	**il-lōs**

Latin words are strung together in reading or speech.

Furit aestus harēnīs.

Fu-ri-taes-tus-s'a-rē-nīs.

[1] The letter **x** is thus divided into **cs** in speech but not in writing or print.

One of the consonants may begin the next word. All the syllables except **-ci-bu-** are long in the following line.

Ad quem tum Iūnō supplex hīs vōcibus ūsa est.
Ad-quem-tum-Iū-nō-sup-plec-s'īs-vō-ci-bu-sū-sa'st.

33. *A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel followed by no consonant or a lone consonant* (except **x** or **z**).

34. *A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong, or a short vowel followed by* **x** *or* **z** *or any two consonants* (*the latter one of which is not* **l** *or* **r**).

If the last of two consonants with a short vowel is **l** or **r**, the syllable may be used *either* as *long or short* in verse. Such syllables are called *common*.

35. An occasional shortened form has the accent on the ultima or last syllable, or on a short penult.

ē-dūc′ (for **ē-dū′-ce**); **cōn-si′-lī** (for **cōn-si′-li-ī**)

36. *Words of two syllables are accented on the first.*

Words of three or more syllables are accented on the penult (*next-to-last*), *if it is a long syllable; if not, on the antepenult* (syllable *before-the-penult*).

vo′-cat, vo-cā′-tur, ma-gis′-ter, Iū′-li-us, dis-ci′-pu-lus, vō′-cem, vo-cē′-mus, te′-ne-brae.

SUMMARY OF CASE ENDINGS

37. Nearly all pupils summarize facts in their own way and for the convenience of their own habits of study and remembering. The following general view of all the forms of nouns (and adjectives) is given here to prevent their

jumping at conclusions that are destined to be shattered as work proceeds, and the getting of impressions that it is so wearisome to root out and unlearn later.

It is not to be expected that all these important summaries and working principles will be learned at once, but rather that they will be read and re-read till a correct general idea of them has been gained and the pupil knows exactly where to find the help he needs. They are intended to serve as a guide in all future work and to be referred to again and again as the reading of Latin continues till they are finally mastered.

What Are Endings and What Are Not Endings

38. An **ending** is an element annexed to the end of a base or stem to show its relation to other words. What the endings of Latin nouns originally were does not particularly concern us here. They now appear as **-s**, **-m**, **-rum**, **-bus**, or *a vowel;* of which **-rum** is always *genitive plural* and **-bus** is always *dative, ablative,* or *locative plural.* But so many changes and contractions have taken place that it is now customary to speak of them as including at least one vowel.

39. A complete list of the endings of Latin nouns and adjectives is as follows:

-a, **-ā**, **-e**, **-ē**, **-ae**, **-ēī** (**eī-**), **-ī**, **-ia**, **-ō**, **-ū**, **-ua**;
-am, **-em**, **-im**, **-um**, **-ārum**, **-ērum**, **-ium**, **-ōrum**, **-uum**;
-s, **-ās**, **-ēs**, **-is**, **-īs**, **-ōs**, **-us**, **-ūs** (-ius, -īus);[1]
-ābus, **-ēbus**, **-ibus**, **-ōbus** (-ubus).

[1] Endings in parentheses are found in but few words.

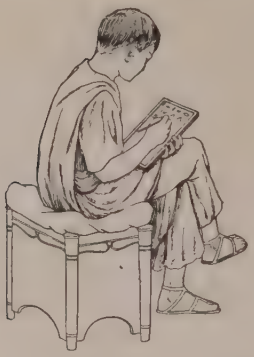
40. The following adjectives have **-īus** (**-ius**) instead of **-ī** and **-ae** in the Genitive singular and **-ī** (**-i**) instead of **-ō** and **-ae** in the Dative singular.

Some of them have **-d**, **-id**, **-od**, or **-ud** (for **-e** or **-um**) in the neuter singular and **-e** (for **-us**) in the masculine.

a. Nom. *M.* *F.* *N.*	Gen. *M.F.N.*	Dat. *M.F.N.*	English Cognates and Derivatives
ūnus, ūna, ūnum *one, only*	**ūnīus**	**ūnī**	***unit, unique, unify***
sōlus, sōla, sōlum *alone*	**sōlīus**	**sōlī**	***sole, solitary***
tōtus, tōta, tōtum *whole*	**tōtīus**	**tōtī**	***total, totally***
alter, -ra, -rum *the other*	**alterius**	**alterī**	***alternate, alter***
alius, alia, aliud *other*	**alterius**	**aliī**	***alien, alibi, alias***
uter? utra? utrum? *whether?*	**utrīus**	**utrī**	***whether?***
neuter, -tra, -trum *neither*	**neutrīus**	**neutrī**	***neutral, neuter***
ūllus, ūlla, ūllum *any*	**ūllīus**	**ūllī**	***nullify, null***
nūllus, -lla, -llum *none*	**nūllīus**	**nūllī**	***nullify, annul***
quī, quae, quod *that*	**cuius**	**cui**	***who, what, whose***
quis? quid?[1] *who? what?*	**cuius?**	**cui?**	***which? how? why?***
aliquī, -qua, -quod *some*	**alicuius**	**alicui**	
hic, haec, hoc *this*	**huius**	**huic**	These four are used to mean *he, she,* or *it* according to the gender. § 119 c
iste, ista, istud *that*	**istīus**	**istī**	
ille, illa, illud *that*	**illīus**	**illī**	
is, ea, id *this, that*	**eius**	**eī**	

b. Mention is here made of these few irregular words because aside from them and their compounds, no nouns or adjectives have any endings not found in the list in § 39. In all other native Latin nouns and adjectives, any form not having one of the endings of this list *has no case ending.*

[1] **Quis, quid** is not an adjective. It is the interrogative pronoun.



41. Forms with no case ending occur only in the singular, and in the nominative and vocative of masculines and feminines and in the nominative accusative and vocative of neuters. Such are the forms below. Figures are used to indicate the declension.

Nom. or Voc. Sing.	Base	Related Words
2 **ager** *field, territory*	**agr-**	*agriculture, agrarian*
2 **liber** *scroll, book*	**libr-**	*librarian*
2 **puer** *boy, hand, slave*	**puer-** § 76	*puerile* (boyish)
3 **pater** *father* § 82	**patr-** § 78 *a*	*paternal, patrimony*
3 **māter** *mother*	**mātr-**	*maternal, matrimony*
3 **sōl** *sun*	**sōl-**	*solstice, solar*
3 **lūmen**[1] *light* § 78 *b*	**lūmin-**	*luminous, illuminate*
3 **nōmen**[1] *name*	**nōmin-**	*nominate, nominal*
3 **mel**[1] *honey*	**mell-**	*mellifluous*
3 **vēr**[1] *springtime*	**vēr-**	*vernal*
3 **aequor**[1] *level expanse*	**aequor-**	*equal, equity, iniquity*

42. But the most deceiving of all and most puzzling to the uninitiated are those Third Declension Nouns that

[1] Nom., Acc., or Voc.

appear at first to have the case endings **-s, -us, -ūs, -ōs, -ās, -ō**, etc., when they really have no case endings at all.

1. Because the final **s** of stems *remains where there is no* ending and becomes **-r-** between two vowels wherever endings are annexed, as in **mōs**, *habit*, **mōrēs**,[1] *habits, character*.

2. Because the final **n** of stems is lost after **-ō-**, if there is no ending, as in **nātiō**, *tribe*, **nātiōnēs**, *tribes, breeds*.

Nominative, Gender and Meaning	Earlier Stem	Present Base	Related Words in English
genus n. *kin, kind* § 82 *d*	**genes-**	**gener-**	*gender, kin, general*
tempus n. *season, time*	**tempes-**	**tempor-**	*tempest, temporary*
vulnus n. *wound* § 78 *b*	**vulnes-**	**vulner-**	*invulnerable*
vetus m. f. n. *old* § 86	**vetes-**	**veter-**	*veteran, inveterate*
rūs n. *field, country*	**rūs-**	**rūr-**	*rustic, rural*
iūs n. *right, law* § 78 *b*	**iūs-**	**iūr-**	*just, injury, jury*
maius n. *larger*	**maiōs-**	**maiōr-**	*majority*

Nominative, Gender and Meaning	Earlier Stem	Present Base	English Cognates and Derivatives
tellūs f. *earth, soil*	**tellūs-**	**tellūr-** § 82	*tellu*ride
pulvis m. *dust*	**pulves-**	**pulver-**	*pulverize*
mōs m. *custom, way*	**mōs-**	**mōr-**	*immoral, moralist*
flōs m. *blossom*	**flōs-**	**flōr-**	*florist, flourish*
ōrdō m. *order, rank*	***ōrdon-**	**ōrdin-**	*ordinal, ordinary*
orīgō f. *beginning*	***orīgon-**	**orīgin-**	*orient, original*
regiō f. *line, side*	**regiōn-**	**regiōn-**	*reach, regional*
ratiō f. *method, plan*	**ratiōn-**	**ratiōn-**	*reason, rational*
statiō f. *stop, post*	**statiōn-**	**statiōn-**	*stationary*
lātitūdō f. *breadth*	***lātitūdon-**	**lātitūdin-**	*latitudinal*

[1] Cf. *was* and *were*; *is, are*; *us, our* (once *oure*).

* Possible forms in very early Latin.

43. Almost equally annoying are those in which **-t-** or **-d-** have disappeared before the ending **-s**:

Formation	Nominative	Base	From the Same Root
ped-s	**pēs** *m. foot* §§ 78, 82	**ped-**	***pedal, impede***
pedet-s	**pedes** m. *foot-soldier*	**pedit-**	***pedestrian***
equet-s	**eques** m. *horseman*	**equit-**	***equestrian***
lapid-s	**lapis** m. *small stone*	**lapid-**	***lapidary***
sanguin-s	**sanguis** m. *blood*	**sanguin-**	***sanguinary***
cūstōd-s	**cūstōs** m. *keeper*	**cūstōd-**	***custody***
aequitāt-s	**aequitās** f. *fairness*	**aequitāt-**	***equity, iniquity***
dignitāt-s	**dignitās** f. *office*	**dignitāt-**	***dignity, deign***
quiēt-s	**quiēs** f. *rest, peace*	**quiēt-**	***inquietude***
līt-s	**līs** f. *dispute*	**līt-**	***litigation***
palūd-s	**palūs** f. *marsh*	**palūd-**	***paludal***
salūt-s	**salūs** f. *welfare*	**salūt-**	***salutation***
servitūt-s	**servitūs** f. *slavery*	**servitūt-**	***service, servile***
virtūt-s	**virtūs** f. *manly quality*	**virtūt-**	***virtual, virtue***
fraud-s	**fraus** f. *trick*	**fraud-**	***fraudulent***

44. In the list below, eight nouns have the case ending **-s**, seven have no ending, and *no two others have the same ending.*

mās *male*
rēs *thing*
fīnis *limit*
līs *quarrel*
tribus *with three*
fraus *deceit*
puerōs *boys*
tellūs *ground*
brevitās *shortness*
pēs *foot*
pulvis *powder*
mīles *soldier*
statiō *station*
senātus *senate*
colōs *tint, hue*
iuventūs *youth-*
fīliās *daughters*
Cerēs *Ceres*
lapis *stone*
armīs *with arms*
fīliō *to a son*
genus *class*
cūstōs *guard*
tribūs *tribes*

45. The following list shows how easy it is to know the endings by comparing two different forms of the same noun so as to get the *base*. Cf. §§ 42, 43.

mās	—	**brevitās**	**-s**	**fīliās**	**-ās**
marēs	**-ēs**	**brevitāte**	**-e**	**fīliābus**	**-ābus**
rēs	**-ēs**	**pēs**	**-s**	**Cerēs**	—
rē	**-ē**	**pedibus**	**-ibus**	**Cererī**	**-ī**
fīnis	**-is**	**pulvis**	—	**lapis**	**-s**
fīnium	**-ium**	**pulverem**	**-em**	**lapidis**	**-is**
līs	**-s**	**mīles**	**-s**	**armīs**	**-īs**
līte	**-e**	**mīlitum**	**-um**	**armōrum**	**-ōrum**
tribus	**-ibus**	**statiō**	—	**fīliō**	**-ō**
tria	**-ia**	**statiōnem**	**-em**	**fīliīs**	**-īs**
fraus	**-s**	**senātus**	**-us**	**genus**	—
fraudis	**-is**	**senātūs**	**-ūs**	**genera**	**-a**
puerōs	**-ōs**	**colōs**	—	**cūstōs**	**-s**
puer	—	**colōre**	**-e**	**cūstōdum**	**-um**
tellūs	—	**iuventūs**	**-s**	**tribūs**	**-ūs**
tellūre	**-e**	**iuventūtī**	**-ī**	**tribuum**	**-uum**

46. Just as **ag-**, **leg-**, and **reg-** become **ac-**, **lec-**, and **rec-** before **t** in

agent (one who **act**s) **leg**ible (**read**able) **reg**ent (**rul**ing)
active (quick to **act**) **lect**ure (a discourse **read**) **rect**or (**rul**er)

So in Latin **g** becomes **c** before **s** or **t**.

Note that **cs** is always written **x**.

Formation	Nominative	Base	Having the Same Root
pāc-s	**pāx** f. *agreement*	**pāc-**	***pay, pacify, peace***
rēg-s	**rēx** m. *ruler, king*	**rēg-**	***regal, royal, reign***
iūdec-s	**iūdex** m. *judge*	**iūdic-**	***judicious, judicial***
duc-s	**dux** m. *guide, leader*	**duc-**	***duke, induce***
lēg-s	**lēx** f. *agreement, law*	**lēg-**	***legal, legislator***
nigui-s[1]	**nix** f. *snow*	**niv-**	***niveous, Nevada***
nocti-s[1]	**nox** f. *night*	**noct-**	***nocturnal***

An Observing Reader's Habit of Thought

47. There are several things we must find out about a word, as we read, or we shall sooner or later have to *stop all progress* to look it up. Our first observations may not reveal what we most wish to know. But we shall soon meet the word again, if we but read on; and the comparing of the two forms will show more than the base and the two endings. Suppose, for example, we have for the first time met

in eandem partem, or **maximam fidem**, or **fīnem**.

Each noun appears to be an accusative singular. It is.

One reminds us of **part**, **part**ial, **part**ly, **part**isan, de**part**, im**part**, com**part**ment, counter**part**.

It likely means *part*,[2] *side*, *direction*, *share*, or *division*.

[1] Probable form in very early Latin. [2] Cf. § 218, *a*, *b*.

Another resembles **fide**lity, bona **fide**, or the name **Fido**. It probably means *faith, fidelity, trust, confidence, loyalty.*

The third calls to mind **final**, **finish**, and **Fini**s at the *end* of a book.

It must mean *end, limit, border,* or *boundary.*

Yet **partem**, **fidem**, and **fīnem** might all be either of the Third or of the Fifth Declension (see table § 55); **eandem**, however, is an adjective and there are no adjectives of the Fifth Declension. Suppose, now, we have read on and found

eiusdem, or fidē, or fīnīs lātōs

(1) **Fidem** and **fidē** are *Fifth Declension* forms, as no Third Declension forms end in **-ē**, except **famē**, *by hunger.* (See § 55 *c*, 3.) **Maximam** shows that **fidem** is *feminine;* besides, all Fifth Declension nouns are feminine, except **diēs**, *day* and **merī**diēs, *midday, south.*

(2) **Eius**dem immediately shows that **-em** is not the ending of **ea**ndem; **-dem** is only a particle annexed after the case ending **-am**, which is then written **-an** before **d** (cf. ***com**pel* and ***con**demn*). The ending **-ius** shows **eius**dem to be one of the irregular adjectives (§ 40), meaning *same, also* (**-dem** appearing as **-den-** in *i**den**tical*).

(3) **Fīnīs** must be a Third Declension form. There is no such ending as **-īs** in the Fifth, and accusative plurals in **-īs** all belong to the class known as Masculine and Feminine **i**-stems (3 **i** M. and F. § 55 *b*). The adjective **lātōs** shows that **fīnīs** is Mas. Acc. Pl. § 54 *b*.

(4) Knowing the meaning of **partem** and that it is Fem. Acc. Sing., we can afford to wait about the rest till we meet **it** again.

48. This illustrates the advantage of "making haste slowly" — of watching, waiting, and comparing, of using our brains more than our thumbs — for a little careful observation trains us to see in ten minutes what it takes an hour to look up, and if we depend upon looking up everything, the task is endless.

How to Use the Tables Below

49. To get the *best results from comparing different forms* of a word and take advantage of every means of discovering the necessary facts about nouns as we meet them in reading, we must gradually master the tables below, which aim to show *how far each ending may be relied upon.*

(1) To indicate the class to which a new noun belongs;

(2) To show its number and case at first sight, and

(3) *What a given ending indicates regarding the other endings* of a noun (or adjective) seen for the first time.

50. Some endings tell the whole story at a glance; as, **-ae** in the noun **nātūrae** (see Int. § 6 *e*), others tell a great deal, while some tell little or nothing.

51. The following observations do not apply to the irregular adjectives and pronouns in § 40 nor to nouns having mixed declensions nor to words borrowed from the Greek; as, **āēr** (acc. sing. āera or āerem) and **aethēr** (acc. aethera), p. 18, etc., all of which fall an easy prey to one who has mastered these tables.

52. We must start aright. The first essential is to know whether the case ending is

-ās -ēs -is -īs -ō -ōs -us -ūs as in

hōr-ās, r-ēs, fīn-is, arm-īs, radi-ō, vīc-ōs, ann-us, or **-s,** as in

aetā-s, pē-s, lapi-s, lī-s, pāx, cūstō-s, frau-s,

or lacking altogether, as in

mās	**Cerēs**	**mōs**	**genus**	**rūs**	**statiō**
puer	**pulvis**	**vir**	**aequor**	**mel**	**lūmen**

Note the following also:

fīli-a	**fīli-us**	**e-ī**	**vacu-ī**	**radi-um**	**vacu-um**	**vacu-a**
omn-ia	**e-ius**	**r-eī**	**senāt-uī**	**omn-ium**	**pass-uum**	**corn-ua**

53. The endings of all classes of regular nouns and adjectives are given below (§ 55) in parallel columns. It will be seen that certain endings occur only in particular declensions or in particular cases.

The Gender of Nouns and Adjectives

54. *a.* **Annum** (Ac. masculine) resembles **oppidum** (N. Ac. V. neuter); **Victor** (N. V. masculine) resembles **aequor** (N. Ac. V. neuter).

Except in such instances (in the singular), neuter nouns differ from masculines and feminines in the *nominative, accusative,* and *vocative cases.* Masculine nouns, however, cannot always be distinguished from feminines by their endings, *e.g.*

annus (m.) **Cyprus** (f.) **hōrae** (f.) **incolae** (m.)

but in adjectives **-us** is *always masculine* and **-ae** *feminine.*

b. Thus many endings of adjectives never fail to *show the gender of the nouns they modify.* See § 55 *f.*

55. *a.*

2	1		2		3		3	
M. (*F.*)	*F.* (*M.*)		*N.*		*M.* or *F.*		*N.*	
S.	*Pl.*	*S.*	*Pl.*	*S.*	*Pl.*	*S.*	*Pl.*	*S.*	*Pl.*
N. (-us)	-ī	-a	-ae	-um	-a	-s,—	-ēs	—	-a
G. -ī	-ōrum	-ae	-ārum	-ī	-ōrum	-is	-um	-is	-um
D. -ō	-īs[1]	-ae	-īs[1]	-ō	-īs[1]	-ī	-ibus	-ī	-ibus
Ac. -um	-ōs	-am	-ās	-um	-a	-em	-ēs	—	-a
V. (-e)	-ī	-a	-ae	-um	-a	-s,—	-ēs	—	-a
Ab. -ō	-īs[1]	-ā	-īs[1]	-ō	-īs[1]	-e	-ibus	-e	-ibus
L. -ī	-īs	-ae	-īs	-ī	-īs	-e	-ibus	-e	-ibus

[1] **-ōbus**, m. and n., and **-ābus**, f., are used instead of **-īs** in **duōbus**, **duābus** *two*, **ambōbus**, **ambābus** *both*, and in **fīliābus** and **deābus**.

c. Some endings always show the Declension. § 52

First	*Second*	*Third*	*Fourth*	*Fifth*
-a (sing.)	-um (N.), -ō	-um (G.), -s, -is, -ēs[1]	-ūs	-iēs[1]
-am, -ā	-ī (N. G.)	—(Ac.),[1] -em,[1] -im	-uī, -ū	-iēī, -eī
-ae, -ās	-ōrum, -ōs	-ī (D. Ab.), -īs (Ac.)	-ua	-iem,[1] -ē[2]
-ārum	-e (V. m.)	-e (N. Ac. Ab.)	-uum	-ēbus

[1] **-ēs** and **-em** are preceded by **-i-** in all Fifth Declension forms except **rēs**, **rem**, *thing*, **spēs**, **-em**, *hope*, **fidēs**, **-em**, *faith*, **plēbēs**, **-em**, *plebs*.

[2] Except in **famē**, *by hunger*, which is of the Third Declension.

1st or *2d*	*2d* or *3d*	*2d* or *4th*	*3d* or *4th*
-īs (D.Ab.)	-a (pl.)	-um (Ac.); -us	-ibus

e. Gender in Nouns (§ 54)

M.(F.) **-ī** or **-ūs** (pl.); **-us**, **-ōs**
F.(M.) **-a** or **-ēs** (sing.); **-ae**
-am, **-ā**, **-ārum**, **-ās**
-eī, **-iēī**, **-ē**, **-ēbus**

Never neuter.

-is (N.); **-īs** (Ac.); **-s**, **-em**, **-ēs**

Always neuter.

-um (N.)
-a (pl.)
— (Ac.)
-e (N. Ac.)
-ū (N. Ac.)

§ 52

f. Gender in Adjectives

Always reliable §§ 42–3, 54

M.	*F.*	*N.*
-us	-a (sing.)	-um (N.)
-ī (pl.)	-am, -ā	-a (pl.)
-ōs	-ae, -ās	— (Ac.)
-e (2)	-ārum	-e (N. A.)

b. 3 i	3 i	4	4	5
M. or *F.*	*N.*	*M.* or *F.*	*N.*	*M.* or *F.*
S. *Pl.*	*S.* *Pl.*	*S.* *Pl.*	*S.* *Pl.*	*S.* *Pl.*
-is, -s **-ēs**	**-e**[1] **-ia**	**-us** **-ūs**	**-ū** **-ua**	**-ēs** **-ēs**
-is **-ium**	**-is** **-ium**	**-ūs** **-uum**	**-ūs** **-uum**	**-eī**[4] **-ērum**
-ī **-ibus**	**-ī** **-ibus**	**-uī**[2] **-ibus**[3]	**-ū** **-ibus**	**-eī** **-ēbus**
-em[5] **-īs**	**-e**[1] **-ia**	**-um** **-ūs**	**-ū** **-ua**	**-em** **-ēs**
-is, -s **-ēs**	**-e**[1] **-ia**	**-us** **-ūs**	**-ū** **-ua**	**-ēs** **-ēs**
-ī, -e **-ibus**	**-ī** **-ibus**	**-ū** **-ibus**[3]	**-ū** **-ibus**	**-ē** **-ēbus**
-e, -ī **-ibus**	**-e, -ī** **-ibus**	*No adjectives or locative case.*		

[1] All Present Participles; as, **vacāns** *being empty*, **vidēns** *seeing*, and a few adjectives; as, **audāx** *bold*, **ingēns** *huge*, have **-s**.

[2] Rarely **-ū**. [3] **-ubus** in **tribus** *tribe*, and rarely in a few others.

[4] Rarely **-ē**, **-ēī** after a vowel. [5] **-im** in a few nouns.

d. *Always Singular*	*Always Plural*
-a (f.) ; **-ā, -e, -ē, -ō,**[1] **-ū**	**-a** (n.) ; **-ae** (N.) ; **-ī** (N. V.)
-ae (G. D.) ; **-ī** (G. D. Ab.)	**-ās** ; **-ēs** (Ac.) ; **-īs, -ōs** § 52
-ūs or **-īus** or **-ius** (G.) § 43	**-ūs** (N. Ac.) ; **-um** (G.) ; **-ium**
—, **-s, -is, -us, -ēī, -eī**	**-ārum, -ērum, -ōrum, -uum**
-um (N. Ac.) ; **-am, -em, -im**	**-ābus, -ēbus, -ibus, -ōbus**

[1] Plural in **ambō** *both*.

NOTE. — Do not try to apply this without first comparing two forms (§§ 42, 45).

g. *Always Nom.*	*Always Dat.*	*Always Voc.*
-us (Adj.) §§ 41–3	**-uī**	**-e** (2)

Always Gen.	*Always Acc.*	*Always Abl.*
-is (n.) ; **-īus**	**-am, -em, -im**	**-ā, -ē,**[1] and
-ūs (sing.) ; **-ius**	**-ās, -ōs, -īs** (3)	if used w. prep.[2]
-ī (sing. 2)[3]	if used w. prep.[2]	**-e** or **-ū** (m. f.)
-ārum, -ōrum	—, **-s, -um**	**-īs** (1, 2) ; **-ō**
-um (3) ; **-ium**	**-ēs, -ūs** §§ 42–3	**-ābus, -ēbus**
-uum, -ērum	**-a, -ia, -ua**	**-ibus, -ōbus**

[1] Rarely used for **-ēī** in poetry. See also § 81 *b*.

[2] §§ 57, 58. [3] Except nouns in **-ius**.

56. ENDINGS AND THEIR VALUES[1]

Case	*Sing.*	*Plur.*	*Relations to Other Words* (see Int. § 5)
1. *N.*	(-us)	-ī[2]	indicates the *subject of a finite verb*, the *predicate* of a subject nominative, etc. (5 *a*, *c*.)
2. *G.*	-ī	-ōrum	*possessor*, *—'s*, *—s'*; *of*; (son) *of*; (more) *of*; (fear) *of*; (be estimated) *of* or *at* (value).
3. *D.*	-ō	-īs	*indirect obj.*; *to*; (give) *to*; (belong) *to*; (lacking) *to*; *for*; *for* (aid) *to*; *as-far-as-concerns*.
4. *Ac.*	-um	-ōs	*direct obj.*; *subj. of Inf.*; *for* (days, years, miles); *for* (most part); see also § 57.
5. *V.*	(-e)	-ī	*direct address*; *O —! thou —! ye —!* Never put the Vocative first in a sentence.
6. *Ab.*	-ō	-īs	*at*, *during* (night); (alarmed) *at*, *on-account-of* or *by*; (rate, buy, or sell) *at* or *for*. *by* (boat), *by* (land), *by-means-of*; *by*, *according-to* (plan); (older) *by* (a year), § 68 *b*. *for*; *for* or *on-account-of* (courage); § 73 *b*. (free) *from*, (kept) *from*; (suffer) *from*. *of*, (deprive) *of*; (full) *of*; (born) *of*; (need) *of*; (make use) *of*; (man) *of* or *with* (good mind); (worthy) *of*; (glad) *of*; § 62 *g*. *in*; *in*, *during*, *within* (a day); *in* (wisdom, width); (kept) *in*; (defeat) *in* (war). *on* (a day); (feed or live) *on*; (lean or rely) *on*; (go, ride, be carried) *in* or *on*. *over*, (boast,) *over*, *about*, *on-account-of*. *with*; (fill) *with*; (mix) *with*; (suffer) *with*. *than*; with preps. § 58.
7. *L.*	-ī	-īs	*at*, *in*, *on* (see §§ 60, 61 *c*).

[1] This table is to be used as a general guide (see § 230).

[2] And so on following the lines across pp. 128–9, § 55 *a*, *b*.

57. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

ad *in the direction of, till, for, to* (border of), *toward, up to, to* (*the presence of*, when travelling is done), *against* (enemy), *at, close by, near, next to;* **quantum ad** *as for;* **ad decem** *about ten.*

ante *before, ahead of.* **post** *behind, after, since.*

apud *before the face of, in the eyes, sight, opinion, hands,* or *care of;* **apud mē** *at my house;* **apud oppidum** *in sight of town.*

circum *around, in the vicinity of.* **circiter** (cf. **circus**), *about.*

in '*clear*' *to, till, on, upon, into,* or *among* (when distance has to be travelled); *against,* (feel) *toward,* (throw) *at,* (start) *for;* **quam in partem**? *in what direction?* **in collem** *up on a hill.*

inter *in the midst of, between, among* (as compared with).

ob (obstructing the way) *in face of;* **ob eam rem** *for this reason.*

per *through, along;* **per vim** *by force;* **per Alpīs** *over the Alps.*

praeter *except, but, beyond;* **praeter castra** *past the camp.*

propter *because of;* **propter altitūdinem** *because of the height.*

cis (**citrā**) *this side of.* **trāns** *across.* **ultrā** *beyond.* **sub** *under.*

58. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE

ā, ab, abs *from the direction of, away from, from* (the outside), *by* (a person); *off;* **ā mīlibus passuum** *thousands of paces away.*

ab before *vowels* or *h;* **ā** or **ab** before *d, l, n, r, s;* otherwise **ā.**

cum (*in company*) *with;* **ūnā cum** *along with.* **sine** *without.*

dē *down from, from* (interior or top); *concerning, about;* **paucī dē nostrīs** *a few of our men;* **quā dē causā** *and for this reason.*

ē, ex (before vowels or *h*) *out of, off from, up from, out from, from* (within the borders) or *off* (the top of), *from among.* § 66 *c*

in, *in, on, upon, among* (bodily if no distance is travelled).

prae (English ***pre-*** *before*) *ahead of, in comparison with.*

prō *in front, behalf,* or *stead of, for, in proportion to;* **eōs prō amīcīs habeō** *I take them for friends.* **sub** *under, below.*

59. NOUNS WITH PREPOSITIONAL FORCE

causā or **grātiā** (placed after a Genitive) *for the sake, for;* **frūmentī causā eunt** *they are going for grain; to get grain.*

These illustrations of the underlying idea of the prepositions above will be better understood with use and experience.

60. Note the use of prepositions in phrases denoting *places, persons, things, position, situation,* or *condition.*

to which (or ***to whom***)		***in which*** (***in whom***)	***from which***	(***from whom***)
ad īnsulam *toward the island*	**in īnsulam** *to the island*	**in īnsulā** *on the island*	**ex īnsulā** (*off*) *from the island*	**ab īnsulā** *from near by the island*
ad Cyprum *toward* or *to Cyprus*	**Cyprum** *to Cyprus*	**Cyprī** § 76 *in* or *on Cyprus*	**Cyprō** *off from Cyprus*	**ā Cyprō** *from near Cyprus*
ad domum *toward the dwelling*	**in domum** *to the house*	**in domō** *in* or *at the house*	**ē domō** *from the house*	**ā domō** *away from the house*
	domum (go) *home*	**domī** § 81 (be) *at home*	**domō** *from home*	
ad vīcum *toward the village*	**in vīcum** *to* or *into hamlet*	**in vīcō** *in* or *at village*	**ē vīcō** *from the hamlet*	**ā vīcō** *away from the village*
ad Athēnās *to a point near Athens*	**Athēnās** *to Athens*	**Athēnīs** § 77 *at Athens*	**Athēnīs** *from Athens*	**ab Athēnīs** *from near Athens*

ad arma	**in fugam**	**in armīs**	**ex fugā**	**ab armīs**
to arms	*to flight*	*in arms*	*from flight*	*from arms*
ad Iūlium	**in Iūlium**	**in Iūliō**	**ex Iūliō**	**ā Iūliō**
to or *up to Julius*	*against* or *at Julius*	*in Julius*	(idea) *from Julius*	(book) *from Julius*

61. In case of proper names of towns, small islands, and peninsulas, **domus** (*home*) and **rūs** (*the country*), the following special rules must be observed.

a. The accusative with **ad** *denotes direction in which.*

b. The accusative denotes place to which, or destination.

c. The locative denotes place in which.

d. The ablative denotes place from which.

e. The ablative with **ā** *or* **ab** *denotes direction from which.*

f. **In** *and* **ē** *or* **ex** *are never used with these nouns.*

62. The phrases, *with the boys, with the horses,* and *with the dog,* are said to denote *association* or *accompaniment,* because the boy, the horses, and the dog may be regarded as companions or associates.

The phrases, *with a sword, with books,* and *with water,* are said to denote *instrument* or *means* of action.

a. (Persons or animals) *Association*		*b.* (Inanimate things) *Instrument* or *Means*	
Cum puerīs pugnat.	§ 58	Gladiō pugnat.	§ 56, 6
He fights with the boys.		*He fights with a sword.*	
Cum equō missus est.		Librīs plēnum est.	§ 56, 6
He was sent with the horse.		*It is filled with books.*	

c. But persons and animals are often treated as things, and inanimate things are regarded as companions.

Ibi **cum** gladiō stetit. Equīs arant. § 56, 6
Here he stood with a sword. *They plow with horses.*

Cum librīs missus est. Nāvis puerīs plēna est.
He was sent with books. *The boat is full of boys.*

Cum litterīs vēnit. Quid puerō fīet? § 56, 6
He came with a letter. *What will be done with the boy?*

d. Active Agents *Instrument* or *Means*

Ā Iūliō missus est. Sagittā est vulnerātus.
He was sent by Julius. *He was wounded by an arrow.*

Ā cane morsus est. Fulmine ictus est.
He was bitten by a dog. *He was struck by lightning.*

e. But persons and animals may be treated as things.

Per explōrātōrem cognitum est. Equīs ductus est.
Was learned through a scout. *It was drawn by horses.*

f. **Castrīs** sē tenet *keeps himself* ***in camp*** (means of shelter).
Barbarōs **proeliō** superant *they defeat barbarians* ***in battle.***
Puerum **pugnā** superat *defeats the boy* ***in a fight*** or ***by fighting.***

g. The Ablative is used to describe a person or thing.

Magnā est **grātiā.** § 56, 6 Puer **oculīs caeruleīs.**
He is a person of great favor. *A boy* ***with blue eyes.***

Mōns **magnā altitūdine** *a mountain* ***of great height.*** § 56, 6

63. *a.* **ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION**

Sūos **ā proeliō** continet *he keeps his* (men) ***from battle.***
Suīs **fīnibus** eōs prohibent *they keep them* ***from*** *their* ***borders.***
Mūrum **barbarīs** nūdant *they clear the wall* ***of barbarians.***

b. The Ablative case is used to express **separation from abstract things**, *the Ablative with* **ā** *or* **ab** *from concrete things* (but this varies with the verb used).

Hoc eōs **cūrā** līberat *this relieves* (*frees*) *them* ***of*** (*f om*) ***anxiety.***
Hostīs (*pl.*) **ab oppidō** proh bē *keep the enemy* ***from the town.***

64. ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS

tot (indecl.) *so-many* **totidem** *just as many, the* ***same*** *number*
quot (indecl.) *as-many, as* **sī quot** *if several* **quot**? *how many?*
quot equī sunt? *how many horses are there?* **multī sunt** *many*
tot . . . quot *as-many . . . as, so-many . . . as*
aliquot (indecl.) *some number, several.* See §§ 70, 91–2, 150
tam **multī**, tam **multōrum**, m. ***so*** *many* (*men, persons*, etc.)
quam **multī**, quam **multōrum**, m. ***as*** *many* (*persons*) [1] *as* ***quota***
quam **multī**? quam **multōrum**? m. ***how*** *many persons?*
quam multī equī sunt? *how many horses are there?*
multī, multōrum, m. *many* (*men*,[1] etc.) ***multiply***
permultī, permultōrum, m. ***very****-many* ***multitude***
plūrimī, plūrimōrum, m. ***very****-many* (*persons*), *most* (*men*) ***plural***
quam plūrimōs sēcum dūcit *takes* ***as*** *many* ***as*** *he can with* ***him***
plērīque, plērōrumque, m. *most* (*men*), *the majority*
paucī, paucōrum, m. *a few, some-few, few* (*men*) ***paucity***
perpaucī, perpaucōrum, m. ***very*** *few*
nūllī, nūllōrum, m. *no* (*men*), *none* ***nullify, null***
nōnnūllī, nōnnūllōrum, m. ***not****-a-few, some* (*persons*) *an****nul***
bonī, bonōrum, m. *the good, good* (*men*) ***bonny, bounty***
malī, malōrum, m. *the bad, bad* (*men*) ***malefactor***
nostrī, nostrōrum, m. *our* (*men*), *our* (*soldiers*), *ours* [1]
suī, suōrum, m. *his* or *her* (*own people*), *its* (*own*), *their* (*own*) [1]
meī, meōrum, m. *my* (*people, friends*), *my* (*family*) [1] 109 *c*, 118 *b*

[1] Not only *persons* or *men* but also *boys, horses*, etc.

65. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS (Masculine)

alius *other, else;* pl. *others*
  alius *one . . .* **alius** *another*
  aliī *some . . .* **aliī** *others*
alter *the one . .* **alter** *the other*
alterī *the ones;* **alterī** *the others*
nēmō (**nē** + **homō**) *no man*
quis (*any*) ***one***, *one,* (*some*) *one*
-que *each, every* §§ 108 *b*, 111
quisque ***every*** *one,* ***each*** *one*
quis? *what* ***one?*** *who?* § 114
sōlus (*he*) *alone,* (*I*) *alone,* etc.
sōlī (*they*) *alone,* (*we*) *alone*
tōtus *whole,* (*he*) *all* § 118 *b*
  tōtus in studiīs est ***he is all taken-up with-studies***
ūllus *any* (*one*), *any* (*body*)
nūllus ***not*** *one,* ***no*** *one*
ūnus *one, the only one*
  ūnī *the only ones* §§ 40, 120
uter? *which* (***one*** *of the two*)?
uterque ***either*** (*one*), *both*
neuter ***neither*** (*one of the two*)

Some *praise* ***one, others*** (*praise*) ***another.***
( ) **Aliī alium** laudant.
One *flees in* ***one*** *direction,* ***another*** (*flees*) *in* ***another*** (*direction*)
( ) **Alius in aliam** partem fugit

66. *a.* CONNECTING WORDS

Between Parts of Sentences	*Between Sentences*
ac or **atque** *and*	**et . . . et**
-que or **et** *and*	*both . . and*
nec or **neque** *and not, nor*	
vel, aut, or **sīve** (**seu**) *or*	
nec *neither . . .* **nec** *nor*	
vel *either . . .* **vel** *or*	
sōlum (**modo**) *only, just*	
nōn sōlum (**modo**) *not only . . .* **sed etiam** *but also*	
	ita or **sīc** *so, in such a manner*
	item *in the same way, likewise*
	itaque or **igitur** *therefore*
	tum or **igitur** *then*
	tum dēmum *then at last, finally*
	dēnique *finally, in the end*
	autem (never stands first) *however, but, besides*
	nam, enim, namque *for* (*indeed*)

b. If the ***subject*** *is* ***plural****, the* ***verb*** *must be* ***plural****; if the* ***subject*** *is* ***singular****, the* ***verb*** *must be* ***singular****.*

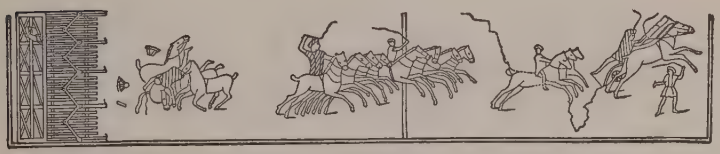
Castra sunt apud Arpīnum ***the camp is*** *near Arpinum* § 77 *b*
Uterque venit ***both are*** *coming.* **Paucī eunt** ***few are*** *going*
Aut Titus **aut** Galba **venit** *either* ***Titus*** *or* ***Galba is*** *coming* § 108 *b*

c. The preposition **ē** or **ex** (sometimes **dē**) is used when one or more are chosen from the number. (See also § 58.)

ūnus ē puerīs or	**ūna ex fīliābus** or	**ūnum ex oppidīs**
ūnus puerōrum	**ūna fīliārum**	**ūnum oppidōrum**
one of the boys	*one of the daughters*	*one of the towns*

67. Numeral adverbs and neuter singular nouns of time.

semel *once;* **semel atque iterum** *again and again* ***sim****ple*
bis *twice;* **ter** *three times;* **quater** *four times* p. 29 ***bis****cuit*
bīduum, bīduī n. *a period of two days, two days* ***bi****weekly*
biennium, (**bienniī**) **biennī** n. (*period of*) *two years* ***bienn****ial*
trīduum, trīduī n. *three days* Cf. p. 31, l. 26 ***tri****ple,* ***tri****angle*
triennium, (**trienniī**) **triennī** n. *three years* ***triennial***
quadrīduum, quadrīduī n. *four days* ***quadr****uple*
quadriennium, (**quadrienniī**) **quadriennī** n. *four years*
spatium, (**spatiī**) **spatī** n. *space, distance, period* ***spac****ious*
prīmum (Acc.) *for the first time, first;* **prīmō** (Abl.) *at first*



Circus Rōmānus.

68. *a. The Accusative case is used to denote* ***Extent*** *or* ***Measure of Time, Space, Power, Action,*** *etc.* § 74, 17

b. The Ablative is used to denote ***Measure of Difference.***

c. The Ablative is used to denote ***Time when, at which, in which,*** *or* ***during which.*** § 74, 18

The following expressions must be carefully studied.

a. How long? How far? (§ 5 *d*)	*b. How much earlier* or *later?* etc (§ 5 *j*).	*c. When* or *Within what time?*
annum *a year, for a year*	**annō ante** § 74, 19 *a year before, **one** year before, a year previously, earlier by a year*	**priōre annō** or **superiōre annō** *the year before, the previous year, year before last*
biennium (*for*) *two years*	**septem ante annīs** *seven years before*	**sex annīs** Cf. p. 29 *in six years*
nihil potest *is not able at all*	**sex post annīs** *six years later*	**proximō annō** *during the nearest year, next year, last year*
duo mīlia passuum (*for*) *two miles*	**ā mīlibus passuum duōbus** *2 miles away*	**illō diē** *on that day*

69. LIST OF COMMON ADVERBS

tam *so, so very;* eum **nōn tam** amō **quam** timeō *I do not love him **as much as** I fear him.*

quam *as, than;* **quam** diū ***as** long **as**;* **quam**? *how?* ***quantity***

quam diū? ***how** long?* **quam** optimē potest ***as** best he can*

ante, anteā *previously, before, ago* ***antique, ancient***

prius *soon**er***; **prius quam** *sooner than, before* ***prior, priority***

post, posteā *after**ward**, later;* **postquam** *after* ***post**pone*

nē (in commands or wishes) *not;* **nē** īte *don't go* ***none, nor***

nōn (in positive denials) *not;* **nōn** it *he is **not** going* ***nonsense***

quidem *indeed, to be sure;* **nē** id **quidem** ***not even*** *this*

aliter *differently*; **aliter atque** (ac) *other**wise** than* ***alibi***

bene *well, successfully*; **bene est** *it is well* ***benefit***
melius *better, more happily, **rather** well, too well* ***ameliorate***
optimē *best, **very** well;* **quam optimē** *as best (one can)* ***optimist***

male *ill, badly*; **Mārcō male vult** *wishes Mark ill* ***malice***
peius *not so well, worse, **too** badly, less happily* ***malign***
pessimē *worst;* **quam pessimē** *as badly as one can* ***pessimist***

celeriter *speedily, soon, in haste, rapidly* ***accelerate***
celerius ***more*** *quickly, **rather** quickly, **too** quickly*
celerrimē ***very*** *quickly*; **quam celerrimē** *as quickly as possible*

diū *long, for a long time;* diūtius *long**er**, **too** long*

facile *easily*; facilius ***more*** *easily, **rather** easily* ***facility***
facillimē ***most*** *easily*; **quam facillimē** *as easily as one can*

lātē *widely, extensively*; **longē lātēque** *far and wide* ***latitude***
lātius ***more*** *widely, **rather** widely, **too** widely*
lātissimē ***very*** *widely*; **quam lātissimē** *as widely as possible*

longē *far; by far;* longius *far**ther**, **too** far* ***longitude***
longissimē *far**thest***; **quam longissimē** *as far as possible*

magis *more, rather;* **magis** arduus *steep**er**, **too** steep* ***master***
maximē *most, very, especially;* **maximē** arduus *steep**est***

minus *not so much, less, not;* **minus** facile ***not so*** *easily*
minimē *least, not at all;* **minimē** saepe *very seldom* ***minimize***

saepe *more than once, often;* **minus** saepe ***less*** *frequently*
saepius *over and over, again and again, often**er**, **too** often*

latīnē ***after*** *the **manner** of the Latins, **in** Latin, **in** the Latin **way***
graecē ***after*** *the **manner** of the Greeks, **in** the Greek **way**, **in** Greek*

70. The following *neuter singulars* are mostly adjectives used as nouns denoting *amount* and *value*. Cf. §§ 91–2.

tantum, tantī n. *so much, so much value, so great an amount;* quid **tantī** est, **quantī** lūmen? *what is of* ***so much*** *(value)* ***as*** *light?* tantum **bonī** *so much (**of**)* ***good*** (Gen., cf. § 72)

quantum, quantī n. ***as*** *much,* ***as*** *much value,* ***as*** *great an amount, as;* tantum legit, **quantum** legō *he reads as much* ***as*** *I read* legit **quantum** potest *he reads* ***as much as*** *he can*

magnum, magnī n. *a great amount, great value* ***magnify***

maximum, maximī n. ***very*** *great (amount* or *value)* ***maxim***

magnō **opere** or **magnopere** *with great* ***effect****, greatly*

tantō **opere** or **tantopere** *with so great* ***earnestness****, so greatly*

quantō **opere**? or **quantopere**? *with how great* ***effect****? how greatly?* quantō opere Mārcī **interest**? *how much is-it-the-****interest*** *of —?*

parvum, parvī n. *little, a small (amount), little (value)*

parum (Nom. and Acc.) n. *too little, little, not enough*

minimum, minimī n. ***very*** *little,* ***very*** *small amount,* ***least*** *value*

multum, multī n. *much, great deal, amount* or *value* ***multiply***

permultum, permultī n. ***very*** *much,* ***very*** *great deal* or *value*

plūrimum, plūrimī n. ***very*** *much, most,* ***largest*** *value* ***plural***

paulum, paulī n. *a little;* **paulum morae** *a little (**of**)* ***delay***

perpaulum, -ī or **paululum, -ī** n. ***a very*** *little,* ***just*** *a bit* § 56, 4

plērumque (cf. § 76), Nom. *most;* Acc. *(**for** the) most (**part**)*

nihil (or **nihilum**), **nihilī** n. ***nothing, no*** *value;* **nihilō** minus ***no*** *less,* ***less by nothing, none-the less;*** **nihil** commōtus ***nothing*** *daunted;* **nihil** (Acc.) *to* ***no*** *extent,* ***not*** *at all* §§ 5 *d*, 74–17

satis (Nom., Acc.) n. *enough, sufficient;* **satis** bene *well* ***enough***

plūs, plūris n. *more, greater amount;* **plūs** bonī ***more*** *(**of**) good* § 150

minus, minōris n. *less, smaller value;* **minus** bonī ***less*** *(**of**) good*

opus, operis n. *work, effort, effect; need* (w. Abl.) § 71 *c*, 78 *b*

bonum, bonī n. *benefit, good;* **malum, malī** n. *an evil, bad*

71. *a.* NEUTER INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

aliud *other, another, else;* **quid aliud**? *what else* §§ 108–113
alterum *the other* (of two); **alterum** *the one* . . **alterum** *the other*
nūllum *no, not-one, none;* **nūllum ex oppidīs** *not one of the towns;*
nūllum oppidum *not-a town, no town* § 118 *b*
quid *anything* **sī quid cōnsilī est** *if there is any* (*of*) *plan*
quidque *everything;* **optimum quidque** *everything* (that is) *best*
omnia, omnium n. pl. (like **paria** § 83 *b*) *all* (*things*) or *everything*
quid? *what?* Acc. *to what extent?* **quid potest**? *how able is he?*
quod potest, mē dēfendit *defends me* (*to*) ***what*** (***extent***) *he can*
utrum? *whether? which one* (of the two)? **utrum** *whether* . . . **an** *or*
utrumque *both things;* **in utrumque parātus est** *is ready for either*
neutrum *neither* (one of the two), *neither* (*thing*)

b. When indefinite **quis, quid** means *any one, anything.*

Quod **quis** nōvit dīcere licet *what* ***one*** *knows, it is right to tell.*
Sī **quis quid** audit, dīcat *if* ***one*** *hears* ***anything****, he may say so.*

c. **Opus** in the meaning *need* takes the Ablative.

Mihi opus est **librīs** *for me there is* (*I have*) *need* ***of books.*** § 56, 6

72. Words denoting indefinite quantity are followed by the *Genitive of the Whole Amount.*

Quid bonī eī est? ***what*** (***of***) ***good*** *is there to him?*
Nōn **satis** est **causae** *there is not* ***enough*** (*of*) ***reason.***

73. *a. The Genitive is used to denote* ***indefinite value.***

Parvī aestimātur *it is rated* ***of little*** (***value***).
Nihilī est *he is* ***of no worth*** (***good for nothing***). § 118 *c*
Equum **parvī** emit *he buys the horse* ***for-some-small*** (***amount***).

b. The Ablative is used to denote ***definite*** *value or price.*

Eum **parvō** (**pretiō**) ēmit *he bought it* ***at-a-certain small price.***

c. The Genitive denotes the ***person*** *or* ***thing concerned.***

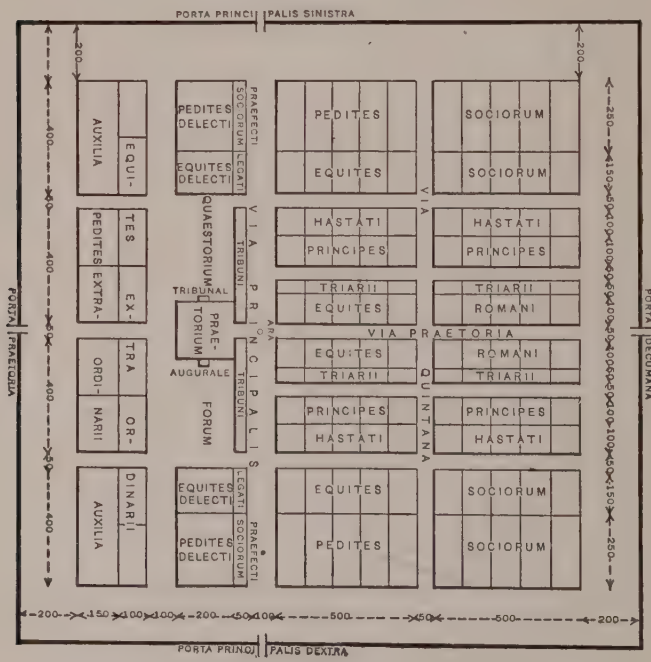
Reī pūblicae magnopere inter-est *it is greatly the interest* ***of the commonwealth,*** *concerns the state greatly.* § 81 *b*

d. **Inter-esse** meaning *have-part-in* takes the Dative.

Cōnsiliō puerōrum **interest** *he* ***takes-part-in*** *the boys'* ***plan.***

e. The Dative often denotes the ***person*** or ***thing concerned.***

Huic ratiōnī locus est *there is room* ***for this method.*** § 56, 3
Mihi est praesidiō *is (for) a protection* ***to me*** § 159 *g*



Castra Rōmāna.

74. No matter what the ending is, these rules never fail.

1. If a noun is the subject of a finite verb, it is *nominative.*

Catō vocat ***Cato*** *calls* **Flūmen** celere est ***the river*** *is swift*

2. If a noun is the subject of an infinitive, it is *accusative.*

Catōnem vocāre audiō *I hear* ***Cato*** *call*

Flūmen celere esse sciō *I know* ***the river*** *is swift*

3. The predicate of a subject nominative is *nominative.*
The predicate of a subject accusative is *accusative.*

Is **Catō** est *it is* ***Cato*** § 42, 2

Eum **Catōnem** esse sciō *I know it is* ***Cato***

A predicate noun denotes the same person or thing as the subject. The direct object is a different person or thing, unless the subject is acting upon itself. § 116 *b*

4. If a noun is used as the direct object, it is *accusative.*

Catōnem vīdit *he saw* ***Cato*** **Sē** ipse culpat *he blames* ***himself***
Flūmen videt *he sees the* ***river*** **Mē** accūsat *he accuses* ***me***

5. A predicate attached to the direct object is *accusative.*

Eum **Catōnem** dīcunt *they call him* ***Cato***

Eum **amīcum** putant *they think him* ***friendly***

6. If a noun is used as an indirect object, it is *dative.*

Catōnī librum dedit *gave* ***Cato*** *a book*

Sōl **terrae** lūmen dat *the sun gives* ***the earth*** *light.*

7. A noun used to call the attention of a person or address a person or thing is *vocative.*

Age, **Catō**! *come,* ***Cato!*** *act,* ***Cato!***

8. Nouns in exclamations not addressed to any one are *accusative.*

Ō fortūnātam **rem pūblicam**! *oh lucky* ***state!***

Mē miserum! *poor* ***me!***

9. Any noun or pronoun used as the object of **ad**, **ante**, **apud**, **circum**, **inter**, **ob**, **per**, **post**, **propter**, **trāns**, etc., is *accusative.* § 57

Per montīs *over the* ***mountains***
Trāns flūmen *across* ***the river***
Propter vulnus *on account of* ***a wound***
Apud **eum** *at* ***his*** *house, in his eyes* or *mind*

10. Proper names of towns, small islands, and **domum**, *home*, or **rūs**, *to the country*, denoting place to which, are *accusative.* § 61

Athēnās profectus *started* ***for Athens*** **Domum** it *goes* ***home***
Bibracte īre vult *will go to* ***Bibracte*** **Rūs** ī *go* ***to the country***

11. Any noun or pronoun used as the object of **ā**, **ab**, **abs**, **cum**, **dē**, **ē**, **ex**, **prō**, **sine**, etc., is *ablative.* § 58

Abs **tē** *by* ***thee*** **Mēcum** *with* ***me*** Prō **mē** *in* ***my*** *interest*

12. Nouns or pronouns denoting means or instrument are *ablative.*

Equō it *rides* ***on a horse*** **Gladiō** pugnat *fights* ***with a sword***

13. Proper names of towns, etc., denoting place from which, are *ablative.*

Rōmā profectus est *started* ***from Rome*** §§ 62–3

14. Proper names of towns, denoting place in which, are *locative.*

Rōmae est *is* ***at Rome*** **Gādibus** fuit *was* ***in Gades*** §§ 76–9
Domī meae ***in my home*** **Domī suae** ***in his own home*** § 83 *a*

15. Nouns without prepositions denoting cause are *ablative.*

Puerōs **dīligentiā** laudat *praises the boys* ***for their diligence***
Quā rē mē accūsat? ***on account of what*** *does he accuse me?*

16. A noun denoting in what respect one excels is *ablative.*

Reliquōs **virtūte** praecēdunt *surpass the rest* ***in valor***

17. A noun denoting length of time or extent of space, action, being, state, power, etc., is *accusative of measure.*

Annum āfuit *was away* ***a year***

Multum abest *is away* ***a great deal***

Maximam partem frūmentō vīvunt *live* ***a very great deal*** *on grain.*

18. Nouns denoting time in which or at which are *ablative.*

Annō ***within a year*** Illō ipsō **diē** ***on*** *that very* ***day*** § 68

Hieme ***in winter*** **Nocte** ***at night, during the night***

19. Nouns denoting how much one exceeds or precedes another or differs from another are *ablative.*

Annō ante ***a year*** *earlier*

Ā mīlibus passuum v. *5* ***miles*** *away*

Quō plūs, **eō** melius ***the*** *more,* ***the*** *better*

Multō melius ***much*** *better*

20. A noun followed by **causā** *for-the-sake, for* is *genitive.*

Frūmentī causā morātur *is delaying for* (*the sake* ***of***) ***grain***

21. A noun or pronoun inserted by the side of another to explain it more fully stands in the *same case by apposition.*

Hoc lēgātō **Cicerōnī** nūntiat *reports this to lieutenant* ***Cicero***

The *ablative* or a phrase is used in apposition *with a locative.*

Athēnīs **urbe** Graeciae *in Athens* ***a city*** *of Greece* § 77

Rhodī **in īnsulā** magnā *on Rhodes* ***a large island*** § 76

22. Nouns connected by **et**, **-que**, **nec**, etc., are usually in the same case, verbs thus connected are of the same mode.

Mārcō et **Galbae** ***to Mark*** *and* ***Galba***

Nec **timet** neque **ōdit** *neither* ***fears*** *nor* ***hates***

Note. — Cf. also §§ 5, 59–63, 71–3, 94–6, 105, 109, 157.

75. Nouns Having **-ī** in the Genitive Singular

	Singular	
N.	**inimīcus**	*a foe* (as subj. of a finite verb, pred. nom., etc.)
G.	**inimīcī**	*a foe's; of a foe*[1]; *an enemy's; of an enemy*, etc.
D.	**inimīcō**	*a foe* (indir. obj.); *to a foe; for a foe*, etc.
Ac.	**inimīcum**	*a foe* (subj. of Inf.; dir. obj.); **ad inimīcum** *to a foe,*
V.	**inimīce**	*foe! O foe! thou foe!* [*for a foe, against a foe*[2]
Ab.	**inimīcō**	*than a foe;* **ab inimīcō**, *by a foe, from an enemy;* **cum inimīcō** *with a foe;* **dē inimīcō** *about a foe*

	Plural	
N.	**inimīcī**	*foes* (as subj. of a finite verb, pred. nom., etc.)
G.	**inimīcōrum**	*foes'; of foes; enemies'; of enemies*, etc.
D.	**inimīcīs**	*foes* (indir. obj.); *to foes; for foes*, etc.
Ac.	**inimīcōs**	*foes* (dir. obj.; subj. of Inf.); **ad inimīcōs**, *to foes,*
V.	**inimīcī**	*foes! O foes! ye foes!* [*toward foes*, etc.
Ab.	**inimīcīs**	*than foes;* **ab inimīcīs** *from enemies, by foes;* **cum inimīcīs** *with foes;* **sine inimīcīs** *without foes*

76. When the base ends in **-r-**, the endings, **-us** and **-e**, are lost in many words. When the base ends in **-i-**, contracted forms occur in the singular; **-iī** and **-ie** become **-ī**.

		Singular			
1.	*N.*	Rhodus[3]	fīlius *son*	vesper	magister
2.	*G.*	Rhodī	fīlī (fīliī)	vesperī	magistrī
3.	*D.*	Rhodō	fīliō	vesperō	magistrō
4.	*Ac.*	Rhodum	fīlium	vesperum	magistrum
5.	*V.*	Rhode	fīlī	vesper	magister
6.	*Ab.*	Rhodō	fīliō	vesperō	magistrō
7.	*L.*	Rhodī *in Rhodes*		vesperī *at evening*	

[1] Both case forms and roundabout phrases have to be used in English.
[2] See § 57. [3] Fem.; names of islands are feminine; §§ 54, 55 *a, e, f.*

PLURAL

1. *N.*	Philippī	fīliī	plērīque[1] *most*	magistrī
2. *G.*	Philippōrum	fīliōrum	plērōrumque	magistrōrum
3. *D.*	Philippīs	fīliīs	plērīsque	magistrīs
4. *Ac.*	Philippōs	fīliōs	plērōsque	magistrōs
5. *V.*	Philippī	fīliī		magistrī
6. *Ab.*	Philippīs	fīliīs	plērīsque	magistrīs
7. *L.*	Philippīs *at Philippi*			

77. *a.* **First Decension** — *Feminine* (*Masculine*)[2] — Genitive Singular **-ae**

b. **Second Declension** — *Neuter* — Genitive Singular **-ī**

SINGULAR

N.	Alexandrēa[3]	prōvincia	cōnsilium *plan*	Arpīnum
G.	Alexandrēae	prōvinciae	cōnsiliī, cōnsilī	Arpīnī
D.	Alexandrēae	prōvinciae	cōnsiliō	Arpīnō
Ac.	Alexandrēam	prōvinciam	cōnsilium	Arpīnum
V.	Alexandrēa	prōvincia	cōnsilium	Arpīnum
Ab.	Alexandrēā	prōvinciā	cōnsiliō	Arpīnō
L.	Alexandrēae *at Alexandria*			Arpīnī

PLURAL

N.	Syrācūsae	prōvinciae	cōnsilia *plans*	Leuctra
G.	Syrācūsārum	prōvinciārum	cōnsiliōrum	Leuctrōrum
D.	Syrācūsīs	prōvinciīs	cōnsiliīs	Leuctrīs
Ac.	Syrācūsās	prōvinciās	cōnsilia	Leuctra
V.	Syrācūsae	prōvinciae	cōnsilia	Leuctra
Ab.	Syrācūsīs	prōvinciīs	cōnsiliīs	Leuctrīs
L.	Syrācūsīs *in Syracuse*			Leuctrīs

[1] See § 119 *b* for the meaning of the suffix **-que**.

[2] Feminine except when they denote male beings.

[3] Greek noun; cf. §§ 28 *b*, 51.

		Singular		
N.	boreās[1] m.	fīlia *daughter*	oppidum *town*	vulgus *crowd*
G.	boreae	fīliae	oppidī	vulgī
D.	boreae	fīliae	oppidō	vulgō
Ac.	boream	fīliam	oppidum	vulgus
V.	boreā[1]	fīlia	oppidum	vulgus
Ab.	boreā	fīliā	oppidō	vulgō
		Plural		
N.	Athēnae	fīliae	oppida *towns*	castra *camp*
G.	Athēnārum	fīliārum	oppidōrum	castrōrum
D.	Athēnīs	fīliābus[2]	oppidīs	castrīs
Ac.	Athēnās	fīliās	oppida	castra
V.	Athēnae	fīliae	oppida	castra
Ab.	Athēnīs	fīliābus	oppidīs	castrīs

L. Athēnīs *at Athens* § 74, 10.

78. The Third Declension — Consonant Stems

		Singular			
	a. Masculine or Feminine			*b. Neuter*	
N.	(iūdec s)	iūdex[3] *judge*	virgō *maiden*	ōs *mouth*	flūmen
G.	(iūdic is)	iūdicis	virginis	ōris	flūminis
D.	(iūdic ī)	iūdicī	virginī	ōrī	flūminī
Ac.	(iūdic em)	iūdicem	virginem	ōs § 42	flūmen
V.	(iūdec s)	iūdex § 46	virgō § 52	ōs	flūmen
Ab.	(iūdic e)	iūdice	virgine	ōre	flūmine

[1] Greek nom. § 51. [2] § 55 *a*. [3] -cs is always written -x.

Gladius Rōmānus.

PLURAL

N.	iūdicēs	virginēs	ōra	flūmina
G.	iūdicum	virginum	ōrum	flūminum
D. § 46	iūdicibus	virginibus	ōribus	flūminibus
Ac.	iūdicēs	virginēs	ōra	flūmina
V.	iūdicēs	virginēs	ōra	flūmina
Ab.	iūdicibus	virginibus	ōribus	flūminibus

SINGULAR

	Stem	*Base*	*Stem*	*Base*		
N.	(cūstōd s)	cūstōs [1]	(vulnes)	vulnus [2]	(rūs)	rūs [3]
G.	(cūstōd is)	cūstōdis	(vulnes is)	vulneris [2]	(rūs is)	rūris [3]
D.	(cūstōd ī)	cūstōdī	(vulnes ī)	vulnerī	(rūs ī)	rūrī
Ac.	(cūstōd em)	cūstōdem	(vulnes)	vulnus	(rūs)	rūs
V.	(cūstōd s)	cūstōs	(vulnes)	vulnus	(rūs)	rūs
Ab.	(cūstōd e)	cūstōde	(vulnes e)	vulnere	(rūs e)	rūre
L.					(rūs ī)	rūre

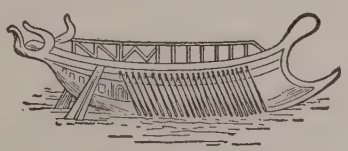
PLURAL

N.	cūstōdēs *guards*	vulnera *wounds*	rūra
G.	cūstōdum	vulnerum	rūrum
D.	cūstōdibus § 42	vulneribus § 42	rūribus
Ac.	cūstōdēs	vulnera	rūra
V.	cūstōdēs	vulnera	rūra
Ab.	cūstōdibus	vulneribus	rūribus

[1] **-ds** and **-ts** become **-s**.

[2] Final **-es** becomes **-us**; **-s-** between vowels becomes **-r-**. Cf. *was* and *were*.

[3] Cf. **rustic** and **rural**. See §§ 42; 74, 10.



Nāvis Antīqua.

79. Third Declension -i- Stems and Mixed Stems

SINGULAR

	a. Masculine or Feminine			*b. Neuter*	
	Base	*Stem* [1]	*Base*	*Stem* [1]	*Base*
N.	nāvis *ship*	(parti s)	pars *part*	(mari)	mare *sea*
G.	nāvis	(parti s)	partis	(mari s)	maris
D.	nāvī	(parti ī)	partī	(mari ī)	marī
Ac.	nāvim, nāvem	(parti m)	partem	(mari)	mare [2]
V.	nāvis	(parti s)	pars § 46	(mari)	mare
Ab.	nāvī, nāve	(parti e)	parte	(mari e)	marī

PLURAL

N.	nāvēs	(parti ēs)	partēs	(mari a)	maria
G.	nāvium	(parti um)	partium	(mari um)	marium
D.	nāvibus	(parti bus)	partibus	(mari bus)	maribus
Ac.	nāvīs [3]	(parti ēs)	partīs	(mari a)	maria
V.	nāvēs	(parti ēs)	partēs	(mari a)	maria
Ab.	nāvibus	(parti bus)	partibus	(mari bus)	maribus

SINGULAR

	c. Masculine or Feminine			*d. Neuter*
N.	Arar	(nūbē s) [4]	nūbēs *cloud*	Bibracte	vectīgal *tax*
G.	Araris	(nūbi s)	nūbis	Bibractis	vectīgālis
D.	Ararī	(nūbi ī)	nūbī	Bibractī	vectīgālī
Ac.	Ararim	(nūbi m)	nūbem	Bibracte	vectīgal
V.	Arar	(nūbē s)	nūbēs	Bibracte	vectīgal
Ab.	Ararī	(nūbi e)	nūbe	Bibracte	vectīgālī
L.				Bibracte	

[1] Learn the base. Stems are given merely to show the formation.
[2] **-i-** of the stem remains as **-e** in a few nouns and most adjectives.
[3] Printed **-ēs** in many editions of Latin authors.
[4] The stem **nūbē-** is of the Fifth Declension; **nūbi-** of the Third.

PLURAL

N.	Gādēs *Gades*	nūbēs	moenia *walls*	vectīgālia
G.	Gādium	nūbium	moenium	vectīgālium
D.	Gādibus	nūbibus	moenibus	vectīgālibus
Ac.	Gādīs	nūbīs	moenia	vectīgālia
V.	Gādēs	nūbēs	moenia	vectīgālia
Ab.	Gādibus	nūbibus	moenibus	vectīgālibus
L.	Gādibus			

80. Between vowels **u** becomes **v**:

SINGULAR

N.	(vīs)	vīs *force*	sūs *pig*	(bou s)	bōs *cow*	Iuppiter [3]
G.		—	suis	(bou is)	bovis	Iovis
D.		—	suī	(bou ī)	bovī	Iovī
Ac.	(vi m)	vim	suem	(bou em)	bovem	Iovem
V.	(vīs)	vīs	sūs	(bou s)	bōs	Iuppiter
Ab.	(vi e)	vī	sue	(bou e)	bove	Iove

PLURAL

N.	(vīs ēs)	vīrēs	suēs	(bou ēs)	bovēs *kine, oxen*
G.		vīrium	suum	(bou um)	boum
D.		vīribus	suibus [1]	(bou bus)	būbus [2]
Ac.		vīrīs -ēs	suēs	(bou ēs)	bovēs
V.		vīrēs	suēs	(bou ēs)	bovēs
Ab.		vīribus	suibus	(bou bus)	būbus [2]

[1] Also **sūbus**. [2] Also **bōbus**. [3] Originally **Iou** + **pater** *Father Jove.*

Arcus.

81. *a.* **Fourth Declension** *b.* **Fifth Declension**

SINGULAR

	Mas. or Fem. Nouns		*Neuter*	*Feminine* (except **diēs**)	
	Stem	*Base*	*Base*	*Stem*	
1. *N.*	(domu **s**)	domus [1]	cornū	(diē **s**) diēs	rēs
2. *G.*	(domu **is**)	domūs	cornūs	(diē **ī**) diēī [2]	reī [2]
3. *D.*	(domu **ī**)	domuī **-ū**	cornū	(diē **ī**) diēī	reī
4. *Ac.*	(domu **m**)	domum	cornū	(diē **m**) diem	rem
5. *V.*	(domu **s**)	domus	cornū	(diē **s**) diēs	rēs
6. *Ab.*	(domu **e**)	domū [4]	cornū	(diē **e**) diē	rē

PLURAL

1. *N.*	(domu **ēs**)	domūs	cornua	diēs	rēs
2. *G.*	(domu **um**)	domuum	cornuum	diērum	rērum
3. *D.*	(domu **bus**)	domibus [3]	cornibus	diēbus	rēbus
4. *Ac.*	(domu **ēs**)	domūs [4]	cornua	diēs	rēs
5. *V.*	(domu **ēs**)	domūs	cornua	diēs	rēs
6. *Ab.*	(domu **bus**)	domibus [3]	cornibus	diēbus	rēbus

82. The Third Declension need give no trouble. Learn the **Nominative**, **Genitive**, and **Gender** of every noun.

a. If you wish to find the Vocative Singular of any Third Declension noun, it is like the Nominative Singular.

b. The *Accusative Singular* of any *Neuter* Third Declension noun is like the Nominative (given in the vocabulary).

c. The remaining forms of the Singular and all the Plural forms are perfectly regular. To write any one of them cor-

[1] **Domus** (f.) is a model for masculine and feminine nouns of this declension.
[2] The ending is **-eī** (when not preceded by **-i-**) in **spēs, speī** f. *hope;* **fidēs, fideī**, f. *faith* and **plēbēs, plēbeī** f. *common people.* [3] **-ubus** is found in **tribus, tribūs** *tribe* and a few others. [4] See also § 60.

rectly simply get the *base* (by dropping **-is, -um,** or **-ium** from the *genitive* and annex the ending.

d. The preposition **in** governs either the *ablative* or the *accusative.* All nouns in the following phrases are *accusative* for not one of them has an ablative ending.

Puer **in caput** volvitur *the boy tumbles himself* ***on his head.***
Hoc **in** aliud **tempus** cōnfert *he puts this off* ***till*** *another* ***time.***
Cōnsilia **in melius** refert *she changes her plans* ***for the better.***
In reliquum **tempus** *for the rest (of)* ***the time;*** *from now on.*
In castra[1] revertuntur *they are returning* ***to the camp.*** Obs. p. 16.
Frūmentum **in oppida** comportant *they gather grain* ***into the towns.***

e. The only Ablative endings (§ 55 *a, b*) are:

-ā, -īs, -ābus, -ē, -ēbus, -e, -ī, -ibus, -ō, -ōbus, -ū, -ubus

Any noun (except **nihil**) not ending in **-a, -e, -am, -em, -im, -um** or in **-ās, -ēs, -īs, -ōs, -ūs,** if accusative, is instantly known to be *neuter* and *singular* and *third* declension, as it can have no ending. § 55 *b, e, f.*

EXAMPLES

Flūmen altum **esse** scītis *you know the* ***river to be*** *deep.*
Nihil patiuntur vīnī īnferrī *they allow* ***no*** *wine* ***to be brought*** *in.*
Iter facit *makes a* ***journey.*** **Flūmen** trānsītis *you cross the* ***river.***
Propter annī **tempus** ***because-of the time*** *of year.*
Ad mare[2] *toward the sea.* **Propter vulnus** ***because of a wound.***

Thus **flūmen, iter, tempus, vulnus, mare** are known to be neuter singular and third declension because they are accusative.

[1] See also page 18, note 1. [2] **Mare** is Acc. Neut. **Ad** takes the Acc. Cf. § 79 *b.* Accusatives in **-e** or with no ending are *neuter, singular,* and *third* declension.

83. Adjectives have forms for each gender, and *agree* with the nouns they modify, in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

a. **First and Second Declension** — **meus, mea, meum** *my, mine*

b. **Third Declension** — **pār, pār, pār**; Gen. **paris** *equal*

SINGULAR

	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	meus [1]	mea	meum	pār	pār	pār
G.	meī	meae	meī	paris	paris	paris
D.	meō	meae	meō	parī	parī	parī
Ac.	meum	meam	meum	parem	parem	pār [2]
V.	mī [3]	mea	meum	pār	pār	pār
Ab.	meō	meā	meō	parī	parī	parī
L.	(meī)	meae [4]	(meī)			

PLURAL

N.	meī	meae	mea	parēs	parēs	paria
G.	meōrum	meārum	meōrum	parium	parium	parium
D.	meīs	meīs	meīs	paribus	paribus	paribus
Ac.	meōs	meās	mea	parīs [5]	parīs [5]	paria
V.	meī	meae	mea	parēs	parēs	paria
Ab.	meīs	meīs	meīs	paribus	paribus	paribus

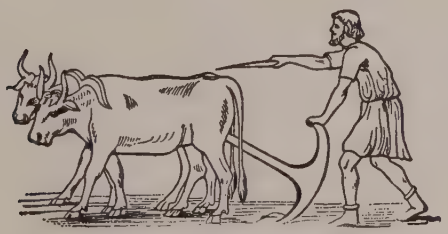
[1] Cf. § 76. [2] Note that three forms in the neuter have no case ending. Cf. § 78 *b*. [3] A contract form (for **mee**). Cf. §§ 76, 90. [4] Loc. **domī meae** *at my home*. [5] Printed **-ēs** in many editions.

Iūmenta carrōs dūcunt.

84. Present Participles and a few other Third Declension adjectives are declined like **potēns** *able, powerful.* §§ 97, 183 *c.*

	Singular		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	potēns [1]	potēns	potēns
G.	potentis	potentis	potentis
D.	potentī	potentī	potentī
Ac.	potentem	potentem	potēns
V.	potēns	potēns	potēns
Ab.	potentī (-e) [2]	potentī (-e)	potentī (-e)
	Plural		
N.	potentēs	potentēs	potentia
G.	potentium	potentium	potentium
D.	potentibus	potentibus	potentibus
Ac.	potentīs [3]	potentīs [3]	potentia
V.	potentēs	potentēs	potentia
Ab.	potentibus	potentibus	potentibus

[1] See § 55 *b*, note 1. [2] **-e** in all participial uses; **-ī** in adjective uses.
[3] Written **-ēs** in many editions of the classics.



Agricola bōbus arat.

85. **audāx, audāx, audāx**; Gen. **audācis**, *bold, venturesome*

		Singular	
	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	audāx[1] § 46	audāx	audāx
G.	audācis	audācis	audācis
D.	audācī	audācī	audācī
Ac.	audācem	audācem	audāx
V.	audāx	audāx	audāx
Ab.	audācī (-e)	audācī (-e)	audācī (-e)
		Plural	
N.	audācēs	audācēs	audācia
G.	audācium	audācium	audācium
D.	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus
Ac.	audācīs	audācīs	audācia
V.	audācēs	audācēs	audācia
Ab.	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus

86. The majority of adjectives of the Third Declension are **i**-stems; **vetus, vetus, vetus**, Gen. **veteris** *old*, and a few others are not **i**-stems.

		Singular	
N.	vetus[2] § 42, 1	vetus	vetus
G.	veteris	veteris	veteris
D.	veterī	veterī	veterī
Ac.	veterem	veterem	vetus
V.	vetus	vetus	vetus
Ab.	vetere	vetere	vetere

[1] Note that **cs** is always written **x**. [2] **-s** becomes **-r-** between vowels.

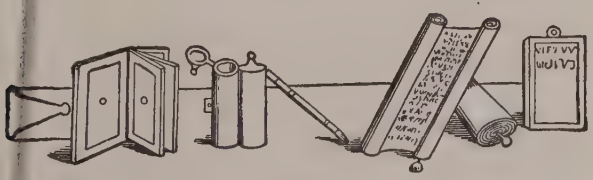
Pīlum Rōmānum.

	Plural		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	veterēs	veterēs	vetera
G.	veterum	veterum	veterum
D.	veteribus	veteribus	veteribus
Ac.	veterēs	veterēs	vetera
V.	veterēs	veterēs	vetera
Ab.	veteribus	veteribus	veteribus

87. Octōber, Octōbris, Octōbre *of October.*

	Singular		
N.	Octōber	Octōbris	Octōbre
G.	Octōbris	Octōbris	Octōbris
D.	Octōbrī	Octōbrī	Octōbrī
Ac.	Octōbrem	Octōbrem	Octōbre
V.	Octōber	Octōbris	Octōbre
Ab.	Octōbrī	Octōbrī	Octōbrī

	Plural		
N.	Octōbrēs	Octōbrēs	Octōbria
G.	Octōbrium	Octōbrium	Octōbrium
D.	Octōbribus	Octōbribus	Octōbribus
Ac.	Octōbrīs	Octōbrīs	Octōbria
V.	Octōbrēs	Octōbrēs	Octōbria
Ab.	Octōbribus	Octōbribus	Octōbribus



Tabulae, Calamus, Liber.

88. Positive Degree [1]

brevis, brevis, breve, *short, brief*

		Singular	
	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	brevis	brevis	breve
G.	brevis	brevis	brevis
D.	brevī	brevī	brevī
Ac.	brevem	brevem	breve
V.	brevis	brevis	breve
Ab.	brevī	brevī	brevī
		Plural	
N.	brevēs	brevēs	brevia
G.	brevium	brevium	brevium
D.	brevibus	brevibus	brevibus
Ac.	brevīs	brevīs	brevia
V.	brevēs	brevēs	brevia
Ab.	brevibus	brevibus	brevibus

Observe that the comparatives are not i-stems.

89. Comparative Degree [2]

brevior, brevior, brevius *shorter, rather short, too short*

		Singular	
N.	brevior	brevior	brevius
G.	breviōris	breviōris	breviōris
D.	breviōrī	breviōrī	breviōrī
Ac.	breviōrem	breviōrem	brevius
V.	brevior	brevior	brevius
Ab.	breviōre	breviōre	breviōre

[1] All adjectives thus far have been of the positive degree.

[2] The comparative of **brevis, brevis, breve,** is a model for all comparatives except **plūs.**

PLURAL

	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	breviōrēs	breviōrēs	breviōra
G.	breviōrum	breviōrum	breviōrum
D.	breviōribus	breviōribus	breviōribus
Ac.	breviōrēs	breviōrēs	breviōra
V.	breviōrēs	breviōrēs	breviōra
Ab.	breviōribus	breviōribus	breviōribus

90. **Superlative Degree**

brevissimus, brevissima, brevissimum *shortest, very short*
quam brevissimus *as short as possible*

SINGULAR

N.	brevissimus	brevissima	brevissimum
G.	brevissimī	brevissimae	brevissimī
D.	brevissimō	brevissimae	brevissimō
Ac.	brevissimum	brevissimam	brevissimum
V.	brevissime	brevissima	brevissimum
Ab.	brevissimō	brevissimā	brevissimō

PLURAL

N.	brevissimī	brevissimae	brevissima
G.	brevissimōrum	brevissimārum	brevissimōrum
D.	brevissimīs	brevissimīs	brevissimīs
Ac.	brevissimōs	brevissimās	brevissima
V.	brevissimī	brevissimae	brevissima
Ab.	brevissimīs	brevissimīs	brevissimīs

All superlatives, perfect and future participles, and gerundives as well as many adjectives of the positive degree are declined thus. Compare §§ 75–7, 83 *a*.

91. tālis, tālis, tāle *such, of such a sort;* tālis *such* — quālis *as* quālis, quālis, quāle *as, such as, and of this sort, of what sort?* quālis ascēnsus est? *what kind of climb is it?* facilis *easy* quālis equus! *what a horse!* tālis, quālis Titī *such as Titus'* amīcus, amīca, amīcum *friendly* 3 amīcitia -ae f. *friendship* amīcior, amīcior, amīcius *more friendly, rather kind, too kind* praesidium quam amīcissimum *as friendly a guard as possible* fortis, fortis, forte *brave, strong* fortiter *bravely* Cf. § 69 fortissimus, fortissima, fortissimum *very brave, bravest* audāx, audāx, audāx ; Gen. audācis *bold, daring* audācter *boldly* audācior, audācior, audācius *bolder, rather bold, too bold* idōneus, idōneus, idōneum *fit, suitable, adapted* 3 or ad 4 magis idōneus, magis idōnea, magis idōneum *more suitable* potēns, potēns, potēns ; Gen. potentis (cf. § 84) *able, powerful* potentior -ior -ius *more powerful* potentissimus -a -um *ablest* prūdēns, prūdēns, prūdēns *wise, far-sighted* prūdenter *wisely* nōbilis, nōbilis, nōbile *famous, prominent, noble* nōtus -a -um *known, well-known* nōtior -ior -ius *better known* nōtissimus -a -um *very well known* nōtitia -ae f. *knowledge* pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum *beautiful* pulchrē *beautifully* pulchrior -ior -ius *handsomer* pulcherrimus -a -um *very beautiful* līber, lībera, līberum *free* līberior -ior -ius *freer* Cf. § 69 līberrimus -a -um *freest* līberē *freely* līberrimē *very freely* bonus -a -um *good, excellent* melior -ior -ius *better* Cf. § 69 bonitās -tātis f. *goodness* optimus -a -um *best, most excellent* malus -a -um *bad, evil, ill* peior -ior -ius *worse, poorer* pessimus -a -um *worst* maleficium -ī n. *mischief, wrong doing* similis -is -e *like* 2 or 3 similiter *in a similar way* similior -ior -ius *more like* simillimus -a -um *very like* mātūrus -a -um *early* mātūrē *early* mātūrius *earlier* Cf. § 69 mātūrāre *hasten, make haste* Inf. o. mātūritās -tātis *ripeness* mātūrrimus -a -um *earliest, very early* mātūrrimē *very early*

92. **tantus** -a -um *so great;* **tantus** *as large* — **quantus** *as* **quantus, quanta, quantum** *as, as great as, how great? how large?*

tantus fuit *he was as great* — **quantus Cicerō** *as Cicero*

lātus -a -um *wide* lātē *widely* lātitūdō, lātitūdinis f. *width*

lātior -ior -ius *wider, too wide* **lātius** *more widely, too widely*

lātissimus -a -um *very wide, widest* lātissimē *most widely* § 69

angustus -a -um *narrow* **angustiae -ārum** *narrows, defile, straits*

longus -a -um *long* longē *far* longitūdō, longitūdinis f. *length*

longior -ior -ius *longer, more distant* **longissimus** -a -um *longest*

brevis -is -e *short* **breviter** *briefly* **brevitās -tātis** f. *shortness*

altus -a -um *high, deep* altē *highly* **altitūdō -tūdinis** f. *height*

altior -ior -ius *higher, deeper* **altius** *more highly, more deeply*

humilis -is -e *low, humble* humilitās, humilitātis f. *lowness*

humilior -ior -ius *lower* **humillimus** -a -um *lowest*

facilis -is -e *easy* **facultās -tātis** f. *opportunity, privilege* (*ease*)

facilior -ior -ius *easier* **facile** *easily* **facilius** *more easily*

facillimus -a -um *easiest* **facillimē** *most easily, very easily*

difficilis -is -e *hard, difficult* **difficulter** *with difficulty*

ingēns, ingēns, ingēns ; Gen. **ingentis** *huge, enormous, great*

magnus -a -um *large, great* **maior, maior, maius** *larger*

maximus -a -um *largest* **magis** *more* **maximē** *especially, most*

parvus -a -um *small, little* **minor, minor, minus** *smaller*

minimus -a -um *smallest* **minus** *less, not* **minimē** *not at all*

īnferī (those) *below* **īnferior -ior -ius** *lower* Cf. § 64

īnfimus -a -um or **īmus** -a -um *lowest, bottom-of*

superī (those) *above* **superior -ior -ius** *upper, higher, former;* **superiōra loca** *the higher places* or *heights* § 68 *c*

suprēmus -a -um *highest, last;* **summus** -a -um *highest, greatest, very prominent, top-of* **summa -ae** f. *total, management*

prae w. abl. *before* **prior, prior, prius** *former, previous* Cf. § 69

priōre nocte *night before last;* **prius** — (**quam**) *sooner, before*

prīmus -a -um *foremost;* **prīma vēnit** *she was the first to come*

93. Nouns are put in Apposition with — that is, *by the side of* — other nouns to emphasize or explain them more fully. Appositives are *aside from the* direct *assertion*. They stand *in the same case* as the words explained.

Amīcō Mārcō (dīc) (*tell*) *our friend Mark* Cf. § 5 *a, b, c.*

The Latin words for *my, our, his, their*, etc., are often omitted.

94. The ever-present case forms allow Latin to express much in few words. In order to render Latin appositives accurately in English, it is often necessary to supply *who, which, that, as he, since it, because she, while we, when he, if they, even if I, though it*, etc., together with some form of the verb *be*. The words supplied vary with the idea conveyed.

a. **Mārcō amīcō (dīc)** (*tell*) *Mark — a friend;*
(*tell*) *Mark who-is-a friend;*
(*tell*) *Mark as-he-is-a friend;*
(*tell*) *Mark since-he-is-a friend;*
(*tell*) *Mark because-he-is-a friend;*
(*tell*) *Mark while-he-is-friendly;*
(*tell*) *Mark if-he-is friendly;*

b. **Titō inimīcō (dīc)** (*tell*) *Titus even-if-he-is unfriendly*

(is) **Absēns** mē hostem reddidit (*he*) *made me an enemy* (*to them*) ***though-he-never-saw-me***

(eius) **Absentis** crūdēlitātem horrent *they shudder-at* ***his cruelty, although-he-is-absent;*** *dread* ***his cruelty when-he-is-absent***

(eī) **Absentī** auxilium mittit *sends* ***him aid while-he-is-away***

(eum) **Absentem** accūsārunt *they accused* ***him while-he-was-absent;*** *accused* ***him when-he-was-absent***

Eō invītō, īre nōn audent *they do not dare go* ***because-he-is-unwilling;*** *they do not dare go* ***while he-is-unwilling***

95. Words denoting time or circumstances may be

a. A part of the principal assertion (any case)

1. (Attached to the subject)

Mē rogat **cōnsul**
(*he*) *invites me* (***while*** or ***because he is***) ***consul***

2. (Attached to a modifier)

Mihi cōnsulī dēsignātō accidit
it befell ***me*** (*when* ***I was***) ***consul elect***

3. (Attached to the object)

Titum inimīcum rogō
I invite ***Titus*** (***even if he is***) ***unfriendly***

b. Entirely aside from the principal assertion (Abl.)

1. Favoring circumstance

Eō cōnsule, rogor
I am invited (***while*** or ***because***) ***he*** (*is*) ***consul***

2. Time at which (Abl.)

Mē cōnsule dēsignātō, accidit
it happened (***when*** or *while*) ***I*** (***was***) ***consul elect***

3. Adverse circumstance (Abl.)

Titō inimīcō, rogor
I am invited (***although*** or ***even if***) ***Titus*** (***is my***) ***enemy***

96. *a.* The Ablative of time or circumstances may be

A single word denoting a simple fact

nocte *during the night;* **vesperī** (Loc.) *at evening* or

A whole phrase defining a time or complex circumstance

Quod facere **imperiō nostrō** nōn possunt
and they cannot do this (***when***) ***the control*** (*is*) ***ours***
Mārcō Messālā et Mārcō Pisōne cōnsulibus accidit
it happened (***when***) ***Messala and Piso*** (***were***) ***consuls***

b. The Ablative of Manner (often with **cum** or **sine**)

Iūre *rightly* **iniūriā** *wrongly* **cum cūrā** *carefully*

c. The Ablative of Accordance (sometimes with **ex**)

Suō mōre or (**ex**) **cōnsuētūdine suā** *according to his custom*

97. **Present Participle** (Active and Deponent)

Formation: *Present Stem* + **ns** + **-ns** + **-ns** Sign **-n-**
ntis **-ntis** **-ntis** **-nt-**

Adjectives and Verbs at once — often used as Nouns.
Not used as predicate adjectives with verb force. § 84

M. *F.* *N.* § 28 *a, b* § 94

Irr. dāns, dāns, dāns; Gen. dantis *giving*, (who is) *giving*, (as he was) *giving*, (while) *giving*, (when) *giving*, (upon) *giving;* dantēs (*those* who are) *giving*, (*they* when they are) *giving*

-ā- cōnāns, cōnāns, cōnāns; Gen. cōnantis (who is) *trying*
amāns, amāns, amāns; Gen. amantis *loving*, (who is) *fond*
amantior, amantior, amantius *fonder, more devoted* § 89
amantissimus, amantissima, amantissimum *fondest*
praestāns -āns -āns; -antis *standing ahead, excelling* § 84
portāns, *carrying, bringing* exspectāns *awaiting, looking-for*

-ē- tenēns, tenēns, tenēns; Gen. tenentis (while) *holding*
continēns *holding together* timēns *fearing* (timidly)
vidēns *seeing* verēns *fearing* (for good reasons)

-e- agēns, agēns, agēns; Gen. agentis *doing*, (while) *driving*
cēdēns *giving away* legēns *reading* petēns *asking*
discēdēns *departing* loquēns *speaking* sequēns *following*

-i- capiēns, capiēns, capiēns *taking*, (while) *taking* § 170 **-i-**
fugiēns *fleeing* ēgrediēns *going out* rapiēns *snatching*
patiēns -ēns -ēns *suffering* impatiēns *not patient* § 220, 7
patientior -ior -ius *more patient* patienter *patiently* § 69
patientissimus *most patient* patientia -ae f. *endurance*

-i- veniēns, veniēns, veniēns; Gen. venientis (while) *coming*
mūniēns *fortifying* oriēns *raising-self, rising*

-se absēns *absent* praesēns *present* potēns *able, powerful* § 84
iēns, iēns, iēns; Gen. euntis *going*, (as he was) *going* § 213, 2

98. **Perfect Participles** (Passive Voice)

Formation: *Participial Stem* + **us -a -um.** Sign **-t-** or **-s-.** Adjectives and Verbs at once — often used as Nouns. § 90
Much used as predicate adjectives with verb force.

	M.	*F.*	*N.*	SUBJECT ACTED UPON
Irr.	datus,	data,	datum	(*having been*) *given*, (*being*) *given* § 94
-ā-	imperātus	-a	-um	(*having been*) *commanded* or *demanded* 3 p
	parātus,	parāta,	parātum	(*having been*) *prepared, made ready*
	parātior,	parātior,	parātius	***better*** *prepared, readier* § 89
	parātissimus,	parātissima,	parātissimum	***best*** *prepared* § 90
-ē-	contentus	-a	-um	***contented*** retentus -a -um *kept* ***back***
	territus *terrified*	perterritus		***thoroughly*** *frightened*
	mōtus *moved*	vīsus *seen*		commōtus, permōtus *roused*
-ē-	āctus	-a	-um	*driven, done, set in motion, discussed, spent*
	coāctus	-a	-um	*driven* ***together,*** *gathered,* ***compelled,*** *forced*
-i-	captus *taken*	acceptus ***received***		receptus ***recovered***
	factus *done*	cōnfectus *finished* ***up***		perfectus ***completed***
-ī-	audītus	-a	-um *heard*	exaudītus -a -um ***overheard***
	mūnītus	-a	-um *fortified*	mūnītiō **-tiōnis** f. ***fortification***
	impedītus (*when*) *hindered*			impedīmentum **-ī** n. ***hindrance***
	expedītus *unimpeded;*			legiō expedīta *legion without baggage*
	expedītior **-ior -ius** *more unimpeded, less impeded, easier*			
	itum est,	ventum est *going was done, they* ***came*** or ***went.***		
	initus (*being*) ***entered*** ***upon***			praeteritus *gone* ***by,*** *past,* ***bygone***

99.

Active	*Perf. Inf.*	*Passive*
(iuss + esse)	(See § 163 *b*) iussus	esse (§ 168, n. 3)
iussisse		
(*to* ***be*** ***having*** *ordered*)		(*to* ***be*** ***having been*** *ordered*)
(*to*) ***have*** *ordered*		(*to*) ***have*** ***been*** *ordered*

100. **Perfect Participles** (Deponent)

Adjectives and Verbs at once — often used as Nouns. § 90
Much used as predicate adjectives with verb force. §§ 180–2.

SUBJECT ACTING

-ā- **cōnātus** -a -um *having exerted self* or *tried* or *attempted*, (after) *having tried* **cōnāta** (n. pl.) *things attempted* p. 16, obs. *c.*
mīrātus -a -um *having wondered, because he wondered* § 94
morātus -a -um *having detained self*, (after) *having delayed*

-ē- **ausus** -a -um *having ventured* or *having dared*
veritus -a -um *having feared, because he feared* (with reason)

-e- **locūtus** -a -um *having spoken*, (after or when *he had*) *spoken*
secūtus *having kept self near*, (after) *having followed*
cōnsecūtus (who *had*) *followed* ***up*** **īnsecūtus** *having chased*
ūsus -a -um *having used* **6** **ūsus -ūs** m. *practice, experience*

-i- **gressus** -a -um *having walked* **ēgressus** *having gone* ***out***
ingressus *having gone* ***in*** **prōgressus** *having gone* ***forth***
mortuus *having died, being dead* **mors, mortis** f. *death*
passus *having suffered*, (after) *having endured, allowed, let*

-ī- **ortus** -a -um *having raised self, risen, arisen, started*
expertus -a -um *having experienced* or *tried*

101. *a. Active*

(ea)

(Deponent verbs have no perfect stem, no perfect active.)

Perf. Ind. *Passive*

locūta **est**

(*she*) ***is*** ***having*** *spoken*
(*she*) ***has*** *spoken*
(*she*) ***spoke***

b. Audīmus eam **locūtam** (esse) Cf. § 99.
We hear-about her ***having been speaking***
We hear that-she *has been speaking*
or *that-she* *has spoken* or *spoke*

102. **Future Participles** (Active and Deponent)

Participial Stem + **ūrus -ūra -ūrum.** Sign **-ūr-.**

Adjectives and Verbs at once — also used as Nouns. § 90

Much used as predicate adjectives with verb force.

Irr. datūrus, datūra, datūrum ***about to** give, **going to** give,* (as he was) ***going to** give,* (when he was) ***going to** give* § 94

-ā- cōnātūrus, cōnātūra, cōnātūrum ***intending to** try* or *attempt*
portātūrus -a -um ***going to** carry, **intending to** take* or *bring*
parātūrus ***going to** get ready* temperātūrus ***going to** refrain*

-ē- habitūrus ***going to** regard* prohibitūrus ***going to** stop*
persuāsūrus ***going to** persuade* 3 obtentūrus ***going to** hold*

-e- āctūrus ***going to** drive, do, set in motion, discuss, spend*
redditūrus ***going to** give back* concessūrus ***going to** grant*
neglēctūrus ***going to** overlook* secūtūrus ***going to** follow*

-i- captūrus ***going to** take* factūrus ***going to** do, make*
ēgressūrus ***going to** go out* cōnfectūrus ***going to** finish*

-ī- audītūrus ***going to** hear* ventūrus ***going to** come*
itūrus ***going to** go* oritūrus ***going to** rise*

-se futūrus ***going to** be* or *stay* āfutūrus ***going to** be away*

103. Future Participles represent an action as going to occur after the time of the main verb.

a. **Hoc ūnum petō** Vēnī nihil aliud petītūrus
I ask this one (thing) *I came **intending to** ask nothing else*

b. Ventūrus est (§§ 74, 3) Itūra esse dīcitur (§§ 74–3)
*he is **going to** come* ***she** is said to be **going to** go*

c. Coāctūrī erant Itūram esse dīcitur (§§ 74–3)
*they were **going to** compel* *it is said **that she will** go*

d. **Sēsē** coāctūrōs (esse) putāvēre Sē datūrum esse dīcit
*thought that **they would** compel* *says **that he will** give*

104. **Future Participles** (Passive and Deponent) — **Gerundive**

Formation: *Present Stem* + **ndus -nda -ndum.** Sign **-nd-.**
Adjectives and Verbs at once — also used as Nouns. § 90
Much used as predicate adjectives with verb force. § 28 *b.*

SUBJECT ACTED UPON

Compare the English words:

errands (*things*) ***to be*** *wandered* or *gone after*
dividend ***to be*** *divided* minuend ***to be*** *lessened*
memorandum (*matter* ***that***) ***has to be*** *called to mind*
memoranda (*matters* ***that***) ***ought to be*** *called to mind*
reverend ***to be*** *regarded with awe* or *revered* or *feared*

Irr. dandus, danda, dandum ***to be*** *given*, (***deserving***) ***to be*** *given* (that ***ought***) ***to be*** *given*, (that ***have***) ***to be*** *given*, (that ***must***) ***be*** *given*, (that ***are***) ***to be*** (or ***should be***) *given*

-ā- exspectandus -a -um ***to be*** *awaited, to be waited for;* exspectandum **est** *waiting* ***ought to be*** *done; one* ***must*** *wait*
trānsportandus -a -um ***to be*** *carried, brought,* or *taken over*

-ē- habendus ***to be*** *had* or *held* retinendus ***to be*** *kept back*
verendus ***to be*** *feared* prōvidendus ***to be*** *looked out for*

-e- concēdendus ***to be*** *granted* ferendus ***to be*** *endured*
dīvidendus ***to be*** *divided* cōnferendus ***to be*** *compared*
agendus ***to be*** *done, driven* tremendus ***to be*** *trembled at*

-i- capiendus ***to be*** *taken* recipiendus ***to be*** *taken back*
faciendus ***to be*** *done* progrediendum ***to be*** *gone forth*

-ī- audiendus ***to be*** *heard* mūniendus ***to be*** *fortified*
veniendum ***to be*** *come* partiendus ***to be*** *separated*
eundum **est** *travelling* ***is to be*** *done, one* ***must*** *go*

105. The Dative is used to assert ownership. § 5 *e.*

Mihi studium **est** *there* ***is*** *a pursuit* ***for me;*** *I* ***have*** *an occupation;*
Cf. colloquial English "Where is the cover **to** the box?"

106. Gerundives are used to express duty or necessity.

a. Liber legendus **est** — *the book* ***is to be*** *read*
the book ***must be*** *read*

b. Liber **mihi est** — Liber **mihi** legendus **est**
(there is a book for me) — ***I have*** *a book* (*that* ***is***) ***to be*** *read*
(a book belongs to me) — ***I have*** *a book* ***to*** *read*
I have *a book* — ***I have to*** *read a book*
a book ***ought to be*** *read by* ***me***

c. Legitur — Lēctum est — Legendum est
it is read, — *it* ***was*** *read,* — *it* ***must be*** *read,*
reading is done — *reading* ***was*** *done* — *reading* ***is to be*** *done*

d. **Mihi** legendum **est** — ***I have*** *reading that* ***is to be*** *done*
I have *reading* ***to*** *do*
I have to *read* ***I ought to*** *read*

Mihi legendum (**esse**) **putō** *I think* ***I have to*** *read*
Nōn exspectandum **sibi** statuit *decided* ***he ought*** *not* ***to*** *wait*

e. **Obsidēs dandī** sunt *there are* ***hostages to be given***
Obsidēs dandōs cūrō *I see to* ***giving*** *the* ***hostages***

107. *a. Subjective Genitive* — *b. Objective Genitive*

(*a*) **Helvētiōrum** iniūriās (*b*) **populī Rōmānī** nōvī
(*I know* ***the Helvetians*** *injuries* ***of the Roman people***)

Helvētiī iniūriās **populō Rōmānō** īnferunt
The Helvetians *inflict injuries* ***on the Roman people***

c. Also with verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* and nouns and adjectives denoting *desire, endurance,* etc.

contumēliae oblīvīscitur *becomes forgetful* ***of*** *the outrage* § 223 *b*
amāns patriae *fond* ***of*** *country* impatiēns **morae** *tired* ***of*** *delay*
patientia sitis *endurance* ***of*** *thirst* studium **bellandī** *desire* ***to*** *war*

108. *a.* **uter utra utrum**; G. **utrīus**, D. **utrī** *which* (of two)

		Singular		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	
N.	uter	utra	utrum	
G.	utrīus	utrīus	utrīus	
D.	utrī	utrī	utrī	
Ac.	utrum	utram	utrum	
V.	——	——	——	
Ab.	utrō	utrā	utrō	
L.	——	——	utrobi	§ 119 *e*
		Plural		
N.	utrī	utrae	utra	
G.	utrōrum	utrārum	utrōrum	
D.	utrīs	utrīs	utrīs	
Ac.	utrōs	utrās	utra	
V.	——	——	——	
Ab.	utrīs	utrīs	utrīs	

b. **uter-** *-one* (of two) **-que** *each, every-*; **uterque** *either, both*

		Singular	
N.	uterque	utraque	utrumque
G.	utrīusque	utrīusque	utrīusque
D.	utrīque	utrīque	utrīque
Ac.	utrumque	utramque	utrumque
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	utrōque	utrāque	utrōque
L.	——	——	utrobīque
		Plural	
N.	utrīque	utraeque	utraque
G.	utrōrumque	utrārumque	utrōrumque
D.	utrīsque	utrīsque	utrīsque
Ac.	utrōsque, etc.	utrāsque, etc.	utraque, etc.

109. *a.*

		SINGULAR	
N.	alter	altera	alterum
G.	alterius	alterius	alterius
D.	alterī	alterī	alterī
Ac.	alterum	alteram	alterum
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	alterō	alterā	alterō

		PLURAL	
N.	alterī	alterae	altera
G.	alterōrum, etc.	alterārum, etc.	alterōrum, etc.

alter, altera, alterum *the other* (of the two) *the one . . . the other*
uter, utra, utrum *which* (*one* of the two) **utrum** *whether . . .* **an** *or*
uterque, utraque, utrumque *either* (of the two), *each* (of two) *both*
neuter, neutra, neutrum *neither* (of two) Cf. §§ 65, 71

b. Genitives used to denote possession, etc.

Caesaris *Caesar's, of Caesar*	**patris** *father's* **patrum** *fathers'*
huius (*this person's* etc.) *his, her, its*	**hōrum** *their*
istīus (*of that man by you*) *his, her, its*	**istōrum** *their*
illīus (*yonder man's*) *his, her, its*	**illōrum** *their*
cuius *and-his, and-her, and-its, whose*	**quōrum** *and-their, whose*
eius (*this* or *that man's*) *his, her, its*	**eōrum** *their*
eiusdem *his also, her also, its also*	**eōrundem** *their also*

c. Adjectives *possessive in meaning* (agreeing with nouns).

Caesariānus, Caesariāna, Caesariānum *Caesar's, of Caesar*
paternus -a -um *father's* **maternus -a -um** *mother's*
Rōmānus, Rōmāna, Rōmānum *Rome's, of Rome, Roman*
suus, sua, suum *his* (own), *her* (own), *its* (own), *their* (own)
aliēnus, aliēna, aliēnum *another's, of another, of others*
meus -a -um *my* (*of me*) **noster, nostra, nostrum** *our* (*of us*)
tuus -a -um *thy* (*of thee*) **vester, vestra, vestrum** *your* (*of you*)

110.

	Singular		
N.	quī, quis (§§ 113–114)	quae (qua § 113)	quod, quid (§ 113)
G.	cuius	cuius	cuius
D.	cui	cui	cui
Ac.	quem	quam	quod, quid (§ 113)
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	quō (quī §§ 113–115)	quā (quī)	quō (quī § 114)
L.	——	——	ubi (cubi § 113)
		Plural	
N.	quī	quae	quae (qua § 113)
G.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quōs	quās	quae (qua § 113)
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	quibus	quibus	quibus

111.

	Singular		
N.	quisque	quaeque	quodque, quidque[1]
G.	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque
D.	cuique	cuique	cuique
Ac.	quemque	quamque	quodque, quidque
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	quōque	quāque	quōque
L.	——	——	ubīque
		Plural	
N.	quīque	quaeque	quaeque
G.	quōrumque	quārumque	quōrumque
D.	quibusque	quibusque	quibusque
Ac.	quōsque	quāsque	quaeque
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	quibusque	quibusque	quibusque

[1] The form **quidque** is used as a pronoun; **quodque**, as an adjective.

112. *a.* **is** *this* or *that* (anywhere), *such, he,* etc. § 115

	Singular		
N.	**is** *he, it, this, that*	**ea** *this, she, it*	**id** *this, that, it*
G.	**eius** *his, its, of it*	**eius** *her, of her, its*	**eius** *its, of that*
D.	**eī** (*to*) *him, it, that*	**eī** (*to*) *her, it, that*	**eī** *it,* (*to*) *that*
Ac.	**eum** *him, it, this*	**eam** *her, it, this*	**id** *it, this, that*
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	**eō** *him, by it, this*	**eā** *her, by it, that*	**eō** *by it, that*
L.	——	——	**ibi** *in it, there* § 28

	Plural		
N.	**eī, iī** [1] *they, those*	**eae** *they, these*	**ea** *they, these* (§ 115)
G.	**eōrum** *their, of these*	**eārum** *their,* etc.	**eōrum** *their, of those*
D.	**eīs** (*to*) *them, those*	**eīs** (*to*) *them,* etc.	**eīs** (*to*) *them, those*
Ac.	**eōs** *them, these*	**eās** *them, those*	**ea** *them, those things*
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	**eīs** (*by*) *them,* etc.	**eīs** (*by*) *them,* etc.	**eīs** *with them,* etc.

b. **īdem** (**is** + **dem**) *this too, that also, he also, same*

	Singular		
N.	**ī**dem *he also, same*	**ea**dem *she too, same*	**i**dem *it also*
G.	**eius**dem *his also*	**eius**dem *her also, its*	**eius**dem *its also*
D.	**eī**dem *him also, it*	**eī**dem *her also, it*	**eī**dem *it also*
Ac.	**eun**dem *him also, it*	**ean**dem *her also, it*	**i**dem *it also*
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	**eō**dem *him also, it*	**eā**dem *her also, it*	**eō**dem *by it also*
L.	——	——	**ibī**dem *in it also*

	Plural		
N.	**eī**dem [2] *they also*	**eae**dem *they also*	**ea**dem *they also*
G.	**eōrun**dem *their*	**eārun**dem *their*	**eōrun**dem *their*
D.	**eīs**dem [3] *them also*	**eīs**dem *them also*	**eīs**dem *them also*

[1] Also **ī** and D. and Ab. Pl. **iīs**. [2] Also **iīdem, īdem**. [3] Also **iīsdem**.

113. **Indefinite**

Quī is indefinite after **quī** *who,* **quod** *what,* **ubi** *when,* **ut** *when, as, that;* **nē** *that . . . not,* **sī** *if,* **nisi** *unless,* etc.

quī, qua, quod (adj.) *any (some);* **sī qua rēs** (Nom.) *if any thing*

quis (indef. pron.) *one, anyone;* **quid** *anything,* (Acc.) *any, at all*

quod auxilium *some sort of help;* **quid auxilī** *some (of) help*

quō *to any place* **cubi** *in any place* **cunde** *from any side*

114. **Interrogatives**

quī? quae? quod? (adj.) *what? what-sort-of? what kind of?*

quis? (pron.) *what one? who?* **quid?** *what?* (Acc.) *to what extent?*

quid audet? ***to what extent*** *does he dare?* ***how*** *bold is he?*

quī puer? *what sort of boy?* **quis puer?** (§ 94) *who when-a-boy?*

quae puella? *what sort of girl?* **quid cōnsilī?** *what (of) plan?*

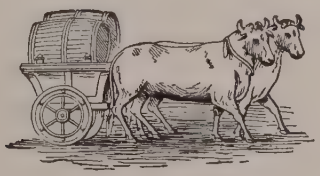
quō? *to what place?* **ubi?** *in what place?* **unde?** *from whence?*

quā rē? (or **quī?** Ab.) *on account of what? why?* **quīn** *why not?*

Mīlitēs Gallicī armātī.

115. *a.* **Relatives**

quī, quae, quod (adj.) *which, and-this, that-this, since-this;* pl. *and-these;* **quae rēs** ***and-this*** *thing, and-this fact*
quae castra ***and-this*** *camp;* **quī** locus ***and-this*** *place*
quī pron. (one) *who, and-he, that, that-he, as, since-he, though-he*
is quī *he who, such that-he;* **eī quī** *they who, those who*
quae pron. *who, and-she, that, that-she, as, since-she, though-she*
ea quae *she who, such that-she;* **eae quae** *they who, those who*
quod pron. *which, and-it, what, that, that-it, as, since-it, though-it*
id quod *that which;* **ea quae** *those (things) which*
quod (Ac.) *to what extent;* **quod** potest ***as-far-as*** *he can*
quīn pron. *who . . . **not;** that . . . **not; but,** which . . . **not***
b. **quod** *that, because* **quod sī** *but if* **quod nisi** *but unless*
quō (adv.) *whither, to which* (place), *and-to it, and-to them* § 119 *c, d*
ubi *in which, at which, where, and-in it;* w. Ind. *when* § 119 *e, f*
unde (adv.) *whence, from which, and-from it, and-from them*
cum (**quom** or **um-**) w. Ind. *when, as* **tum cum** *at the time when*
w. Sub. *when, as, just-as* (of time), *while, since, although*
ut, utī w. Ind. *as, when;* w. Sub. (*in order*) *that,* (*so*) *that; how?*
ita utī ***just*** *as* (of manner) **quī** (Ab.) *how, why* quīn *why **not***
c. cum **prīmum,** ubi **prīmum,** ut **prīmum** *when **first,** as **soon as***
quī cum ***and when he*** **quod** ubi audit ***and when he hears it***
quī sī ***and if he;*** **quō** plūs, **eō** melius ***the** more **the** better* (§ 74, 19)
quā rē or **quam ob rem** *why, and on account of this, and-therefore*



Carrus bōbus ductus.

116. *a.* **Personal Pronouns**

	First Person	Second Person	Third Person
		Singular	
N.	**ego** *I* § 28	**tū** *thou*	§§ 112, 115, 118 *b*
G.	**meī** *of me* [1]	**tuī** *of thee (of you)* [1]	
D.	**mihi** *me, to me*	**tibi** *thee, to thee*	
Ac.	**mē** *me*	**tē** *thee (you)*	wanting
V.	——	**tū** *thou (you)*	
Ab.	**mē** *me*	**tē** *thee*	
	mēcum *with me*	**tēcum** *with thee*	
	dē mē *about me*	**abs tē** *by thee, from thee*	

b. Plural

N.	**nōs** *we*	**vōs** *you, ye*	§§ 112, 115, 118 *b*
G.	**nostrum, nostrī** *of us*	**vestrum,** [2] **vestrī** [1] *of you*	
D.	**nōbīs** *us, to us*	**vobīs** *you, to you*	
Ac.	**nōs** *us*	**vōs** *you*	
V.	——	**vōs** *you, ye*	wanting
Ab.	**nōbīs** *us*	**vōbīs** *you*	
	nōbīscum *with us*	**vōbīscum** *with you*	
	in nōbīs *among us*	**ā vōbīs** *by you, from you*	

c. **Reflexive Pronouns**

		Singular	
N.	——	——	——
G.	**meī** [1] *of myself*	**tuī** [1] *of thyself*	**suī** *of himself* [3]
D.	**mihi** *myself, me*	**tibi** *thyself, thee*	**sibi** *himself, him*
Ac.	**mē** *myself, me*	**tē** *thyself, thee*	**sē, sēsē** *himself, him*
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	**mē** *myself, me*	**tē** *thyself, thee*	**sē, sēsē** *himself, him*

[1] Never means *my* or *your*; § 107 *b*. [2] §§ 66 *c*, 72. [3] Also *of herself* or *of itself*.

	First Person	Second Person	Third Person
		Plural	
N.	—— § 74, 3	——	——
G.	**nostrī** *of ourselves*	**vestrī** *of yourselves*	**suī** *of themselves*
D.	**nōbīs** *ourselves, us*	**vōbīs** *yourselves*	**sibi** *themselves, them*
Ac.	**nōs** *ourselves, us*	**vōs** *yourselves, you*	**sē, sēsē** *themselves*
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	**nōbīs** *ourselves, us*	**vōbīs** *yourselves, you*	**sē, sēsē** *themselves*

117. *a.*

	Singular		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	**alius** § 65	**alia**	**aliud** § 71
G.	——	——	——[1]
D.	**aliī**	**aliī**	**aliī**
Ac.	**alium**	**aliam**	**aliud**
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	**aliō**	**aliā**	**aliō**
L.	——	——	**alibi** *elsewhere*
		Plural	
N.	**aliī**	**aliae**	**alia**
G.	**aliōrum**	**aliārum**	**aliōrum**
D.	**aliīs**	**aliīs**	**aliīs**
Ac.	**aliōs**	**aliās**	**alia**
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	**aliīs**	**aliīs**	**aliīs**

[1] The genitive of **alius** has almost fallen into disuse on account of the prominence of the possessive adjective **aliēnus -a -um** *another's, others'*; **alterius** is sometimes used for the older **alīus** (found in **alīus modī**).

Tuba.

b.

	Singular		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	hic *this, he, it*	haec *this, she, it*	hoc *this, it*
G.	huius *of this, his*	huius *of this, her*	huius *of this, its*
D.	huic (*to*) *him, it*	huic (*to*) *her, it*	huic (*to*) *this, it*
Ac.	hunc *this, him, it*	hanc *this, her, it*	hoc *this, it*
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	hōc *him, by it*	hāc *her, by this*	hōc *by this* or *it*
L.	——	——	hīc *in this, here*

	Plural		
N.	hī *these, they*	hae *these, they*	haec *these, they*
G.	hōrum *their*	hārum *of these, their*	hōrum *their, of them*
D.	hīs *these, them*	hīs *these, them*	hīs *these, them*
Ac.	hōs *these, them*	hās *these, them*	haec *these, them*
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	hīs *them, by these*	hīs *them, by these*	hīs *them, by these*

118. *a.* The Intensive Adjective, **ipse** *self, very*, adds emphasis but does not reflect action upon the subject. Cf. § 116 *c*.

	Singular		
N.	ipse [1]	ipsa	ipsum
G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
V.	——	——	——
Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

The plural is like the plural of **alius**, § 117 *a*.

[1] Note the **-e** (for **-us**).

b. **Irregular Adjectives.** (Model **ūnus**, § 120. Cf. § 108.)

ūnus -a -um *one, only* (*one*)
sōlus -a -um *alone*
tōtus -a -um *whole, total, all* (of single things; cf. **omnis** *all* (of a quantity), *every, all* (many)
alius -a -ud [1] *else, one, another;* **aliī** *some . . .* **aliī** *others* § 65
ūllus -a -um *any, any* (*one*)
nūllus -a -um ***not-any, no, none***
nōnnūllus -a -um *some;* pl. *several,* ***not-a-few*** §§ 64–65
ipse -a -um (§ 116 *c*) *self, very*

1. **hic,**[2] **haec, hoc** *this* (by me or of mine); *he, she, it, latter*
2. **iste,**[1] **ista, istud** [1] *that* (by you, you mentioned); *he, she, it*
3. **ille, illa, illud** *that* (of his or yonder); *he, she, it, former*

c. **Nēmō** (for **nē** + **homō**) and **nihil** (for **nihilum**)

N.	nēmō *no-one*	nihil, nīl	**nihil** reliquī ***no*** *remainder* § 72
G.	(nūllīus)	nihilī	**nihilī** est *is* ***of no value*** § 73
D.	nēminī	——	Ac. **nihil** [3] commōtus ***nothing***
Ac.	nēminem	nihil, nīl	*daunted,* ***not*** *alarmed* ***at all***
V.	——	——	**nōnnihil** [3] commōtus ***somewhat***
Ab.	(nūllō § 65)	nihilō	*alarmed, alarmed to-some-extent*
			nihilō minus *less* ***by-nothing***

[1] Note the **-e** (for **-us**) and **-ud** (for **-um**). [2] For **hi-ce, hae-ce, hod-ce.**
[3] The accusative is used to denote *extent of time, space, action,* etc., § 74, 17.

Aliī castellum cūstōdiunt aliī quiēte ūtuntur.

119. *a.* The best way to master compound pronouns and adverbs is to make a careful study of the elements from which they are built up.

The original meaning of **quis** was evidently *one* (*someone* or *anyone*) but when it was spoken in the manner of a *question* it meant *which-one?* The original meaning of **quī** was probably *one*, but when it was used to introduce a descriptive clause it took on the meaning *who*, just as the English ***once*** (meaning *one time*) often assumes the character of a relative adverb and means *when-once*, as in:

"Trees grow rapidly, *once* they have become rooted."

Closely allied with **quī** *and-he, who*, **quis** *one* and **quis?** *which one? what one? who?* are the adverbs below:

quō *whither, to which place, to whom, and to it*	**ubi** ([1] **quobi**) **cubi,** *in which place, where, among whom*	unde ([1] quonde) cunde, *from which place, whence, from whom*
cum(**quom** or um-) *when, at a time*	**quandō** *when, at a time; when?*	**ūs-** *where, in a place, at a point*
quam *in a degree, as, how? than*	**ut, utī** *in a way, how? as, that*	**quā** (**viā** or **parte**) *by a way, on a side*

c. **Pronouns (Adjectives)** [2]	*d.* *Place to which* or *persons to whom*
hic *he, it* **haec** *she, it* **hoc** *it this* (by me or that I mention)	**hūc** *to this place, to it, to them, hither* § 61 *b*
iste *he, it* **ista** *she, it* **istud** *it that* (by you), *that* (you mention)	**istō, istūc** *to that place* (where you are), *to it*
ille *he, it* **illa** *she, it* **illud** *it that* (of his, of theirs), *that yonder*	**illō, illūc** *to that place* (yonder or by them), *to it*

[1] Not used; **qu-** dropped, cf. **ubi**, **um**quam. [2] Continued on p. 182.

119. *b.* Simple Elements		Compounds
alic-, aliqu- *some, any*	**quam diū** *as long as*	**aliquamdiū** *for some length of time, for a while*
-dam *a certain*	**quī** *one*	**quīdam** *a certain (one)*
	quom [1] *at a time*	**quondam** *at a certain time*
-dem *also, same* (identical)	**is** *he, that*	**īdem** *he also, the same*
	ita *so, thus*	**itidem, item,** *likewise*
-libet [2] *pleases*	**quī** *who*	**quīlibet** *who you please*
-nam? *for? pray?*	**ubi?** *where?*	**ubinam** *where in the world?*
-piam *some*	**quis** *one*	**quispiam** *some one*
-quam (with a negative) *any-*	**quā** *in a way*	**nēquāquam** *by no means*
	um- [1] *at a time*	**umquam** *at any time, ever*
-que *each,* § 65 *every, universally*	**quis** *one* § 113	**quisque** *each, every (one)*
	cum *at a time*	**-cumque** *-ever, -soever*
		plērīque *most of* § 76
	nam *for*	**namque** *for, at any rate*
-vīs [2] *you wish* § 186	**quam paucī** *how few*	**quamvīs paucī** *how few you like, however few*
(doubling) *-ever*	**quis** *who*	**quisquis** *whoever*
-cumque *-soever*	**quī** *who*	**quīcumque** *whosoever*
-versus *-ward*	**ad** *to*	**adversus** *to-ward* Cf. 217 *c*
-rsus (-rsum) *-ward*	**re-** *back*	**rūrsus** *backwards, again*

e. Place in which or *persons among whom* [3]	*f. Place from which* or *persons from whom*	*g. Way by which* or *side on which*
hīc *in this place, in it, among them*	**hinc** *from this place, from it, hence*	**hāc** *by this way, on this side, here*
istīc *in that place there* (by you)	**istinc** *thence, from there* (by you)	**istāc** *by that way, there* (by you)
illīc *in that place, among them*	**illinc** *thence, from there* (by them)	**illā, illāc** *on that side* (yonder)

[1] Another form of **cum** *at a time, when.* [2] Verb. [3] Continued on p. 183.

119. *c.* **Adjective Pronouns**

d. Place to which or *persons to whom*

is *he, it, this, that;* **ea** *she;* **id** *it;* (pl.) *these, those, they*		**eō** *to this place, to it, thither, on them*
īdem *he also, the same*		**eōdem** *to this place also, to it also*
quī *who, that, as, and-he, and-it*		**quō** *to which place, and to this place*
quis? *who? which?*	**quid?** *what?*	**quō?** *to what place? in which direction?*
quis *one, anyone*	**quid** *anything*	**quō** *to any place*
quis**piam** *someone*	quip**piam** *-thing*	**quōpiam** *to some place*
quis**quam** *any-one*	quic**quam** *anything*	**quōquam** *to any place, in any direction*
aliquis *someone*	**aliquid** *something*	**aliquō** *to some place*
quisquis / **quīcumque** *who-ever*	**quicquid** / **quodcumque** *what-ever*	**quōquō** / **quōcumque** *to what-ever place*
alius *other, another, else*		**aliō** *to another place*
uter? *whether? which* (*one* of the two)?		**utrō?** *to which place? in which direction?*
neuter *neither* (*one* of the two)		**neutrō** *to neither place, in neither direction*
uterque *each* (*one* of the two)		**utrōque** *to both places, in both directions*
quisque *every, each* (*one*)	**quidque** *everything*	**quōque-versum** *in every direction* Cf. 61 *b*
quīdam *a, a certain* (*one*), *certain*		
quīnam? (*for*) *who? who-in-the-world? who pray? pray tell who?*		**quōnam?** *to what place in the world?*
quīlibet / **quīvīs** *who-it-pleases, who you please, anyone you please*		**quōlibet** / **quōvīs** *to what place you please*

e. Place in which or *persons among whom*	*f. Place from which* or *persons from whom*	*g. Way by which* or *side on which*
ibi *in this place, in it, here*	inde *from this place, from it, hence*	eā *by this way, on this side, here*
ibīdem *in it also, in the same place*	indidem *from the same place, from it also*	eādem *by the same route, there also*
ubi *in which place, and in it, where*	unde *from which place, and from it, whence*	quā *and on this side, where*
ubi? *in what place? where? in whom?*	unde? *from what place? whence? where from?*	quā? *by which way? on which side?*
cubi *in any place*	**cunde** *from any place*	quā *in any way*
ūspiam *any-where*		nēquīquam } *in no*
ūsquam *any-where*		nēquāquam } *way,*
umquam *ever*		*by no means*
alicubi *any-where*	alicunde *from any side*	aliquā *in any way*
ubiubi } *wher-*	undeunde	quāquā
ubicumque } *ever*	undecumque	quācumque
alibi *elsewhere*	aliunde *from other sides*	aliās *elsewhere*
utrobi? *in which place* (of two)?	utrinde? *from which side* (of two)?	utrā? *on which side* (of two)?
neutrubi *in neither place* (of two)		neutrā *on neither side, neither way*
utrobī-que *in both places, in both*	utrimque *from either side* or *direction*	utrāque *on either side, both ways*
ubīque *everywhere*	undique *from every side, on all sides*	quāque *on every side, every way*
ūsque *all the way*		
quondam *one time*		
ubinam? *where in the world?*		quānam? *by what way in the world?*
ubilibet } *where you*	undelibet } *from where*	quālibet *by what*
ubivīs } *like*	undevīs } *you please*	*way you please*

120. *a.*

		Singular	
N.	**ūnus** *one*	**ūna** *one*	**ūnum** *one*
G.	**ūnīus** *of one*	**ūnīus** *of one*	**ūnīus** *of one*
D.	**ūnī** *one*	**ūnī** *one*	**ūnī** *one*
Ac.	**ūnum** *one*	**ūnam** *one*	**ūnum** *one*
Ab.	**ūnō** *one*	**ūnā** *one*	**ūnō** *by one*, etc.
		Plural	
N.	**ūnī** *only* (*ones*)	**ūnae** *only* (*ones*)	**ūna** *only* (*ones*)
G.	**ūnōrum**	**ūnārum**	**ūnōrum**
D.	**ūnīs**	**ūnīs**	**ūnīs**
Ac.	**ūnōs**	**ūnās**	**ūna**
Ab.	**ūnīs**	**ūnīs**	**ūnīs**

b.

		Plural	
N.	**duo** *two*	**duae** *two*	**duo** *two*
G.	**duōrum** *of two*	**duārum** *of two*	**duōrum** *of two*
D.	**duōbus** *two*	**duābus** *two*	**duōbus** *two*
Ac.	**duōs** (**duo**) *two*	**duās** *two*	**duo** *two*
Ab.	**duōbus** *two*	**duābus** *two*	**duōbus** *by two*

c.

		Plural	
N.	**trēs** *three*	**trēs** *three*	**tria** *three*
G.	**trium** *of three*	**trium** *of three*	**trium** *of three*
D.	**tribus** *three*	**tribus** *three*	**tribus** *three*
Ac.	**trīs** *three*	**trīs** *three*	**tria** *three*
Ab.	**tribus** *three*	**tribus** *three*	**tribus** *by three*

d. The next cardinal numeral declined is **ducentī -ae -a** *two hundred*. The hundreds are declined like the plural of **ūnus**. **Mīlle** *thousand* is indeclinable.

e. **Mīlia** *thousands* is a neuter noun declined like **tria** *three* and is followed by the Genitive Case. (See § 72.)

Mīlle librī *1000 books* **Duo mīlia librōrum** *2000 books*

quot? *how many?*	**quotus?** *what one?*	**quotēnī?** *how many each?*
ūnus ūna ūnum	prīmus *first*	**singulī** *one each*
duo duae duo	alter *second*	**bīnī** *two each*
trēs trēs tria	tertius *third*	**ternī** *three each* p. 28
quattuor iv.	**quārtus** *fourth*	etc.
quīnque v.	**quīntus** *fifth*	*f.* (Cf. p. 29 and § 78 *a*)
sex vi.	**sextus** *sixth*	**simplex** *simple*
septem	**septimus**	**duplex** *double, twofold*
octō	**octāvus**	**triplex** *triple,*
novem ix.	**nōnus**	etc.
decem x.	**decimus**	**quotiēns?** *how many times?* p. 29 and § 67
ūndecim xi.	**ūndecimus**	**semel** *once*
duodecim	**duodecimus**	**bis** *twice*
tredecim	**tertius decimus**	**ter** *thrice, 3-times*
quattuordecim	**quārtus decimus**	**quater** *4-times*
quīndecim	**quīntus decimus**	etc.
sēdecim	**sextus decimus**	*g.* Elements
septendecim	**septimus decimus**	**-decim** *-teen* **-us -tus** *-th*
duodēvīgintī	**duodēvīcēnsimus**	**vī-** *twain, twen-*
ūndēvīgintī	**ūndēvīcēnsimus**	**-gintī** or **-gintā** *-ty*
vīgintī	**vīcēnsimus**	**-dē-** *from* **-iēns** *-times*
vīgintī ūnus	**vīcēnsimus prīmus**	**-cent-** or **-gent-** *hundred*
duodētrīgintā	**duodētrīcēnsimus**	**-plex -plicis** *-ple -fold*
ūndētrīgintā	**ūndētrīcēnsimus**	compare **audāx** § 85
trīgintā	**trīcēnsimus**	**prīmum** *first (thing)*
quadrāgintā	**quadrāgēnsimus**	**deinde** *then, next*
quīnquāgintā	**quīnquāgēnsimus**	**tertium** *third (thing)*
sexāgintā	**sexagēnsimus**	**prīmum** *for the 1st time*
septuāgintā	**septuāgēnsimus**	**iterum** *again, 2nd time*
octōgintā	**octōgēnsimus**	**tertium** *for the 3rd time*
nōnāgintā	**nōnāgēnsimus**	**quārtum** *for the 4th time*
centum	**cēntēnsimus**	

121. The plain Infinitive is the simplest form of the verb and cannot be satisfactorily defined [1] except by telling where it occurs. Infinitives are found as objects:

a.	after *may*	It *may* ***be***	**Esse** potest
		He *might* ***wish***	**Velle** posset
	after *can*	She *can* ***read***	**Legere** potest
	after *will*	He *would* not ***go***	**Īre** nōlēbat § 186
	after *do*, etc.	*Don't* ***speak*** so	Nōlī ita **loquī**
b.	after *to*	He *ought to* ***read*** it	Id **legere** dēbet
		Ready ***to read***	**Ad legendum** parātus
		Is *compelled to* ***give***	**Dare** cōgitur § 155
		I know *it* ***to be*** *Mark*	Eum Mārcum **esse** sciō

c. and as subject of a verb or predicate noun.

subj.	***Call*** is speak	**Vocāre** loquī est
pred.	Call is ***speak***	Vocāre **loquī** est

122. Infinitives with subject Accusative are used in object clauses:

after *let*	He lets ***them go*** (allows *them to go*)	**Eōs īre** patitur § 142
after *bid*	He bids ***us try*** (orders *us to try*)	**Nōs cōnārī** iubet Cf. § 153
after *see*	They saw ***me go*** (observed *that I went*)	**Mē īre** vīdērunt
after *hear*	I heard ***her speak*** (heard *that she spoke*)	**Eam loquī** audīvī § 142

[1] We find about half the infinitives in ordinary English are introduced by the preposition *to*. English infinitives not introduced by *to* are nearly always translated by Latin infinitives, whereas a large part of those introduced by *to* are not translated by infinitives in Latin (see §§ 148–9).

123. Infinitives in **-ing** (Gerunds) may be used as subject, as a predicate noun, or as object of a verb or preposition.

a. subj.	***Seeing*** is believing	**Vidēre** crēdere est
b. pred.	Calling is ***speaking***	Vocāre **loquī** est
c. obj.	I began ***calling*** him	Eum **vocāre** coepī
d. w. prep.	Finds upon ***inquiring***	Reperit **in quaerendō**
	He prevents me ***from going***	Mē **īre** prohibet
	I am prevented ***from going***	**Īre** prohibeor

124.

	Active (subject acting)		Passive (subject acted upon) (Deponent § 182)	
Infinitive present	**-re (-se or -le)**		**-rī, -ī**	
Indicative or *Subjunctive*				(subject)
1st Pers. sing.	**-ō, -m**	**-ī** [1]	**-or, -r**	(*I*)
2nd Pers. sing.	**-s**	**-istī**	**-ris, -re**	(*thou*)
3rd Pers. sing.	**-t**	**-it**	**-tur**	(*he, she, it*)
1st Pers. plur.	**-mus**	**-imus**	**-mur**	(*we*)
2nd Pers. plur.	**-tis**	**-istis**	**-minī**	(*you*)
3rd Pers. plur.	**-nt**	**-ērunt** or **-ēre**	**-ntur**	(*they*)
Imperative Pres.				
2nd Pers. sing.	——		**-re**	(*thou*)
2nd Pers. plur.	**-te**		**-minī**	(*ye, you*)

125. The **ending** of an Infinitive shows merely whether its subject is *acting* or *acted upon* (in deponent verbs *acting upon itself* or in some way *concerning itself*).

The **ending** of a Finite Verb shows (*a*) whether the subject it refers to is ***I*** or ***we***, ***thou*** or ***you***, or some *other person* or

[1] Used in the Perfect Indicative Active only. See § 168, note.

persons; (*b*) whether it is *acting* or *being acted upon* (in deponent verbs *acting on for self.* §§ 180–2).

126. The **Present Stem** of a Latin verb is found by dropping **-re**, **-rī** or **-ī** from the *present infinitive.* Cf. § 163.

In **-e-** verbs restore **-e-** where it disappears before **-ī**.

In **-i-** verbs restore **-i-** where it becomes **-e-** before **r** or has disappeared before **-ī**.

	1	2	3	3	3 i	3 i	4
	-ā-	**-ē-**	**-e-**	**-e-**	**-i-**	**-i-**	**-ī-**
Pres. Inf.	**vocāre**	**iubēre**	**legere**	——	**capere**	——	**audīre**
	vocārī	**iubērī**	**legī**	**ūtī**	**capī**	**patī**	**audīrī**
Pres. Stem	**vocā-**	**iubē-**	**lege-**	**ūte-**	**capi-**	**pati-**	**audī-**
	call	*order*	*pick*	*use*	*take*	*let*	*hear*

127. Present Infinitives. Nouns and Verbs at Once

-ā- **vocāre** (*to*) *call,* (*be*) *calling,* (*do*) *calling* § 190 *c* — ***vocation***
vocārī (*to*) *be called,* (*being*) *called, calling be done* — ***revoke***
cōnārī (*to*) *exert-self, try,* (*be*) *trying, make effort* — ***conative***
-ē- **iubēre** (*to*) *order, bid,* (*be*) *ordering, give orders* — ***jussive***
iubērī (*to*) *be ordered,* (*being*) *ordered, order* (*be*) *given*
licēre (*to*) *be allowed, be lawful, be right* — ***license***
-e- **legere** (*to*) *pick, read,* (*be*) *reading,* (*do*) *reading* — ***legible***
legī (*to*) *be read,* (*being*) *read, reading* (*be*) *done* — ***eligible***
loquī (*to*) *speak, talk,* (*be*) *talking,* (*do*) *talking* — ***eloquent***
-i- **capere** (*to*) *take, contain,* (*be*) *taking,* (*do*) *taking* — ***capacity***
capī (*to*) *be taken, captured,* (*being*) *taken* — ***captive***
patī (*to*) *suffer, allow, let,* (*be*) *letting* — ***patient, passive***
-ī- **audīre** (*to*) *hear, heed,* (*be*) *hearing* § 207 *c* — ***obedient***
audīrī (*to*) *be heard,* (*being*) *heard, heed* (*be*) *given* — ***audible***
largīrī (*to*) *give in self interest, give bribe* — ***largess***

128. **Infinitives of Irregular Verbs.** § 184

-a-	**dare** (*to*) *put, give, send,* (*be*) *giving,* (*do*) *giving*	***dative***
	darī (*to*) *be put, given,* (*being*) *given, giving* (*be*) *done*	***render***
-ī-	**īre** (*to*) *go, travel,* (*be*) *going,* (*do*) *traveling*	*transient*
	īrī *be gone, traveling be done*	
-se	**esse** (*to*) *be, exist, belong* (*last, remain*)	***essential***
	posse (*to*) *be able, be powerful; can, may*	***possible, power***
-le	**velle** (*to*) *wish, will, be willing* § 186	***will, voluntary***
	nōlle (*to*) *wish not, will not, be unwilling*	*willy-nilly*
	mālle (*to*) *wish rather, prefer, will rather*	***magistrate***

129. As *nouns*, infinitives are declined in the singular and called Gerunds. The accusative in **-um** is used only with the preposition **ad** or in apposition with another noun.

	1	2	3	3 **i**	4
	-ā-	**-ē-**	**-e-**	**-i-**	**-ī-**
N.	**cōnārī**	**vidēre**	**agere**	**fugere**	**audīre**
G.	**cōnandī**	**videndī**	**agendī**	**fugiendī**	**audiendī**
D.	**cōnandō**	**videndō**	**agendō**	**fugiendō**	**audiendō**
Ac.	**cōnandum** [1]	**videndum**	**agendum**	**fugiendum**	**audiendum**
V.	——	——	——	——	——
Ab.	**cōnandō**	**videndō**	**agendō**	**fugiendō**	**audiendō**

130. As *nouns*, infinitives stand as the direct object of verbs meaning *may, can, ought, will, try, dare, begin,* etc. (§ 121)

Legere (cōnātur)	**Legere** (potest)	**Legī** (potest)
(he tries) *to read,*	(she can) *read,*	(it can) *be read,*
(tries) *to do reading*	(may) *be reading*	*reading* (may) *be done*

[1] When used as the subject of another infinitive (see § 142) the accusative has the same form as the nominative.

131. As *nouns*, infinitives stand *as subject* of verbs meaning *be, be allowed*, etc., and *as predicate nouns*.

Velle **posse** (est)
to be willing (is) *to be able*,
will (is) *be able*,
to will (is) *to be able*,
willing (is) *being able*

Vocārī (licet) § 121 *c*
being called (is permitted),
(it is permitted) *to be called*,
(one may) *be called*,
calling (may) *be done*

132. As *nouns*, infinitives stand *in various case relations*.

Patī (cogor) § 155 *a* **īre** (vetor) § 123 *d* **īre** (prohibeor)
(I am forced) *to let* (am forbidden) *to go* (am kept) *from going*

133. As *verbs*, infinitives *take objects, predicates*, etc.

Puerōs vocāre (placet)
calling the boys (is decided on)
(it is decided) *to call the boys*

Amīcus esse (incipit) § 5 *a*
(he begins) *to be friendly*
(is beginning) *to be a friend*

134. *a.* The *subject* of an infinitive is *Accusative*. (p. 4)

Puerōs vocāre (audiō)
(I hear) *boys call* or *calling*

Darī (vīdī)
(I saw) *it* (*being*) *given*

b. **The Historical Infinitive**

Where its meaning is unmistakable, the Infinitive is occasionally put for the Indicative, referring to the past.

Ille nihil respondēre = **ille** nihil respondēbat (respondit) or **ille** nihil respondet (historical present) *he did not reply at all.*

135. **Uses of the Gerund**

Fugiendī quae causa est? *what is the cause of* (*his*) ***fleeing?***
Videndī causā eunt *they go* ***for the sake of seeing;*** *they go* ***to see***
Diēs **oppugnandō** est dictus *a day is set* (*named*) ***for attacking***
Ad cōnandum parātus est *he is prepared* ***to try;*** *ready* ***for trying***
Hoc reperit **in quaerendō** *he finds out this* ***upon inquiring***

136. Present Indicative. Used to *represent* a thing as an actual occurrence or fact, whether it is true or untrue.

-ā-	**voca**t (*he, she,* or *it*) *calls, is calling, does call*	*in**voca**tion*
	vocant (*they*) *call, summon, are calling, do call*	*ad**voca**te*
	vocatur (*he*) *is* (*being*) *called, calling is done*	*in**voke***
	vocantur (*they*) *are* (*being*) *called, summoned* § 187	*pro**voke***
	cōnātur (*he*) *exerts-himself, tries, is trying,* etc.	***cona**tive*
	cōnantur (*they*) *exert-themselves, try, are trying*	§ 191
-ē-	**iube**t (*he*) *orders, bids, is ordering, does order*	***jus**sive*
	iubent (*they*) *order, bid, are ordering, give orders*	
	iubētur (*he*) *is* (*being*) *ordered* or *bidden, order is given*	§ 192
	iubentur (*they*) *are ordered, are being ordered*	
	licet *it is lawful, permission is given,* ***one may***	***leis**ure*
-e-	**legi**t (*he*) *reads, picks, is reading, does reading*	***lege**nd*
	legunt (*they*) *read, choose, are reading, do read*	***elect***
	legitur (*it*) *is read, picked, reading is done* § 197	***les**son*
	leguntur (*they*) *are read, chosen, are being read* § 218	***lec**ture*
	loquitur (*he*) *speaks, is speaking, does speak*	***collo**quy*
	loquuntur (*they*) *speak, are speaking, do speak*	***collo**quial*
-i-	**capi**t (*he*) *takes, is taking, does take* or *contain*	***ca**pable*
	capiunt (*they*) *take, capture, are taking, do take*	***ca**tch*
	capitur (*it*) *is taken, capture is made* § 202	*re**ceive***
	capiuntur (*they*) *are taken, are being caught*	*re**ceipt***
	patitur (*he*) *suffers, lets, is letting, does let*	*per**pe**tual*
	patiuntur (*they*) *suffer, allow, are letting* § 206	*com**pas**sion*
-ī-	**audi**t (*he*) *hears, heeds, is hearing, does hear*	*obe**di**ent*
	audiunt (*they*) *hear, heed, are hearing, do hear*	***audi**tor*
	audītur (*it*) *is heard, attention is paid* § 207	***audi**torium*
	audiuntur (*they*) *are heard, are being heard*	*in**audi**ble*
	largītur (*he*) *gives lavishly, gives bribe*	***larg**ess*
	largiuntur (*they*) *give-in-self-interest, give bribes*	***large***

137. *a.* **Irregular Indicative Forms.** §§ 183-6

-a-	**dat** (*he*) *puts, sends, gives, is giving, does give*	***date***
	dant (*they*) *put, send, give, are giving, do give*	***data***
	datur (*it*) *is put, given, gift is made, giving is done*	***add***
	dantur (*they*) *are put, given, are being given*	***edit***
-ī-	**it** (*he*) *goes, travels, is going, does go* § 212	***preterit***
	eunt (*they*) *go, come, travel, are going, do go*	***transit***
	ītur *traveling is done, they're going,* ***one goes***	***circuit***
-se	**est** (*he, she, it*) *is,* (*there*) *is,* (*it*) *belongs* § 183	***absent***
	sunt (*they*) *are,* (*there*) *are,* (*they*) *belong*	***present***
	potest (*he*) *is able, can, may, is powerful*	***potent***
	possunt (*they*) *are able, can, may, are powerful*	***power***
-le	**vult** (*he*) *wishes, is determined, will, is willing*	***volunteer***
	volunt (*they*) *wish, will, are determined, willing*	***volition***
	nōn vult (*he*) *does not wish, will not, is unwilling*	ME. ***nill***
	nōlunt (*they*) *do not wish, will not, are unwilling*	ME. ***nolde***
	māvult (*he*) *wishes rather, will rather, prefers*	***majesty***
	mālunt (*they*) *wish rather, will sooner, prefer*	***magistrate***

b. Rule for changing the Present Indicative to the Present Subjunctive.

In the **-ā-** verbs,	change the **-ā-** to **-ē-**	§ 170
In **-le** and **-se** verbs,	the sign is **-ī-**	§ 140
In all others,	insert the sign **-ā-**	§ 136–9

Servus sum Scholasticī. Tenē mē nē fugiam domō.

c. The Indicative must be changed to the Subjunctive in many situations. See §§ 139, 140–3.

Direct Statement (or Discourse)	*Indirect Statement.* § 143
Eae parvae videntur, quod tantum spatium absunt	Sciō eās parvās vidērī, quod tantum spatium absint
. . . seem small, because they ***are*** *so great a distance away*	
Is agrum Sēquanum, quī erat optimus, occupāvit	Legō eum agrum Sēquanum, quī esset optimus, occupāvisse
(I read that)-he seized the Sequanian land which ***was*** *the best*	
Ubi tū fuistī? § 183 *c*	Scīmus ubi fuerīs
where ***were*** *you?*	we know *where you* ***were***

d. The Truth	*The Opposite of the Truth*
Is nōn vocāverat § 187	Sī mē vocāvisset,
Ego nōn audīveram § 207	ego audīvissem § 156
If he ***had*** *called me, I* ***should have*** *heard (him)*	

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

138. *a.* The Subjunctive Mode is a form of the verb used to represent an action not as actually occurring but as wished for, as uncertain or unlikely, but possible.

We may say either:

IND.

(1) *I insist that the boy* ***starts*** *early;* or

SUB.

(2) *I insist that the boy* ***start*** *early*

according to which we mean. The first gives the impression that I know the boy *starts* early, and therefore insist that it is true. The second shows that the boy *does not* start early now, but that I intend that he *shall* hereafter.

b. We use the Subjunctive when we *suppose true* what we *know to be false* or *unlikely*, simply in order to discuss what might happen under such circumstances, as:

(3) *I wish I* **were** *rich. I* **would** *travel.*
(Giving the impression that I *am not* and *will not.*)

(4) *If I* **had** *a million, I* **would** *travel.*
(I *have not* and therefore *will not.*)

(5) *He* **would** *lift it, if he* **could**.
(He *probably will not; likely cannot.*)

(6) *If he* **were** *behind that screen, he* **would** *hear what I say.*
(Likely *is not* and *will not.*)

The Present Subjunctive, *start* (2) points to the *future.* The Past Subjunctives, *were, would, had,* and *could* (3, 4, 5, 6), refer to the same time as the Present Indicatives, *am, will, have, can,* and *is.*

c. It is a mistake to imagine that the words *that* and *if* are used more with the Subjunctive than with the Indicative.

(7) *If he* **is** *behind that screen, he* **hears** *what I say.*
(8) *If he* **was** *behind that screen, he* **heard** *what I said.*
(9) *If he* **has** *been behind it, he* **has** *heard what I said.*
(10) *If he* **gets** *behind that screen, he* **will** *hear what I say.*

Is, hears, was, heard, has, gets, and *will* are all Indicative to show that I do not wish to imply that I care anything about *his presence* behind the screen. *Gets* and *say* (Pres. Ind.) in (10) refer to the future.

d. The Subjunctive lurks (usually unnoticed) in many corners of books, lectures, speeches, legal documents, and newspapers and is sometimes heard in the spontaneous utterances of many who make no pretense of fine distinctions.

Indicative Forms	Subjunctive Forms
Thy kingdom **comes.**	*"Thy kingdom* **come.**"
Thy will **is** *done.*	*"Thy will* **be** *done."*
He **pays** *his debts.*	*They insist that he* **pay** *it now.*
***It is** known that, . . .*	***Be** it known that, . . .*
He **went** *home at eight.*	*It is time he* **went** *home.*
He **could** *not read it.*	*It is time he* **could.**
He **would** *not answer.*	*He* **would,** *if he* **could.**
I **had** *often seen it there.*	***Had** I only seen it in time,* etc.
He **was** *here yesterday.*	*(I)* **Would** *that he* **were** *here now!*
We **sit** *down. We* **go** *home.*	*"***Sit** we down." "***Go** we home."*

e. **Substitutes and Periphrases**

In many expressions the Subjunctive is unnecessary and we substitute the Indicative; or we get at the same meaning in a roundabout way by using *may, can, shall, will,* etc., with the Infinitive. §§ 121–3

Modern Periphrases	Earlier Subjunctives
I hope he **starts** *early.* *I hope he* **may start** *early.* *I hope he* **can start** *early.* *I hope he* **will start** *early.* *I hope he* **is to start** *early.*	*I desire that he* **start** *early.*
***Let it be** known,* etc.	***Be it** known,* etc.
***Let** his* **will be** *done.*	*His* **will be** *done.*
Let us sit** down.* ***Let us go.	***Sit we** down.* ***Go we.***

f. The Latin Subjunctive is more used than ours.

1. It is often translated by the English Indicative.

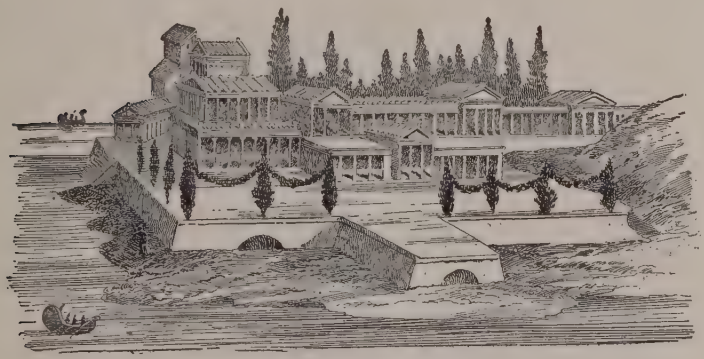
2. The Latin Subjunctive must often be rendered in a roundabout way by using *may, can, is to, shall,* and *must,* followed by infinitives.

139. Present Subjunctive. Used to represent something (not as actually occurring but) *as looked forward to, desired, conceived of as possible*, or *supposed*. §§ 137 *c*, 188, 198, 203

-ā-	vocet (*he, she,* or *it*) *call, be calling, do call*	*provocation*
	vocent (*they*) *call, summon, be calling, do call*	*vocative*
	vocētur (*he*) *be called, calling be done* § 156 *b*	*invoking*
	vocentur (*they*) *be called,* (*shall*) *be summoned*	*revoke*
	cōnētur (*he*) *exert-himself, try, be trying,* etc.	*conative*
	cōnentur (*they*) *exert-themselves, try, be trying*	§ 191
-ē-	iubeat (*he*) *order, bid, be ordering, do order*	*jussive*
	iubeant (*they*) *order, bid, be ordering, give orders*	
	iubeātur (*he*) *be ordered* or *bidden, order be given*	§ 193
	iubeantur (*they*) *be ordered,* (*should*) *be ordered*	
	liceat *it be lawful, permission be given, one may*	*license*
-e-	legat (*he*) *read, pick, be reading, do reading*	*illegible*
	legant (*they*) *read, choose, be reading, do read*	*elective*
	legātur (*it*) *be read, picked, reading be done* § 218	*collection*
	legantur (*they*) *be read, chosen,* (*may*) *be read*	*diligent*
	loquātur (*he*) *speak, be speaking, do speak*	*eloquence*
	loquantur (*they*) *speak, be speaking, do speak*	*grandiloquent*
-i-	capiat (*he*) *take, be taking, do take,* or *contain*	*recipient*
	capiant (*they*) *take, capture, be taking, do take*	*reception*
	capiātur (*it*) *be taken, capture be made*	*captivate*
	capiantur (*they*) *be taken, captured, caught*	*capsule*
	patiātur (*he*) *suffer, let, be letting, do let*	*perpetuate*
	patiantur (*they*) *suffer, allow, be letting*	*impatient*
-ī-	audiat (*he*) *hear, heed, be hearing, do hear*	*audit*
	audiant (*they*) *hear, heed, be hearing, do hear*	*obedience*
	audiātur (*it*) *be heard, attention be paid*	*disobey*
	audiantur (*they*) *be heard, would be heard*	§ 208
	largiātur (*he*) *give lavishly, give bribe, bribe*	*largesses*

140. **The Present Subjunctive of Irregular Verbs.** § 185

-a-	det (*he*) *put, send, give, be giving, do give*	*addition*
	dent (*they*) *put, send, give, be giving, do give*	*editor*
	dētur (*it*) *be put, given, gift be made, giving be done*	*dative*
	dentur (*they*) *be put, given, should be given*	*editorial*
-ī-	eat (*he*) *go, travel, be going, do go* § 213	*transition*
	eant (*they*) *go, come, travel, be going, do go*	
	eātur *traveling be done, they be going, one go*	
-se	sit (*he, she, it*) *be,* (*there*) *be,* (*it*) *belong*	
	sint (*they*) *be,* (*there*) *be,* (*they*) *belong*	§ 183
	possit (*he*) *be able,* (*can*), *be powerful, may*	*potential*
	possint (*they*) *be able,* (*can*), *be powerful, may*	*impossible*
-le	velit (*he*) *wish, be determined, will, be willing*	*volitive*
	velint (*they*) *wish, will, be determined, willing*	
	nōlit (*he*) *do not wish, will not, be unwilling*	
	nōlint (*they*) *do not wish, will not, be unwilling*	§ 186
	mālit (*he*) *wish rather, will rather, prefer*	
	mālint (*they*) *wish rather, would sooner, prefer*	



Villa Rōmāna ad mare.

141. In independent clauses the Latin Subjunctive has to be rendered in a roundabout way in English — usually by the subjunctive or imperative or by *will, shall, may, can, do, let,* etc., followed by the infinitive. §§ 121–3

a.	**Negative *nē***	
Exhortation (1st person)	**Exspectēmus** (*wait we!*), *let us wait* **Nē exspectēmus** (*wait we not!*), *let us not wait*	§ 188
Prohibition (2d person)	**Nē exspectēs** *wait thou not! don't wait!* (less used than **nōlī exspectāre** or **nē exspectā!** *don't wait!*)	
Command (3d person)	**Exspectet** (*wait he!*), *he shall wait, let him wait!* **Nē exspectet** (*wait he not!*), *let him not wait!*	
Concession	**Exspectet, mē vidēre nōn potest** *should-he-wait* or *granted-that-he-wait, he cannot see me*	
Wish, Hope	**Ō sī exspectet!** **Utinam exspectet!** *oh that he may wait! (I) would that he may wait!* **Utinam nē exspectet!** *oh that he may not wait!*	

b.	**Negative *nōn***
Deliberation	**Mārcus exspectet?** *Mark wait? shall Mark wait?* **Cūr nōn exspectet?** *why will (would) he not wait?*
Possibility Cf. § 156 *b*	**Exspectem, sī rogētur** *I would wait, if it should be asked; I could* or *might wait if a request be made* **Nōn exspectem, nisi rogētur** *I'll not wait, unless it be asked* or *unless a request be made*

142. When a *former thought* (statement, question, command) is *mentioned in the course of a new statement* or question,

(*a*) its form is changed; See p. 4, notes

(*b*) its asserting, asking, or commanding power is lost, and

(*c*) it becomes the *subject* or *object* of a verb, or is used as a *predicate noun* or an *appositive.* §§ 152–5

In a Direct Statement or Declaration the main verb is changed to the Infinitive with the Subject Accusative.

Direct:	**Puerī eunt**	**Liber fertur**	§ 212
a.	*the boys go, are going*	*the book is (being) brought*	
Indirect:	**Puerōs īre** [1] patitur	**Librum ferrī** [1] patitur	
	he lets the boys go	*allows the book to be brought*	
	Puerōs īre [1] videt	**Librum ferrī** [1] videt	
	he sees the boys go	*he sees the book (be)* [1] *brought*	
	sees the boys (be) going	*the book (being)* [1] *brought*	
	notices (that) the boys go	*(that) the book is brought*	
	Nūntiātur **puerōs īre**	**Librum ferrī** oportet	
	that the boys go is reported; word is brought	*that the book be brought is necessary; it is necessary*	
	that the boys are going	*that the book be brought*	
Direct:	**Quis it?** *who is going?*	**Quid fertur?** *what is brought?*	
Indirect:	**Quem** [2] **īre** dīcit?	**Quid ferrī** videt?	
b.	*whom does he declare to be going? is going?*	*what does he see brought? what does he see is brought?*	

143. In Indirect Questions and Commands the main verb, if Indicative or Imperative, is changed to the Subjunctive.

Direct. **Quis it?** *who is going?* **Īte, puerī** *go, boys!*

Indirect. Quaerit **quis** [3] **eat** *asks* ***who is going*** § 138 *d, e*

Indirect Commands may stand in any person

Dīcit **eāmus** [4] *says* ***we may*** [5] ***go*** or *we must* [6] *go* § 141
Dīcit **eātis** *says* ***you shall*** [7] ***go*** or *you may go* § 213
Dīcit **eant** *says* ***they shall go*** or *let them go*

[1] **Ire** and **ferrī** no longer assert; the only assertions are **patitur** and **videt.** [2] The interrogative, **quem**, still asks. [3] **Quis** no longer asks. [4] **eāmus, eātis,** and **eant** mention a former command without commanding (§ 142 *b*). [5] Some commands merely give permission, [6] others urge, [7] others order.

144. An interrogative word may be used in a sentence to ask for any element that is represented as unknown.

145. The whole sentence may be turned into a question by using the Latin *Question Marks* **-ne? ec-?** and **Num?**

Galba Titō amīcus est *Galba is friendly to Titus*
Galbam aliquid movet *it moves* or *influences Galba somewhat*

(*a*) *Questions seeking information.*

The question marks **-ne** or **ec-** are attached to the first word in Latin.

The English sentence does not contain the word ***not*** or ***no***.

Galbane Titō amīcus est? *is Galba a friend to Titus?*
Ecquid Galbam movet? *does it affect Galba at all?*

(*b*) Questions asked for effect — making it appear that the speaker expects the answer "yes."

The Latin sentence begins with **Nōn** or **Nihil**, etc., and **-ne** is attached to the first word.

The English contains the word ***not*** or ***not-at-all*** or ***nothing***. The parenthesis is negative.

Nōnne Galba Titō amīcus est? *is Galba **not** friendly to Titus?*
*Galba is friendly to Titus (**isn't** he)?*

Nihilne Galbam movet? *doesn't it affect Galba **at-all**?*

(*c*) Questions asked for effect — making it appear that the speaker expects the answer "no."

With the sign **Num?** but does not contain **-ne?** nor **ec-?** nor the words **nōn** nor **nihil**.

A virtual exclamation, or may contain the word ***not*** and a positive parenthesis.

Num Galba Titō amīcus est? *Galba is a friend to Titus!*
*Galba isn't friendly to Titus (**is he**)?*

Num quid Galbam movet? *does it affect Galba at all?*
*it doesn't affect Galba at all (**does it**)?*

146. In English many noun clauses are introduced by *that*. There are three ways of expressing such clauses in Latin:

(1) ***that*** (not expressed) Infinitive with subject Accusative;

(2) ***that*** = **ut** (**utī**), **quō** or (**timēre**) **nē** with the Subjunctive; ***that***—*not* = **nē**, **quō minus** or **quīn**, (**timēre**) **ut** or (**verērī**) **nē nōn** with the Subjunctive.

(3) ***that*** = **quod** with the Indicative.

The nature and meaning of the governing word must be taken into consideration in order to determine whether such a clause is represented

(*a*) as an *actual occurrence* or *fact;*

Dominum abesse dīcit *he says* (***that***) ***the master is away***

or as *something sure to be executed,* if commanded or willed;

Dominum vocārī iubet *he orders* ***that the master be called,*** or **Dominum vocārī** vult *he wishes* ***the master to be called*** (§ 127)

or as an Indirect Question or Command;

Quid cōnsilī sit ostendit *he shows* ***what the plan is.***
Dīcit **puerōs vocent** *he says* ***they shall call the boys.*** § 143

(*b*) as something (not yet occurring) looked forward to;

Postulant **ut vocētur** *they request* ***that he be called***

or as something *likely to result from* the nature of the case;

Cōnsuētūdō est, **ut eōs iuvet** *his custom is* ***that he aid them.***
Nōn dubitō **quīn eat** *I don't doubt* ***but he is going,*** *I have no hesitation about* ***why he shall not go.***

(*c*) a *cause* mentioned by way of explanation, etc.

Causa mittendī est, **quod eōs vocārī vult** *the* ***cause*** *of sending* (*him*) *is,* ***that he wishes them*** (*to be*) ***called.***

147. *a.* An **ut**-*clause* often stands for the *direct object.*

Id eīs persuādet Eīs persuādet **ut exeant**
(that them persuades-he) (them persuades-he that out-go-they)
he persuades them (***that***) ***so*** *persuades them* ***that*** *they* ***shall leave***

b. The indicative is used with **ut, utī** *as* or *when.*

Puerī, **ut audiō,** īre nōlunt *the boys,* ***as I hear,*** *will not go.*

c. Use the Subjunctive with **ut, utī** *that* and **quī** *that-he.*

Hortor, **ut roget** Mittuntur, **quī id ā** Titō **postulent**
I urge ***that he ask*** (men) *are sent,* ***that-they*** (may) ***ask*** *it of Titus*
(persons) *are dispatched* ***to ask it*** *of Titus.*

d. With the indicative **dum** means *while.*

Dum haec **geruntur,** eō pervēnit,
while *these* (*things*) ***were*** *going on, he arrived there.*

With the Subjunctive **dum** may be translated *till.*

Exspectāvit **dum** mīlitēs ex prōvinciā convenīrent
he waited ***till*** *soldiers* ***came*** *together from the province* or
till *soldiers* ***could*** (§ 141) *assemble from the province.*

e. The following verbs frequently take clauses introduced by **ut** as *direct object* instead of a noun or pronoun. § 153

imperāre 1. *demand* **3p 4t**; **3p** and **ut** with the Subjunctive
suādēre 2. *advise, recommend* **persuādēre 3p 4t**; **3p, ut** w. Sub.
hortārī 1. *urge* **4** or **ut** w. Sub. **cohortārī** *encourage, urge on* **4**
petere 3. *seek, ask, go after* **ab 6 p, 4 t** or **ut** with the Subjunctive
postulāre 1. *request, demand* **4t ā, ab p**; **ā, ab, p, ut** w. Sub. § 230
impetrāre 1. *get by asking, obtain, ask and get* **4t, ā, ab p**
rogāre 1. *ask* and **flāgitāre** *ask insistently* **4p 4t**; (**ut** w. Sub.)
quaerere 3. *inquire,* **4t, ē, ex** or **ā, ab p** **exquīrere** *seek out*

f. Primary or Principal Sequence of Tenses.

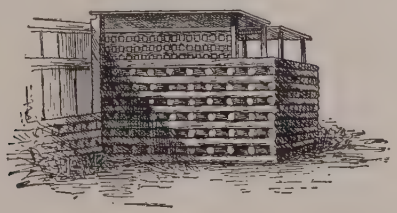
Pres. Hoc **facit** *he* ***is*** *doing this*	Cf. § 148	
Perf. Hoc **fēcit** *he* ***has*** *done this*	**ut nōs terrēat**	***that he may***
Fut. Hoc **faciet** *he* ***will*** *do it*	*frighten us;*	***to frighten***
Futp. Hoc **fēcerit** ***will have*** *done it*	*us.*	

Hostium tanta **est** celeritās *the enemy's quickness* ***is*** *so great,*	ut ad arma capienda tempus **dēsit** *that there* ***is*** *no time to take up arms*
Ita celeriter prō**currunt** *they* ***run*** *forward so quickly,*	ut spatium pīla coniciendī nōn **dētur** *that time to hurl javelins* ***is*** *not given*

g. Secondary or Historical Succession of Tenses.

Imp. Id **faciēbat** *was doing it*	Cf. § 148	
Perf. Id **fēcit** ***did*** *do* or ***did*** *it*	**ut nōs terreret**	***that he might***
Plup. Id **fēcerat** ***had*** *done it*	*frighten us;*	***to frighten*** *us.*

Hostium tanta **fuit** celeritās *so great* ***was*** *the enemy's quickness,*	ut ad galeās induendās tempus **dēfuerit** *that there* ***was*** *no time to put on helmets* § 181 *b*
Ita celeriter prōcu**currēre** *they* ***came*** *on so quickly,*	ut spatium arma capiendī nōn **darētur** *that time to seize weapons* ***was*** *not given*



Agger.

148. **Purpose Clauses**

(*in order*) *that*, (*in order*) *to* = **ut**, **utī**, **quō**, **quō plūs**, **quī**, etc., with the Subjunctive. §§ 139–40

(*in order*) *that . . . not*, (*in order*) *not to* = **nē**, **quō minus** with the Subjunctive.

a. Hoc faciunt, **ut** servōs **terreant** *they do this* (*in order*) ***that they may terrify*** *the servants* or (*in order*) ***to terrify*** *the servants*

b. Hoc facit, **quō** inimīcōs prohibeat *he does this* (*in order*) ***that*** (***by it***) ***he may keep*** *enemies* ***away*** or (*in order*) ***to keep***, etc.

c. Hoc facit, **nē** inimīcī servōs terreant *he does this* ***that*** *enemies* ***may not*** *frighten the slaves*

d. Hoc facit, **quō minus** servōs terreant—***that*** (***-on-account-of-it***) *they may* ***not*** *frighten the slaves* ***so much*** or ***that*** *they may frighten the servants* ***less*** or *may* ***not*** *frighten*, etc.

e. Hoc facit, **quō plūs** pābulī habeat *he does it* (*in-order-*) ***that*** (***by-this-means***) *he may have* ***more*** *fodder* or ***to*** *have* ***more***

f. Hoc facit, **quō facilius** hostīs prohibeat . . . (*in-order-*) ***that*** (***-by-this-means***) *he may keep the enemy away* ***more easily*** or (*in-order-by-this-means-*) ***to*** *keep the enemy away* ***more easily***

g. **Mārcum** mittit, **quī** hostīs prohibeat *sends* ***Mark*** (*in-order*) ***that-he*** *may stop the enemy* or *sends* ***Mark to*** *stop the enemy*

h. **Nihil** habet, **quō** pābulum vehat *he has* ***nothing on-which*** *he may carry fodder* or *has* ***nothing to*** *carry fodder* ***on*** § 115 *a*

i. **Nōn** habent, **quō** fugiant *they have no* (***place***) ***to-which*** *they may flee* or *they have no* (***place***) ***to*** *flee* ***to*** § 119 *d*

j. **Nōn** habet, **ubi** pābulum **pōnat** *he has not* ***where*** *he* ***may*** *put fodder* § 119 *e*

k. **Nōn** habet, **unde** pābulum comparet *he has no* (***source***) ***from which*** *he may get fodder* or ***to*** *get fodder* ***from*** § 119 *f*

Result Clauses

149. Result Clauses are usually foreshadowed by some word meaning *so* or *such;* as the Latin **sīc**, **ita** *so, in such a manner,* **tam** *so,* **tantum** *so much,* etc.

so . . . that = **sīc . . ut, ita . . utī** or **tam . . quī**	with the Subjunctive
so that not = **ut nōn**; (***such***) ***that not*** = **quī nōn**	
not so . . that not, not so . . but = **nōn tam . . quīn**	

a. **Tam** multī sunt, **ut** servōs **terreant** *there are* ***so*** *many* ***that they frighten*** *the slaves* or ***so*** *many* ***as to frighten*** *the slaves*

b. **Tam** paucī sunt, **utī** inimīcōs **nōn** terreant *they are* ***so*** *few* ***that*** *they* ***do not*** *terrify their enemies;* ***so*** *few* ***as not*** *to terrify,* etc.

c. **Ita** dīcit, **quō** servōs **terreat** *he is speaking* ***in-such-a-manner that-*** (***by-it***) *he is terrifying the slaves;* ***so as to terrify,*** etc.

d. **Nēmō tam** audāx est, **quī** id facere **cōnētur** *no one is* ***so*** *bold* ***that-he would*** *try to do it* or ***so*** *bold* ***as to*** *try to do it* § 139

e. **Nēmō tam** fortis est, **quīn** interdum **terreātur** ***no one*** *is so brave* ***but that he is*** *terrified at times;* ***so*** *brave* ***as not to,*** etc.

f. **Tantulum** est, **quod** carrō vehātur *there is* ***so*** *little* ***that-it,*** etc.

g. **Nōn tantum** est, **quīn** carrō vehātur *there is* ***not so*** *much* ***but-it*** *can be carried on a cart.* § 115 *a*

150.

	Singular				
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	——	——	**plūs** § 72	minor	minor	**minus** § 72
G.	——	——	**plūris** § 73	minōris	minōris	**minōris**
D.	——	——	——	minōrī	minōrī	minōrī
Ac.	——	——	**plūs** § 68 *a*	minōrem	minōrem	**minus** § 68
V.	——	——	——	minor	minor	minus
Ab.	——	——	**plūre**	minōre	minōre	**minōre**

	Plural					
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	plūrēs	plūrēs	plūra	minōrēs	minōrēs	minōra
G.	plūrium	plūrium	plūrium	minōrum	minōrum	minōrum
D.	plūribus	plūribus	plūribus	minōribus	minōribus	minōribus
Ac.	plūrīs	plūrīs	plūra	minōrēs	minōrēs	minōra
V.	plūrēs	plūrēs	plūra	minōrēs	minōrēs	minōra
Ab.	plūribus	plūribus	plūribus	minōribus	minōribus	minōribus

plūs *more, more (value) too much*
plūrēs *more (persons), several*
plūribus **praesentibus** ***when*** *too many were present* § 96 *a*, **quid plūra?** *why more (things)?*
minus *less, less (value) too little, not so much, not* (§ 148 *d*)
minōrēs *younger (persons), minors, descendants*
maiōrēs *older (men), elders*

Descriptive and Characteristic Clauses

151. *a.* A *Descriptive Clause* seeks to describe or identify a person or thing that is already in mind. (Verb Indicative.)

Hic est, **quī** Mārcum **laudat** *this is (the one)* ***who praises*** *Mark*
Multī sunt, **quī** id **volunt** *there are many,* ***who wish*** *that*
(Flūmen) **quod** in Rhodanum **īnfluit** ***that flows into*** *the Rhone*

b. A *Characteristic Relative Clause* seeks persons or things to fit a particular description that it contains.
(Verb Subjunctive.)

Nōn **is** est, **quī** Titum **laudet** *he is not one,* ***that praises*** *Titus*
Multī sunt, **quī** id **velint** *there are many* ***who*** *(would)* ***wish*** *this*
Quis est, **quī** eum **laudet?** *who is there* ***that would*** *praise him?*
who is there (***such***) ***that he praises*** *him?* § 115 *a*
Nēmō est, **quīn** eum **laudet** *there is* ***no-one but will*** *praise him*
there is ***no-one who*** *would* ***not*** *praise him*

152. *a.* Noun Clauses are used as Subject or Predicate.

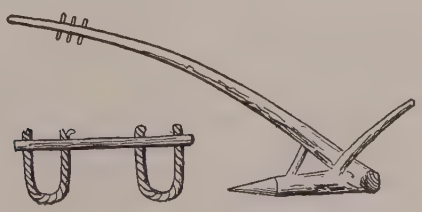
Eōs vocārī oportet ***that they be called*** *is necessary*, etc. § 131
Fit **ut veniat** ***that he come*** *happens; **it happens that he comes***
Concēditur **utī eant** ***that they go*** *is granted; **permission is given** . . .*

b. Noun Clauses are used as Predicate Nouns.

Suspīciō est **id dōlō fierī** *the suspicion is **that it is** done slyly*
Condiciō est **ut nunc eat** *the condition is **that he go** now*
Causa est **quod īnsidiās verētur** *the reason is **that he fears ambush***

153. Noun Clauses are used as Direct Object.

Eōs ingredī prohibet *he keeps **them from entering*** §§ 123, 132
Eōs **nōn** dēterret, **quīn ingrediantur** *he does not prevent them **from entering**; does **not** stop them **so that** they may **not** enter*
Id eīs facile persuādet *he persuades them **this** easily* § 74, 4, 6
Eīs persuādet **Mārcum abesse** *he persuades them (**that**) **Mark is away*** Cf. § 146 *a, e*
Eīs persuādet **utī exeant** *he persuades them **that they should leave***
Nōn dubitō **eōs vocārī** *I (believe) don't doubt **their being called***
Nōn dubitō **quīn vocentur** *I don't doubt **but they are called***
Timeō **nē veniat** (*I doubt **his not coming***) *I fear **that he will come***
Timeō **ut veniat** (*I doubt **his coming***) *I fear **that he will not come***
Nōn timeō **nē nōn veniat** *I don't fear **that he will not come***



Iugum et Arātrum.

154. Noun Clauses are used in Apposition with certain words; as, **id** *it, this;* **illud** *that (this)* or *the following;* **hōc** or **eō** (Abl.) *on account of this, for the reason.*

eā ratiōne, eā dē causā *for this reason*, etc. § 74, 15

hōc . . . . . quod . . .		
eō . . . . . quod . . .		***for the reason, that . . .,***
proptereā . . . quod . . .		***on account of this, that . . .,***
eā dē causā . . quod . . .		

eō cōnsiliō . . . ut . . . . ***with the intention that;*** cf. § 96 *a*

—**Id** nūntiātur, **eōs morārī** *it is reported* ***that they are delaying***

Id contendunt, **nē ēnūntiētur** *they seek* ***this, that it be not told***

Venit **eō cōnsiliō, ut mē videat** *comes* ***with the idea of seeing me***

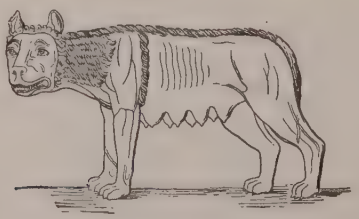
Id **eō** magis faciunt, **quod abest** *they are doing this* ***all-the*** *more* ***because he is away***

Hōc facilius eīs persuādet, **quod continentur** *he persuades them* ***the*** *more easily* ***because they are hemmed in***

Eō proptereā minus ūtī potest, **quod abit** *he cannot use it so well* ***for the reason that he is going away*** § 182 *b*

Id **eā dē causā** facit, **quod** abīre **vult** *he is doing this* ***for the reason that he wishes*** *to go away*

Satis est **causae, quā rē** domum **revertātur** *there is enough (of)* ***reason*** (§ 72) ***why he should go back*** *home*



Lupa.

Nihil est **causae quīn** eat *there is* ***no reason why he should not go***

Multa hortantur, **quā rē** eat ***many*** (***things***) ***on account of which fact he should go*** *are pressing-upon him; there are* ***many reasons why he should go*** § 115 *c*

Recūsat **nē morētur** *he gives back* ***reason that he may not delay***

Recūsat **quō minus morētur** (***he gives reason on-account-of-which he should delay not-so-much***); ***he refuses to delay*** (§§ 68 *a*, 150) [**-cūsā-** = **causa**]

Nōn recūsat **quō minus** eat (*he makes* ***no refusal whereby he shall go any less***); *he does* ***not refuse to go*** § 219, 1

Nōn recūsat **quīn** eat *he gives* ***no reason why he should not go; he does not refuse to go***

155. *a*. Object Clauses are retained with passive verbs.

Mē **nōmen** rogat *he asks me my* ***name*** (Direct Object retained

Ego **nōmen** rogor *I am asked my* ***name*** with the passive.)

Certior fit **eōs īre** (*he is made aware* ***that they are going***) *he is informed* ***that they are going*** § 230

b. Noun Clauses are used in various case relations.

Ā maleficiō nōn temperant *they do not refrain* ***from mischief***

Puerī sibi **nōn temperant, quīn** iniūriās īnferant *the boys* ***do not put restraint*** *upon themselves* ***on-account-of-which*** *they will* ***not*** *inflict injuries;* ***do not refrain from*** *inflicting* § 115 *b*

Servōs **dēterrent nē** frūmentum cōnferant *they* ***dissuade*** *slaves* ***so that*** *they will* ***not*** *bring grain;* ***keep*** *slaves* ***from*** *bringing grain*

Nōn dēterrentur, quīn frūmentum ferant *they are* ***not dissuaded from*** *bringing grain*

Retinentur, quō minus nōbīs iniūriās īnferant *they* ***are kept from*** *inflicting injuries upon us* § 74, 4, 6

Nōn retinentur, quīn nōbīs iniūriās īnferant *they* ***are not kept*** *from inflicting injuries upon us* § 230

156. *a.* **Simple Conditions**

Nothing implied. See § 138 *c.*

Indicative (or *Imperative*).

Sī eum rogō,
Quem sī rogō, } **venit**
Mē rogante,

if ***I ask*** *him, he* ***comes.***

Sī cōnsentiētis itūra sum
if you (***will***) *agree,* ***I shall go;***
sīn recūsābitis, īre **nōlō**
but-if *you refuse,* ***I will*** *not.*
Etsī vōs **vīdit**, tamen nōn **dīxit**
even-if he *yet he* ***did*** *not*
did *see you,* *say so*
Nisi **rogātus erit**, nōn **ībō**
unless he's asked *I'll not go.*

b. **Contingent Conditions**

Fulfillment regarded *possible.*

Present or *Perfect Subjunctive.*

Sī **rogētur,** veniat or
sī rogātus sit vēnerit
if he ***should*** *he* ***would***
be asked, *come* § 141 *b*

c. **Contrary to Fact or Unreal Conditions.** See § 138 *b.*

Imp. or *Plup. Subjunctive.*

Sī **rogārētur,** venīret § 137 *d*
were *he* ***asked,*** *he* ***would*** *come.*
Nisi **rogātus esset**, nōn vēnisset
had *he not* *he* ***wouldn't***
been asked, ***have come.***

157. *a.* Both Third and Fourth Declension nouns are formed on the *participial stems* of verbs. See § 163 *c.*

Supines are Fourth Declension *noun forms.* (Cf. § 129.)

Vocātūs audiō **Cōnātūs** tuōs compressī **Cōnātū** dēsistit
I hear ***calls*** *I foiled thy* ***attempts*** *desists* ***from-trying***

b. The *Accusative Singular* of Supines is used (chiefly after **mittere, venīre**, and **īre**) to denote *Purpose.* §§ 195 *d*, 196 *d*

Venit auxilium **rogātum** (Cf. **Domum** it **Rōmam** vēnit
comes ***to-ask*** *aid* § 61 *b* *goes* ***home*** *came* ***to-Rome***)

c. The Ablative often denotes in what respect, etc. § 190 *d*

Facile est **rogātū** (§ 74–16) (Cf. **Virtūte** praestāns
is easy (***in the asking***) ***to-ask*** *excelling* ***in-bravery***)

d. **In petendō** or **in petītiōne** — ***in*** or ***upon seeking***
In pāce petendā versātur or **in petītiōne pācis** versātur § 107 *b, c* — *is busied* or *active* ***in seeking peace***

e. Facile **factū** *easy* ***to do***
Miserābile **vīsū** *pitiable* ***to see***
Eius **rogātū** ***at his request***
Cōnārī dēsistunt *cease* ***to-try***
(Erat) **difficilī trānsitū** flūmen *a river* ***of difficult passage***

158. A *Gerundive and its noun* are treated as a single noun and declined together.

a. Pōns (faciendus) est *there is* ***a-bridge*** (***-to-be-built***)
b. Ratiō pontis (faciendī) *the plan* ***of*** (***-building-***) ***the-bridge***
c. Diēs pontī faciendō dictus *day set* ***for the-bridge-to-be-built***
a day set ***for-building-the-bridge***
d. Ad (pontem) faciendum tempus deest *time* ***to-build*** (***-the-bridge***) *is lacking; there-is-no-time for* ***building-a-bridge***
e. Pontem (faciendum) cūrat *he sees to* (***the-building-of-***) ***a-bridge***
f. Dē ponte (faciendō) dēspērat *despairs* ***of*** (***-building-***) ***a-bridge***

159. Purpose is expressed in many ways.

a. Lēgātōs mittit **pācem petītum** § 157 *b*
b. Lēgātōs **ad pācem petendam** mittit § 158 *d*
c. Lēgātōs **pācis petendae causā** mittit cf. § 129
d. Lēgātōs, **quī pācem petant,** mittit § 148 *g*
e. Lēgātōs, **utī pācem petant,** mittit § 148 *a*
f. Lēgātōs **dē pāce** (petendā) mittit § 58

He sends envoys ***to seek a settlement***

g. Equitēs eīs **auxiliō** mīsit *sent cavalry* ***for aid*** *to them* § 73 *e*

THE VERB

160. Every one who learns Latin thoroughly, sooner or later comes to summarize the essential facts about verbs in the way most convenient for himself and reduce them to the smallest possible compass, somewhat as follows:

Essential Facts

161. A Latin verb is built up of three kinds of elements:

1. *Stems* (containing the root of the word). § 163
2. *Mode and Tense Signs.* §§ 164–7
3. *Endings* (showing the person and number of the subject). § 168

The *Principal Parts* of verbs are necessary in order

(*a*) to know to which class the verb belongs, § 169

(*b*) to be able to get the stems, and thus

(*c*) build up any other form we wish to use.

A great deal of confusion is avoided by learning the list of **-iō** verbs given below, since they are the only verbs whose present stem cannot be obtained from the present infinitive active by dropping **-re.** § 126

162. Stems in **-i-** or **-iō-** verbs (Third Conjugation).

capiō, capere;[1] **-cipiō, -cipere** *take, catch*	captive, recipient
cupiō, cupere *wish, desire*	cupidity, Cupid
faciō, facere; **-ficiō, -ficere** *make, do, cause*	facility, proficient
fodiō, fodere *dig* (p.p. **fossus** *dug*)	foss, fossil
fugiō fugere *flee*	fugitive, refuge
iaciō, iacere; **-iciō, -icere** *throw, hurl*	abject, reject
-liciō, -licere *lure, entice*	elicit
pariō, parere *bring forth, bear*	parent, apparition
quatiō, quatere; **-cutiō, -cutere** *shake*	quash, concussion
rapiō, rapere; **-ripiō, -ripere** *snatch, seize*	rapid, rapine
sapiō, sapere; **-sipiō, -sipere** *know* (*by taste*)	sapid, insipid
gradior,[2] **gradī**; **-gredior, -gredī** *walk, go*	grade, ingredient
morior, morī *die, perish*	mortal, immortal
patior, patī; **-petior, -petī** *suffer, let, allow*	patient, perpetual

[1] **-i-** becomes **-e-** before **r.** [2] **-i-** disappears before **-ī.**

163. The Three Essential Parts

	a. To find the *Present Stem*, drop **-re**, **-rī**, or **-ī** from the Present Infinitive. § 126	*b.* To find the *Perfect Stem*, drop **-ī** from the Perf. Ind. Act. 1st person, sing.	*c.* To find the *Supine*[1] *Stem*, drop **-us**, **-a**, **-um** from the Perf. Part. or **-um** from Ac. Supine. § 157 *b*
vocō,	**vocāre**	**vocāvī**	**vocātus -a -um**
1	**vocā-**	**vocāv-** § 99	**vocāt-**
	call § 136	*having called*	*having been called*
§ 169	*be calling*	*have called*	*being called* § 99
cōnor	**cōnārī** § 127	——	**cōnātus -a -um**
1	**cōnā-** *try*	——[5]	**cōnāt-** *having tried*
videō	**vidēre**	**vīdī** *saw*	**vīsus -a -um** § 98
2	**vidē-** *see*	**vīd-** *have seen*	**vīs-** *having been seen*
vereor	**verērī**	——	**veritus -a -um** § 101
2	**verē-** *fear*	——[5]	**verit-** *having feared*
agō	**agere**	**ēgī** *did* Cf. § 101	**āctus -a -um**
3	**age-** *do*	**ēg-** *have done*	**āct-** (*having been*) *done*
ūtor	**ūtī**[2]	——	**ūsus -a -um** § 182 *b*
3	**ūte-** *use*	——[5]	**ūs-** *having used*
capiō	**capere**[3]	**cēpī** *took* § 192	**captus -a -um**
3 i	**capi-** *take*	**cēp-** *have taken*	**capt-** (*having been*) *taken*
patior	**patī**[4]	——	**passus -a -um**
3 i	**pati-** *let*	——[5]	**pass-** *having let*
audiō	**audīre**	**audīvī**	**audītus -a -um**
4	**audī-**	**audīv-**	**audīt-**
	hear	*have heard*	*having been heard*
potior	**potīrī**	——	**potītus -a -um** § 211
4	**potī-** *get*	——[5]	**potīt-** *having gotten*

[1] Also called the *Participial Stem*. [2] Restore **-e-**.
[3] Restore **-i-** from **-e-**. [4] Restore **-i-**; see § 162, note.
[5] Deponents (§ 182) have no Perf. stem.

164. **Indicative**

	I and II Conj.	III and IV Conj.	Leading Verbs in English Periphrases
Pres.	—	—	*am* —, *are* —, *is* —, *do* —
Imp.	-bā-	-bă-	*was* —, *were* —, *did* —, *-ed*, etc.
Fut.	-bi-	-ā- (1st sing.), -ē- (others)	*shall* —, *will* —
Perf.	— [1]	— [1]	(*am having* —) *have* —, *did* —, *-ed*
Plup.	-erā-	-erā-	(*was having* —) *had* —
Futp.	-eri-	-eri-	(*shall be having* —) *shall have* —

165. **Subjunctive**

	I Conj.	All Others	
Pres.	-ē-	-ā-	[3] *may* —, [3] *shall* —, [3] *will* —, etc.
Imp.	-rē- [2]	-rē- [2]	[3] *might* —, [3] *should* —, [3] *would* —
Perf.	-erī- [5]	-erī- [5]	[3] *should* —, [3] *would* — § 156 *b*, *c*
Plup.	-issē- [6]	-issē- [6]	(*were having* —) *had* —, etc.

166. **Imperative**

Pres.	—	—	*be* —, *do* —, *do be* —
Fut.	-tō-	-tō-	*shall* —

167. *a.* **Participles** (Adjectives)

	Active			Passive			Meaning
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*	
Pres.	-ns, -ntis,	-ns, -ntis,	-ns -ntis	§ 97			*-ing*
Perf.	§ 98			-tus, or -sus,	-ta, -sa,	-tum -sum	*-d*, *-ed*, *-t* [4] *-n*, *-ne*, *-en*
Fut.	-ūrus	-ūra,	-ūrum	-ndus,	-nda,	-ndum	*going to* —

[1] Perfect stem. [2] **-sē-** and **-lē-** in **-se** and **-le** verbs. [3] Sometimes.
[4] As in heard, burnt, seen, done, written. [5] **sī-**. [6] **essē-**.

168. **Endings — Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative**

	Subject Acting	*Subject Acted upon,* or *Acting on* or *for self*	*Meaning of the Endings*
Indicative Present, Future Perfect, and Future.[1]	**-ō**	**-or**	*I*
	-s	**-ris, -re**	*thou, (you)*
	-t	**-tur**	*he, she, it, there*
	-mus	**-mur**	*we*
	-tis	**-minī**	*you*
	-nt	**-ntur**	*they, there*
Subjunctive (all tenses); Indicative Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Future.[2]	**-m**	**-r**	*I*
	-s	**-re, -ris**	*thou, (you)*
	-t	**-tur**	*he, she, it, there*
	-mus	**-mur**	*we*
	-tis	**-minī**	*you*
	-nt	**-ntur**	*they, there*
Perfect Indicative only.	**-ī** [3]	(sum) [4]	*I*
	-istī	(es)	*thou, (you)*
	-it	(est)	*he, she, it, there*
	-imus	(sumus)	*we*
	-istis	(estis)	*you*
	-ērunt, -ēre	(sunt)	*they, there*
Present Imperative.	—	**-re**	*thou* § 173
	-te, etc.	**-minī,** etc.	*you, ye*

169. **Stem Vowels**

In the *First Conjugation* the present stem ends in **-ā-**.
In the *Second Conjugation* the present stem ends in **-ē-**.
In the *Third Conjugation* the present stem ends in **-e-** or **-i-**.
In the *Fourth Conjugation* the present stem ends in **-ī-**.

[1] First and Second Conjugations. [2] Third and Fourth Conjugations.
[3] A modified form of **sum, es, est, sumus, estis, sunt.**
[4] Separate words. §§ 99, 101

170. In combining the stems, mode and tense signs, and endings, the vowel changes must be carefully learned.

The signs **-bi** and **-eri-** (§ 164)

-bi- and **-eri-** become **-b-** and **-er-** before *another vowel;*

-bi- becomes **-be-** before **-re** and **-ris**;

-bi- becomes **-bu-** before **-nt** and **-ntur**.

The stem vowels **-ā-** and **-ē-**; **-ā-** and **-ē-** in tense signs

-ā- becomes **-a-** before **nd**, **nt**, and final **-m**, **-t**, or **-r**.

-ā- disappears before *another vowel.*

-ē- becomes **-e-** before **nd**, **nt**, or *another vowel.* § 28 *b*

-ē- becomes **-e-** before final **-m**, **-t**, or **-r**.

The stem vowels **-e-**, **-i-**, and **-ī-**

-e- disappears before *another vowel;*[1]

-e- remains unchanged before **r** and **nd**;

-e- becomes **-i-** before **m**, **s**, or **t**;

-e- becomes **-u-** before **-nt** and **-ntur** (sometimes before **-nd-**);

-e- becomes **-ē-** before **-bā-**;

-e- becomes **-ē-** before **-ns** and **-e-** before **-ntis**, etc. § 28 *a*

-i- disappears before **-ī** in the *Present Infinitive;*

-i- becomes **-e-** before **-r-** and *when final;*[1]

-i- becomes **-iu-** before **-nt** and **-ntur**; **-iē-** before **-bā-**;

-i- becomes **-ie-** (sometimes **-iu-** before **-nd-**);

-i- becomes **-iē-** before **-ns** and **-ie-** before **-ntis**, etc.

-ī- becomes **-i-** before *another vowel* (cf. al o § 183 *a*, *c*);

-ī- (not **-erī-** § 165) becomes **-iu-** before **-nt** and **-ntur**;

-ī- becomes **-iē-** before **-bā-**;

-ī- becomes **-ie-** (sometimes **-iu-**) before **-nd-**;

-ī- becomes **-iē-** before **-ns** and **-ie-** before **-ntis**, etc.

[1] In **ferre** the stem vowel **-e-** is lost before **r**, **s**, **t**, or *a vowel.* Final **-e** is also lost in the imperative forms, **dīc**, **dūc**, **fac**, **fer**. §§ 212–4; B. § 116, 3.

171. **Indicative**

	Active	Passive, Deponent
Pres.	Pres. Stem + **ō**, etc. § 168	Pres. Stem + **or**, etc.
Imp.	Pres. Stem + **bā** + **m**[1]	Pres. Stem + **bā** + **r**[1]
	First and Second Conjugations	
Fut.	Pres. Stem + **bi** + **ō**	Pres. Stem + **bi** + **or**
	Third and Fourth Conjugations	
	Pres. Stem + **ā** + **m** + **ē**[2] + **s**, etc.	Pres. Stem + **ā** + **r** + **ē**[2] + **re** or **ris**
Perf.	Perf. Stem + **ī**, etc.	P. P. and Pres. Ind. of **esse**
Plup.	Perf. Stem + **erā** + **m**	P. P. and Imp. Ind. of **esse**
Futp.	Perf. Stem + **eri** + **ō**	P. P. and Fut. Ind. of **esse**

172. **Subjunctive**

	First Conjugation § 137 *b*	
Pres.	Pres. Stem + **ē** + **m**, etc.	Pres. Stem + **ē** + **r**, etc.
	All Other Conjugations	
	Pres. Stem + **ā** + **m**	Pres. Stem + **ā** + **r**
Imp.	Pres. Stem + **rē**[3] + **m**	Pres. Stem + **rē**[3] + **r**
Perf.	Perf. Stem + **erī** + **m**	P. P. and Pres. Sub. of **esse**
Plup.	Perf. Stem + **issē** + **m**	P. P. and Imp. Sub. of **esse**

173. **Imperative**

Pres.	Pres. Stem	Pres. Stem + **re**
	Pres. Stem + **te**	Pres. Stem + **minī**
Fut.	Pres. Stem + **tō** § 183 *c*	Pres. Stem + **tor** § 191 *b*
	Pres. Stem + **tō**	Pres. Stem + **tor**
	Pres. Stem + **tōte**	——
	Pres. Stem + **ntō**	Pres. Stem + **ntor**

[1] § 168. [2] **-ē-** throughout except the first person singular.
[3] **-sē-** in **esse** and its compounds; **-lē-** in **velle**, **nōlle**, **mālle**.

174. **Participles** (Adjectives) § 97–104

		Active, Deponent			Passive, Deponent		
Pres.	Pres. Stem	+ns	-ns	-ns	—	—	—
		+ntis	-ntis	-ntis			
Perf.		—	—	—	Part. Stem	+us	-a	-um
						+ī	-ae	-ī
Fut.	Part. Stem	+ūrus	-ūra	-ūrum	Pres. Stem	+ndus	-nda	-ndum
		+ūrī	-ūrae	-ūrī		+ndī	-ndae	-ndī

175. **Gerund** (Noun) Pres. Stem + **ndī**, etc. § 129

176. **Supine** (Noun) Part. or Sup. Stem + **us, -ūs**, etc. § 81 *a*

177. **Infinitives** (Nouns)

	Active	Passive, Deponent
Pres.	Pres. Stem + **re**	Pres. Stem + **rī** (I, II, IV) Pres. Stem + **ī** (III Conj.)
Perf.	Perf. Stem + **isse**	P. P. and **esse**

	Active, Deponent	Passive
Fut.	Fut. Part. and **esse**	P. P. and **fore** § 183 *e*
	Ac. Supine and **īre**	Ac. Supine and **īrī** § 215 *g*

178. **Contractions**

-v-, -ve-, -vē-, and **-vi-** are often omitted; § 217 *c*.

179. The Active Voice represents the *subject* as *acting*.

Act. **Puer** librum domum **fert** *the* ***boy is-taking*** *the book home.*

180. *a*. The Passive Voice represents the *subject* as *acted upon*. The passive developed from the Middle Voice (which represents the *subject* as *acting upon itself*) as follows:

b. The reflexive pronoun **sē** *self* was annexed to active verbs, as fert *is-carrying*, making * fertise *is-carrying-him-*

self, which became (* fertere, then * ferter, then) fertur; -s- between vowels becoming -r-; cf. "was" and "were," "us" and "our" (formerly "ure," then "oure").

c. Fertur had to mean not only *he-carries-**himself*** or *rushes*, but also *he-**is** carried* (by something or somebody), *e.g.*

Mid. Puer in domum fertur *the boy takes-**himself** to the house.*
Pass. Liber ā puerō fertur *a book is-being-brought **by** the boy.*

181. *a.* But sē reappears elsewhere in the sentence, as in

Puer sē domum cōnfert *the boy is-betaking-**himself** to his home.*
Sē parātum arbitrātur (*for-himself*) *he considers **himself** ready.*

b. Middle forms still replace sē in some verbs.

Domōs revertuntur
(*turn-**themselves**-back home*),
*they return to **their** homes.*

In flūmine lavātur
(*he washes-**self** in the river*),
*he **bathes** in the river.*

Galeam induitur
*he puts a helmet **on-self**,*
*he puts **his** helmet on.*

Gladium cingitur
*he girds a sword **on-himself**,*
*he girds **his** sword on.*

182. *a.* Deponent verbs have lost the active forms.

Inimīcōs verētur
*he dreads the enemies **down-in-his-heart*** or *he fears **his** enemies.*

Librīs ūtitur
*he avails-**himself** of books,*
*he enjoys-**himself** with books,*
*makes-**use of*** or *uses books.*

Graditur
*he is-moving-**himself** gradually,*
is-taking-steps, comes, goes.

Gladiō potītur
*makes-**himself**-able **with** a sword,*
*he takes **possession of** a sword,*
*he **gets** hold **of*** or *gets a sword.*

b. The verbs, ūtī *help-**self*** and potīrī *make-**self**-able*, and a few others take the Ablative Case. See Int. 5, *i*; also § 56, 6.

183. sum, esse, fuī, —— possum, posse, potuī, ——
am be was been am able be able was able

PRESENT

Ind. a.	*Sub.*	*Ind. b.*	*Sub.*
sum * *am*	sim *I be, may be*	possum *I can*	possim *be able,*
es *art*	sīs *thou be*	potes *thou canst*	possīs *may*
est *is*	sit *he be* § 137 *c*	potest *he can*	possit
sumus *are*	sīmus *we be*	possumus *we can*	possīmus
estis *are*	sītis *you be*	potestis *you can*	possītis
sunt *are*	sint *they be* § 28 *b*	possunt *they can*	possint

IMPERFECT (continuing in the past)

eram *was*	essem *were* [1]	poteram *could* or	possem *might,*
erās *wast*	essēs *were*	poterās *was*	possēs *could* or
erat *was*	esset *were*	poterat *able*	posset *were* [2]
erāmus *were*	essēmus *were*	poterāmus	possēmus *able*
erātis *were*	essētis *were*	poterātis	possētis
erant [3] *were*	essent [3] *were*	poterant [4]	possent [4]

FUTURE

erō *I shall be* cf. § 170 -bi-		poterō *shall be able*	
eris *thou wilt be*		poteris *wilt be able*	
erit *he will be*	§ 156 *a*	poterit *will be able*	§ 156 *a*
erimus *we will be*		poterimus *shall be able*	
eritis *you will be*		poteritis *will be able*	
erunt *they will be*		poterunt *will be able*	

[1] Sometimes *might be, should be,* or *would be;* [2] *might be able, should be able, would be able.* [3] Note that **-s-** of the stem **es-** becomes **-r-** between vowels; cf. the English *is* and *are, was* and *were.* [4] Note that the element **pot-** *able* becomes **pos-** before **-s-**; **ts** becomes **ss** or **s** in Latin.

* Forms underlined are the *Principal Parts* (§ 161). Note that, both in meaning and use, they correspond to the Principal Parts of English verbs, but that the meaning of the Latin forms is broader. See §§ 98–9 : 101, 121–3; 127–135.

c.	PERFECT (finished in the past)	*d.*
fuī *I was* [1]	fuerim *were* [1]	potuī *I could* [2] potuerim *could* [2]
fuistī *wast*	fuerīs *were*	potuistī *couldst* potuerīs
fuit *was*	fuerit *were* § 28 *b*	potuit *could* potuerit § 156 *b*
fuimus *were*	fuerīmus *were*	potuimus *could* potuerīmus
fuistis *were*	fuerītis *were*	potuistis *could* potuerītis
fuērunt or fuēre *were*	fuerint *were*	potuērunt or potuēre *could* potuerint

PLUPERFECT § 156 *c*

fueram *had*	fuissem *had been*	potueram *had*	potuissem *had*
fuerās *been*	fuissēs	potuerās *been*	potuissēs *been*
fuerat	fuisset	potuerat *able*	potuisset *able*
fuerāmus	fuissēmus	potuerāmus	potuissēmus
fuerātis	fuissētis	potuerātis	potuissētis
fuerant	fuissent	potuerant	potuissent

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō *I shall have been*		potuerō *I shall have been able*	
fueris		potueris	
fuerit	§ 156 *a*	potuerit	§ 156 *a*
fuerimus		potuerimus	
fueritis		potueritis	
fuerint		potuerint	

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	es *be (thou)*	*Fut.*	estō [4]	estōte [4]
	este *be (ye)*		estō [5]	suntō [5] § 173

PARTICIPLES (Adjectives)

Pres.	— — ēns *a being* [3]	potēns -ns -ns (*being*) *able*	
Fut.	futūrus -a -um		§§ 84, 102, -se

[1] or *have been*; [2] or *have been able*.
[3] In Eng. **entity**.
[4] *Thou shalt be, ye shall be.*
[5] *He shall be, they shall be.*

e. INFINITIVE (Noun)

Pres.	esse (*to*) *be, being*	posse (*to*) *be able, being able*
Perf.	fuisse (*to*) *have been*	potuisse (*to*) *have been able*
Fut.	futūrus esse or fore [1]	——

184. dō, dare, dedī, datus, §§ 98, 121 *b*, 128
give gave given

INDICATIVE

Act.	*Pass.*
dat	datur
dabat	dabātur [2]
dabit	dabitur
dedit	datus est
dederat	datus erat
dederit	datus erit

SUBJUNCTIVE

det	dētur
daret	darētur
dederit	datus sit
dedisset	datus esset

IMPERATIVE

dā,[3] date, etc., cf. § 189

PARTICIPLES (Adjectives)

dāns § 97	datus § 98
datūrus § 102	dandus § 104

GERUND (Noun)	GERUNDIVE (Adj.)
dare *giving*	——
dandī § 129	dandī -ae -ī

SUPINE (Noun)

Ac.	datum	datum ībat *was going to give*
Ab.	datū § 157 *b*, *c*	

INFINITIVE (Noun)

Pres.	dare (*to*) *give*	darī (*to*) *be put*
Perf.	dedisse	datus esse
Fut.	datūrus esse	datus fore or
	datum īre	datum īrī

Cf. §§ 103 *d*, 215 *g*

[1] *to be going to be* (the only Fut. Inf. having a single word form), cf. § 130 *b*.

[2] The only short vowel in Latin before **-bā-** or **-bi-**; the only short **a** in Latin verbs before **-mus -tis** or before **-tur -mur -minī** occur in the forms of **dare** and its compound **circum**dare.

[3] Only the forms **dās** *givest* and **dā** *give* (*thou*) have **-ā-** in the stem.

185. *a.* **dēsum, deesse ; absum, abesse,** etc. (see § 183).
am lacking **3** *am away* **ab 6** § 221 *b*
fail § 56, 3 *am absent* or *wanting*

PRESENT

Ind. *a.*	*Sub.*	*Ind.* *b.*	*Sub.*
dēsum *fail*[1]	dēsim *fail*	absum *am away*	absim *be away*
dees *failest*	dēsīs *fail*	abes *art away*	absīs *be away*
deest *fails*	dēsit *fail*	abest *is away*	absit *be away*
dēsumus *fail*	dēsīmus *fail*	absumus *are away*	absīmus §147*a*
deestis *fail*	dēsītis *fail*	abestis *are away*	absītis
dēsunt *fail*	dēsint *fail*	absunt *are away*	absint

p. 10, l. 18

IMPERFECT (continuing in the past)

deeram *failed*	deessem *failed*[2]	aberam *was*	abessem *were*[3]
deerās	deessēs	aberās *away*	abessēs *away*
deerat § 156 *a*	deesset § 156 *c*	aberat § 147 *b*	abesset § 147 *a*
deerāmus	deessēmus	aberāmus	abessēmus
deerātis	deessētis	aberātis	abessētis
deerant	deessent	aberant § 221	abessent

FUTURE

deerō *shall fail*		aberō *shall be away*	
deeris *wilt fail*		aberis *wilt be away*	
deerit *will fail*	§ 156 *a*	aberit *will be away*	§ 156 *a*
deerimus *shall fail*		aberimus *shall be away*	
deeritis *will fail*		aberitis *will be away*	
deerunt *will fail*		aberunt *will be away*	

[1] Note that to form the compounds of **esse** it is necessary merely to prefix the prepositions **ā, ab, dē, in, inter,** etc., to its various forms. **dē-** becomes **de-** and **prō-** becomes **prōd-,** before **e-**. [2] *might fail, should be lacking, would be lacking* (to), etc. [3] *might be away, should be wanting, would be absent, were to be away,* etc. § 138 *a, f*

c.	PERFECT (finished in the past)		*d.*
dēfuī *failed*[1]	dēfuerim *failed*[1]	āfuī *was away*[2]	āfuerim
dēfuistī	dēfuerīs § 147 *g*	āfuistī	āfuerīs
dēfuit	dēfuerit § 156 *b*	āfuit	āfuerit
dēfuimus	dēfuerīmus §149	āfuimus	āfuerīmus
dēfuistis	dēfuerītis	āfuistis	āfuerītis
dēfuērunt or dēfuēre	dēfuerint § 28 *b*	āfuērunt or āfuēre	āfuerint

PLUPERFECT

dēfueram	dēfuissem *had failed*	āfueram	āfuissem
dēfuerās	dēfuissēs	āfuerās	āfuissēs
dēfuerat	dēfuisset § 156 *c*	āfuerat	āfuisset § 156 *c*
dēfuerāmus	dēfuissēmus	āfuerāmus	āfuissēmus
dēfuerātis	dēfuissētis	āfuerātis	āfuissētis
dēfuerant	dēfuissent	āfuerant	āfuissent

FUTURE PERFECT

dēfuerō *shall have failed*	āfuerō *shall have been away*
dēfueris, etc.	āfueris, etc.

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	dees *be (thou) lacking*	abes *be (thou) away*
	deeste *fail (ye)*, etc.	abeste *be (ye) away*, etc.

PARTICIPLES (Adjective)

Pres.	——	absēns § 97
Fut.	dēfutūrus -a -um	āfutūrus § 102, -se

INFINITIVE (Noun)

Pres.	deesse (*to*) *be lacking*	abesse (*to*) *be away*
Perf.	dēfuisse	āfuisse § 99
Fut.	dēfutūrus esse, dēfore[3]	āfutūrus esse, ābfore[3]

[1] *have failed, did fail.* [2] *have been away.* [3] § 183 *e*

186. **volō, velle, voluī,** — ***will***, *(to) wish, be willing* § 130
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, — *will* ***not***, *not wish, be unwilling*
mālō, mālle, māluī, — *will* ***rather***, *prefer*

INDICATIVE

Pres.	volō *I will*	nōlō *I will not*	mālō *I will rather*
	vīs *thou wilt*	nōn vīs *wilt not*	māvīs *preferest*
	vult *he will*	nōn vult *will not*	māvult *prefers*
	volumus *we will*	nōlumus etc.	mālumus etc.
	vultis *you will*	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt *you will*	nōlunt cf. § 170, -e-	mālunt § 137
Imp.	volēbam *I would*	nōlēbam *wouldn't*	mālēbam *preferred*
Fut.	volam *shall wish*	nōlam § 164	mālam
Perf.	voluī [1] *I would*	nōluī *would not*	māluī *preferred*
Plup.	volueram	nōlueram [1]	mālueram
Futp.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō [1]

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	velim *be willing*	nōlim §§ 140–1	mālim *prefer*
Imp.	vellem *wished*	nōllem § 156 *b, c*	māllem *preferred*
Perf.	voluerim [1]	nōluerim	māluerim
Plup.	voluissem	nōluissem [1]	māluissem

INFINITIVE (Noun)

Pres.	velle *(to) will*	nōlle *wish not*	mālle *(to) prefer*
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse § 121 *a*	māluisse

Part. volēns *willing;* nōlēns *unwilling.* *Imv.* nōlī,[2] nōlīte *don't*

[1] All verbs are perfectly regular in the Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect tenses. The forms of esse and its compounds may be used as a model for all verbs in these tenses. [2] § 141 *a*.

187. Prin. Parts: vocō, **vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus**

INDICATIVE

	Active	*Passive*
Pres.	**vocō** *I call, am calling*	**vocor** *I am called*
§ 171	**vocās**	**vocāris**
	vocat § 136	**vocātur** § 136
	vocāmus	**vocāmur**
	vocātis	**vocāminī**
	vocant	**vocantur**
Imp.	vocābam *I* ***was*** *calling*	vocābar *I* ***was*** *called*
§ 171	vocābās	vocābāre, vocābāris
	vocābat	vocābātur
	vocābāmus	vocābāmur
	vocābātis	vocābāminī
	vocābant	vocābantur
Fut.	vocābō *I* ***shall*** *call*	vocābor *I* ***shall*** *be called*
§ 171	vocābis	vocābere, vocāberis
	vocābit	vocābitur
	vocābimus	vocābimur
	vocābitis	vocābiminī
	vocābunt	vocābuntur
Perf.	**vocāvī** *I called, have*	**vocātus**[1] sum *I was called*
§ 171	**vocāvistī** *called*	**vocātus** es
§ 178	**vocāvit**	**vocātus** est
	vocāvimus	**vocātī** sumus
	vocāvistis	**vocātī** estis
	vocāvērunt,[2] **vocāvēre**	**vocātī** sunt

[1] Agrees with the subject in gender and number.

[2] **-runt** is a modified form of **sunt** § 168, note 3.

Note that Indicative and Subjunctive forms have *only twenty-two* different endings. Learn the stem (§ 163) used in each tense, the signs of the tenses and the vowel changes in the same.

188. English: (*to*) ***call, called, called***

SUBJUNCTIVE

	Active	*Passive*
Pres.	vocem *I call*	vocer *I be called*
§ 172	vocēs	vocēre, vocēris
	vocet *he call,* etc. § 139	vocētur *he be called*
	vocēmus § 141	vocēmur
	vocētis	vocēminī
	vocent	vocentur
Imp.	vocārem *I called*	vocārer *I were called*
§ 172	vocārēs	vocārēre, vocārēris
	vocāret	vocārētur
	vocārēmus	vocārēmur
	vocārētis	vocārēminī
	vocārent	vocārentur

The Subjunctive uses *only the second set of endings,* § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e, f*; and 183–6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§137 *b, c*), always change **-bā-** to **-rē-**, **-erā-** to **-issē-**, and **erā-** to **essē-**.

Always change **-bi-** to **-rē-**, **-eri-** to **-issē-**, **eri-** to **essē-**, if the writer's *standpoint* is *past* (see § 147 *g*).

(1st Conj.) Change **-bi-** to **-ē-**, **-eri-** to **-erī-**, **eri-** to **sī-**, if the writer's *standpoint* is *present* (see § 147 *f*).

Perf.	vocāverim *I have called*	vocātus	**sim** *I have been*	
§ 172	vocāverīs	vocātus	**sīs**	*called*
§ 178	vocāverit	vocātus	**sit**	§ 156 *b*
	vocāverīmus	vocātī	**sīmus**	
	vocāverītis	vocātī	**sītis**	
	vocāverint	vocātī	**sint**	

VOWEL CHANGES IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

-ā- disappears before *another vowel.*

-ā- and **-ē-** become short before **nt** and before *final* **-m**, **-t**, or **-r**.

-bi- and **-eri-** become **-b-** and **-er-** before **-o**.

-bi- becomes **-be-** before **-r** and **-bu-** before **-nt**. § 170

187. INDICATIVE (*Continued*)

	Active		*Passive*	
Plup.	vocāveram	*I* ***had*** *called*	vocātus	**eram** *I* ***had*** *been*
§ 171	vocāverās		vocātus	**erās** *called*
§ 178	vocāverat		vocātus	**erat**
	vocāverāmus		vocātī	**erāmus**
	vocāverātis		vocātī	**erātis**
	vocāverant		vocātī	**erant**
Futp.	vocāverō	*I* ***shall*** *have*	vocātus	**erō** *I* ***shall*** *have*
§ 171	vocāveris	*called*	vocātus	**eris** *been called*
§ 178	vocāverit		vocātus	**erit**
	vocāverimus		vocātī	**erimus**
	vocāveritis		vocātī	**eritis**
	vocāverint		vocātī	**erunt**

190. *a.* PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Pres.	vocāns	-ns	-ns	——	——	——
	vocantis	*calling*				
Perf.	——			vocātus, vocāta, vocātum (*having been*) ***called***		
Fut.	vocātūrus	-ūra	-ūrum	vocandus -nda -ndum (*deserving*) ***to be*** *called*		
	going to *call*					

d. SUPINE (Noun) § 176

	Sing.	*Plu.*	
N.	vocātus	vocātūs	**Eōrum** vocandōrum **facultās**
G.	vocātūs	vocātuum	***opportunity*** *to call them*
D.	vocātuī	vocātibus	**Ad** eōs vocandōs **parātus**
Ac.	vocātum	vocātūs	***ready*** *to call them*
V.	vocātus	vocātūs	**Dē** eīs vocandīs **dēspērat**
Ab.	vocātū	vocātibus	***despairs of*** *calling them*

188. SUBJUNCTIVE (*Continued*)

	Active	*Passive*	
Plup.	vocāvissem *I* ***had*** *called*	vocātus	essem *I* ***had*** *been*
§ 172	vocāvissēs	vocātus	essēs *called*
§ 178	vocāvisset	vocātus	esset § 156 *e*
	vocāvissēmus	vocātī	essēmus
	vocāvissētis	vocātī	essētis
	vocāvissent	vocātī	essent

189. IMPERATIVE

Pres.	**voc**ā *call thou*	**voc**āre *be thou called*
§ 173	**voc**āte *call ye*	**voc**āminī *be ye called*
Fut.	voc**ā**tō *thou shalt call*	voc**ā**tor *thou shalt be called*

190. *b.* GERUND (Noun) § 129 *c.* GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 158

	Singular	*Singular*		
N.	**voc**āre *to call; calling*	——	——	——
G.	voc**a**ndī *of calling, to call*	voc**a**ndī	**-nd**ae	**-nd**ī
D.	voc**a**ndō (*for*) *calling*	voc**a**ndō	**-nd**ae	**-nd**ō
Ac.	voc**a**ndum, **voc**āre *calling*	voc**a**ndum	**-nd**am	**-nd**um
	ad voca**ndum** *to call*	——		
Ab.	voc**a**ndō *by calling*, etc.	voc**a**ndō	**-nd**ā	**-nd**ō

		Plural		
	Spatium voca**ndī est** *there is* ***time to*** *call*	voc**a**ndōrum	**-nd**ārum	**-nd**ōrum
	Eōs vocā**tum vēnit** § 157 *he* ***came to*** *call them*	voc**a**ndīs	**-nd**īs	**-nd**īs
		voc**a**ndōs	**-nd**ās	**-nd**a, etc.

e. INFINITIVE (Noun) § 177

Pres.	**voc**āre (*to*) *call, be calling*	**voc**ārī (*to*) *be called*	§ 127
Perf.	**voc**āvisse (*to*) *have called*	**voc**ātus esse	§ 99
Fut.	voc**ā**tūrus esse } *be* ***going***	voc**ā**tus **fore** } *be* ***going to***	
§215 *g*	voc**ā**tum **īre** } *to call*	voc**ā**tum **īrī** } *be called*	

The stem vowel -ā- becomes short before -nd and -nt. § 28 *b*

191. *a.* cōnor, cōnārī, ——, cōnātus *exert self, attempt*

INDICATIVE

	Active	*Deponent*
Pres.		cōnor *I exert myself, try*
Imp.		cōnābar *I tried, was trying*
Fut.	§ 171	cōnābor *I shall try*
Perf.	§§ 100–1	cōnātus sum *I (have) tried*
Plup.		cōnātus eram *I had tried*
Futp.		cōnātus erō *shall have tried*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.		cōner *I try, may try,* etc.
Imp.	§ 172	cōnārer *I tried, should try*
Perf.	§ 156 *b, c*	cōnātus sim *I (have) tried*
Plup.		cōnātus essem *I had tried*

b. IMPERATIVE

Pres.		cōnāre *exert thyself, try*
	§ 173	cōnāminī *exert yourselves*
Fut.		cōnātor *thou shalt try*
		cōnātor *he shall try*
		cōnantor *they shall try*

c. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

Pres.	cōnāns -āns -āns cōnantis *trying*	——
Perf.	——	cōnātus -a -um *having tried*
Fut.	cōnātūrus -ūra -ūrum *going to try*	cōnandus -nda -ndum (*deserving*) *to be tried*

d. Gerund (Noun) § 175		*e.* Gerundive (Adjective) § 104
N.	cōnārī *to try, trying*	——
G.	cōnandī *to try, of trying*	cōnandī -ndae -ndī *of trying*

Supine (Noun) § 157		
N.	cōnātus	cōnātūs
G.	cōnātūs	cōnātuum
D.	cōnātuī	cōnātibus
Ac.	cōnātum	cōnātūs
Ab.	cōnātū	cōnātibus

Cōnātūs tuōs compressī *I put down your attempts*

Cōnātum eunt *are going* ***to try***

Cōnātū dēsistunt *they leave off* (***from***) ***trying***

f. Infinitive (Noun) § 176

Pres.		cōnārī (*to*) *try, trying*
Perf.		**cōnātus** esse (*to*) *have tried*
Fut.	cōnātūrus esse (*to*) *be* ***going*** *to try*	——

Legiōnāriī Mīlitēs.

192. Prin. Parts: videō, **vidēre, vīdī, vīsus**

INDICATIVE

	Active	*Passive*
Pres.	**videō** *I see, am seeing*	**videor** *I am seen, seem*
§ 171	**vidēs**	**vidēris**
	videt § 136	**vidētur** § 136
	vidēmus	**vidēmur**
	vidētis	**vidēminī**
	vident	**videntur**
Imp.	vidēbam *I was seeing*	vidēbar *I was seen*
§ 171	vidēbās	vidēbāre, vidēbāris
	vidēbat	vidēbātur
	vidēbāmus	vidēbāmur
	vidēbātis	vidēbāminī
	vidēbant	vidēbantur
Fut.	vidēbō *I shall see*	vidēbor *I shall be seen*
§ 171	vidēbis	vidēbere, vidēberis
	vidēbit	vidēbitur
	vidēbimus	vidēbimur
	vidēbitis	vidēbiminī
	vidēbunt	vidēbuntur
Perf.	**vīdī** *I saw, have seen*	**vīsus**[1] sum *I was seen* or
§ 171	**vīdistī**	**vīsus** es *seemed*
	vīdit	**vīsus** est
	vīdimus	**vīsī** sumus
	vīdistis[2]	**vīsī** estis[2]
	vīdērunt, vīdēre	**vīsī** sunt

[1] Agrees with the subject in gender and number.

[2] **-istis** = **estis**, cf. § 213, note 2.

Note that **vidēre** has exactly the same endings as **vocāre** and the same tense signs except in the Present Sub. See note, § 187.

193. English: (*to*) ***see, saw, seen***

SUBJUNCTIVE

	Active	*Passive*
Pres.	videam *I see*	vide**ar** *I be seen*
§ 172	videās *thou see*	videāre, videāris
	videat *he see* § 139	videātur *he be seen*
	videāmus § 141	videāmur
	videātis	videāminī
	videant	videantur
Imp.	vidērem *I saw, should*	vidērer *I were seen*, etc.
§ 172	vidērēs *see*, etc.	vidērēre, vidērēris
	vidēret	vidērētur
	vidērēmus	vidērēmur
	vidērētis	vidērēminī
	vidērent	vidērentur

The Subjunctive uses *only the second set of endings*, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e*, *f*; and 183–6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 *b*, *c*), always change **-bā-** to **-rē-**, **-erā-** to **-issē-**, and **erā-** to **essē-**.

Always change **-bi-** to **-rē-**, **-eri-** to **issē-**, **eri-** to **essē-**, if the writer's *standpoint* is *past* (see § 147 *g*).

(2d Conj.) Change **-bi-** to **-ā-**, **-eri-** to **-erī-**, and **eri-** to **sī-**, if the writer's *standpoint* is *present* (see § 147 *f*).

Perf.	vīderim *I have seen*	vīsus	**sim** *I have been*	
§ 172	vīderīs	vīsus	**sīs**	*seen*
	vīderit	vīsus	**sit**	§ 156 *b*
	vīderīmus	vīsī	**sīmus**	
	vīderītis	vīsī	**sītis**	
	vīderint	vīsī	**sint**	

VOWEL CHANGES IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

-ē- becomes short before *another vowel.*

-ā- and **-ē-** become *short* before **nt** and *final* **-m**, **-t**, or **-r**.

-bi- and **-eri-** become **-b-** and **-er** before **o**.

-bi- becomes **-be-** before **-r** and **-bu-** before **-nt**. § 170.

192. INDICATIVE (*Continued*)

	Active	*Passive*
Plup.	vīderam *I had seen*	vīsus eram *I had been seen*
§ 171	vīderās	vīsus erās
	vīderat	vīsus erat
	vīderāmus	vīsī erāmus
	vīderātis	vīsī erātis
	vīderant	vīsī erant
Futp.	vīderō *I shall have seen*	vīsus erō *I shall have been seen*
§ 171	vīderis	vīsus eris
	vīderit	vīsus erit
	vīderimus	vīsī erimus
	vīderitis	vīsī eritis
	vīderint	vīsī erunt

195. *a.* PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Pres.	vidēns, videntis	-ns	-ns	——	——	—
	seeing					
Perf.	——			vīsus	vīsa	vīsum
				(*having been*) *seen*		
Fut.	vīsūrus	-ūrā	-ūrum	videndus	-nda	-ndum
	going to see			(*deserving*) *to be seen*		

d. SUPINE (Noun) § 176

	Sing.	*Plur.*	
N.	vīsus *sight*	vīsūs	Mātris videndae facultās
G.	vīsūs	vīsuum	*opportunity to see mother*
D.	vīsuī	vīsibus	Diēs mātrī videndae dicta
Ac.	vīsum	vīsūs	*day set to see mother*
V.	vīsus	vīsūs	Miserābile vīsū § 157
Ab.	vīsū	vīsibus	*pitiable to look upon*

193. SUBJUNCTIVE (*Continued*)

	Active		*Passive*	
Plup.	vīdissem *I* ***had*** *seen*	vīsus	essem *I* ***had*** *been seen*	
§ 172	vīdissēs	vīsus	essēs	§ 156 *c*
	vīdisset	vīsus	esset	
	vīdissēmus	vīsī	essēmus	
	vīdissētis	vīsī	essētis	
	vīdissent	vīsī	essent	

194. IMPERATIVE

Pres.	**vidē** *see thou*	**vidēre** *be thou seen*
§ 173	**vidēte** *see ye*	**vidēminī** *be ye seen*
Fut.	vidētō *thou shalt see*	vidētor *thou shalt be seen*

195. *b.* GERUND (Noun) § 175 *c.* GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 158

	Singular		*Singular*	
N.	vidēre *to see, seeing*	——	——	——
G.	videndī *of seeing, to see*	videndī	-ndae	-ndī
D.	videndō *for) seeing*	videndō	-ndae	-ndō
Ac.	videndum, vidēre *seeing*	videndum	-ndam	-ndum
	ad videndum *to see*	——		
Ab.	videndō *by seeing*, etc.	videndō	-ndā	-ndō
	Videndī **spatium** datur		*Plural*	
	time to see is given	videndōrum	-ndārum	-ndōrum
	Hōra videndō **dicta** est	videndīs	-ndīs	-ndīs
	the hour is set to see	videndōs	-ndās	-nda, etc.

INFINITIVE (Noun) §§ 177, 127

Pres.	**vidēre** (*to*) *see, be seeing*	**vidērī** (*to*) *be seen* or *seem*
Perf.	**vīdisse** (*to*) *have seen*	**vīsus** esse (*to*) *have been seen*
Fut.	vīsūrus esse } *be* ***going to***	vīsus **fore** } *be* ***going to***
§ 215 *g*	vīsum īre } *see*	vīsum īrī } *be seen*

The stem vowel **-ē-** becomes *short* before **-nd** and **-nt**.

196. *a.* vereor, **verērī**, ——, **veritus** *reverence, dread*

INDICATIVE

	Active	*Deponent*
Pres.		**vereor** *I am afraid, fear*
Imp.		**verēbar** *was afraid, feared*
Fut.	§ 171	**verēbor** *I shall fear*
Perf.	§ 100–1	**veritus** sum *I (have) feared*
Plup.		**veritus eram** *I had feared*
Futp.		**veritus erō** *shall have feared*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.		**verear** *I fear, may fear,* etc.
Imp.	§ 171	**verērer** *feared, might fear*
Perf.	§ 156 *b, c*	**veritus sim** *I (have) feared*
Plup.		**veritus essem** *I had feared*

b. IMPERATIVE

Pres.		**verēre** *fear (thou), revere*
	§ 173	**verēminī** *fear (ye), dread*
Fut.		**verētor** *thou shalt fear*
		verētor *he shall fear*
		verentor *they shall fear*

c. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

Pres.	**verēns -ēns -ēns** —— **verentis** *fearing*	
Perf.	——	**veritus** -a -um *having feared*
Fut.	**veritūrus -ūra -ūrum** *going to fear*	**verendus -nda -ndum** (*deserving*) *to be feared*

	d. Gerund (Noun) § 175	*e.* Gerundive (Adjective) § 104
N.	verērī *to fear, fearing*	——
G.	verendī *of fearing, to fear*	verendī -ndae -ndī

Supine (Noun) § 157

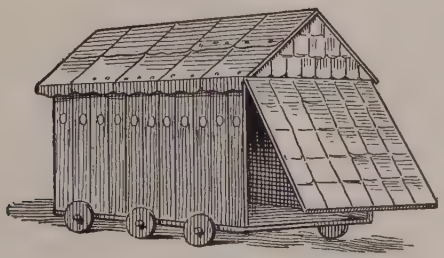
N.	——
G	——
D.	——
Ac.	[veritum]
Ab.	[veritū]

Many case forms of supines are wanting. In many verbs, only forms in **-um** or **-ū** are found.

f.	Infinitive (Noun) § 177
Pres.	verērī (*to*) *fear, be afraid*
Perf.	veritus esse (*to*) *have feared*
Fut.	veritūrus esse (*to*) *be* ***going*** *to fear* ——

Examples

Nē eius animum offendat **verētur** ***fears*** *he* ***will*** *offend his mind*
Nē eum offenderet verēbātur *feared that he* ***might*** *offend him*
Nōnne id verēbere? ***will*** *you* ***not*** *fear that?*
Veritus est **ut** mē vidēret *he feared* ***that*** *he would****n't*** *see me*
Īnsidiās **veritus** (*because he*) ***feared*** *an ambush*
Verendum mihi nōn erit *I'll not* ***have to*** *fear* § 106 *d*



Vīnea.

197. Prin. Parts.: agō, **age**re, **ēg**ī, **āc**tus

INDICATIVE

	Active	*Passive*
Pres.	**ag**ō *I drive, am driving*	**ag**or *I am driven*
§ 171	**agi**s	**age**ris
	agit § 136	**agi**tur
	agimus	**agi**mur
	agitis	**agi**minī
	agunt	**agu**ntur
Imp.	agēbam *I was driving*	agēbar *I was driven*
§ 171	agēbās	agēbāre, agēbāris
	agēbat	agēbātur
	agēbāmus	agēbāmur
	agēbātis	agēbāminī
	agēbant	agēbantur
Fut.	agam *I shall drive*	agar *I shall be driven*
§ 171	agēs	agēre, agēris
	aget	agētur
	agēmus	agēmur
	agētis	agēminī
	agent	agentur
Perf.	**ēg**ī *I drove, I have driven*	**āc**tus[1] sum *I have been driven*
§ 171	**ēg**istī	**āc**tus es
	ēgit[2]	**āc**tus est[2]
	ēgimus	**āc**tī sumus
	ēgistis	**āc**tī estis
	ēgērunt, **ēg**ēre	**āc**tī sunt

[1] Agrees with the subject in gender and number. [2] **-it** and **-erit** are modified forms of **est** and **sit**; **ēgit** = *is having driven* = *has driven* or *drove*, etc. Cf. §§ 99, 183, note 3.

Note that **agere** has exactly the same tense signs as **vidēre** and **vocāre** except in the Future Ind. Cf. § 192.

198. English : (*to*) ***drive, drove, driven,*** or (*to*) ***do, did, done***

SUBJUNCTIVE

	Active	*Passive*
Pres.	agam *I drive*	agar *I be driven*
§ 172	agās *thou drive*	agāre, agāris
	agat *he drive* § 139	agātur *he be driven*
	agāmus § 141	agāmur
	agātis	agāminī
	agant	agantur
Imp.	agerem *I drove*	agerer *I were driven*
§ 172	agerēs	agerēre, agerēris
	ageret	agerētur
	agerēmus	agerēmur
	agerētis	agerēminī
	agerent	agerentur

The Subjunctive uses *only the second set of endings*, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e*, *f*; and 183–6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 *b*, c), always change **-bā-** to **-rē-**, **-erā-** to **-issē-**, and **erā-** to **essē-**.

Always change **-ē-** to **-rē-**, **-eri-** to **-issē-**, **eri-** to **essē-**, if the writer's *standpoint* is *past* (see § 147 *g*).

(3d and 4th Conj.) Change **-ē-** to **-ā-**, **-eri-** to **-erī-**, and **eri-** to **sī-** if the writer's *standpoint* is *present* (see § 147 *f*).

Perf.	**ēgerim** *I have driven*	**āctus**	**sim** *I have been driven*	
§ 172	**ēgerīs**	**āctus**	**sīs**	§ 156 *b*
	ēgerit[2]	**āctus**	**sit**[2]	
	ēgerīmus	**āctī**	**sīmus**	
	ēgerītis	**āctī**	**sītis**	
	ēgerint	**āctī**	**sint**	

VOWEL CHANGES IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

-e- disappears before *another vowel.*

-e- becomes **-i-** before **m**, **s**, or **t** ; **-u-** before **nt**.

-e- becomes **ĕ** before **b**.

-ā- and **-ē-** become *short* before **-nt** or *final* **-m**, **-t**, or **-r**. § 170

197. INDICATIVE (*Continued*)

	Active		*Passive*	
Plup.	ēgeram *I* ***had*** *driven, had*	āctus	eram *I* ***had*** *been driven*
§ 171	ēgerās *been driving*	āctus	erās
	ēgerat	āctus	erat
	ēgerāmus	āctī	erāmus
	ēgerātis	āctī	erātis
	ēgerant	āctī	erant
Futp.	ēgerō *I* ***shall*** *have driven*	āctus	erō *I* ***shall*** *have been*
§ 171	ēgeris	āctus	eris *driven*
	ēgerit	āctus	erit
	ēgerimus	āctī	erimus
	ēgeritis	āctī	eritis
	ēgerint	āctī	erunt

200. *a.* PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Pres.	agēns	-ns	-ns	——	——	——
	agentis	*driving, doing*				
Perf.	——			āctus	ācta	āctum
				(*having been*) ***done, driven***		
Fut.	āctūrus	-ūra	-ūrum	agendus	-nda	-ndum
	going to *drive* or *do*			(*deserving*) ***to be*** *driven*		

d. SUPINE (Noun) § 176

	Sing.	*Plur.*	
N.	āctus *act*	āctūs *acts*	Omnia **erant** agenda
G.	āctūs	āctuum	*everything* ***had to be*** *done*
D.	āctuī	āctibus	**Tempus** reī agendae
Ac.	āctum	āctūs	*time to do the thing*
V.	āctus	āctūs	Bovēs āctum it
Ab.	āctū	āctibus	*is* ***going to*** *drive the cows*

198. SUBJUNCTIVE (*Continued*)

	Active		*Passive*
Plup.	**ēgissem** *I* ***had*** *driven*	**āctus**	**essem** *I* ***had*** *been*
§ 172	**ēgissēs**	**āctus**	**essēs** *driven* § 156 *c*
	ēgisset	**āctus**	**esset**
	ēgissēmus	**āctī**	**essēmus**
	ēgissētis	**āctī**	**essētis**
	ēgissent	**āctī**	**essent**

199. IMPERATIVE

Pres.	**age** *drive thou* § 214	**agere** *be thou driven*
§ 173	**agite** *drive ye*	**agiminī** *be ye driven*
Fut.	**agitō** *thou shalt drive*	**agitor** *thou shalt be driven*

200. *b.* GERUND (Noun) § 175 *c.* GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 158

	Singular		*Singular*	
N.	**agere** *to drive, driving*	——	——	——
G.	**agendī** *of driving, to drive*	**agendī**	**-ndae**	**-ndī**
D.	**agendō** (*for*) *driving*	**agendō**	**-ndae**	**-ndō**
Ac.	**agendum**, **agere** *driving*,	**agendum**	**-ndam**	**-ndum**
	etc., **ad agendum** *to drive*	——	——	——
Ab.	**agendō** *by driving*, etc.	**agendō**	**-ndā**	**-ndō**, etc.

		Plural		
	Agere oportet			
	to act is necessary	**agendōrum**	**-ndārum**	**-ndōrum**
	Tempus agendī est	**agendīs**	**-ndīs**	**-ndīs**
	it is ***time*** *to act*	**agendōs**	**-ndās**	**-nda**

e. INFINITIVE (Noun) § 177 *e*

Pres.	**agere** (*to*) *drive, be doing*		**agī** (*to*) *be driven*	
Perf.	**ēgisse** (*to*) *have driven*		**āctus esse** (*to*) *have been*	
Fut.	**āctūrus esse**	*be* ***going***	**āctus fore**	*be* ***going to***
§ 215*g*	**āctum īre**	*to drive*	**āctum īrī**	*be driven*

-e- becomes long before **- ns**; disappears before *another vowel.*

201. *a.* ūtor, ūtī, ——, ūsus *help self* (with), *use, enjoy*

INDICATIVE

	Active	*Deponent*
Pres.		**ūtor** *I help myself, use* **6**
Imp.	§ 182 *b*	**ūtēbar** *I* ***used, was*** *enjoying*
Fut.	§ 171	**ūtar** *I* ***shall*** *use* or *enjoy*
Perf.	§ 100–1	**ūsus** sum *I* (*have*) *used*
Plup.		**ūsus eram** *I had used*
Futp.		**ūsus erō** *I shall have used*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.		**ūtar** *I* ***use, may*** or ***shall*** *use*
Imp.	§ 171	**ūterer** *I* ***used, would*** *use*
Perf.	§ 156 *b, c*	**ūsus sim** *I* (*have*) *used*
Plup.		**ūsus essem** *I had used*

b. IMPERATIVE

Pres.		**ūtere** *help thyself, use*
	§ 173	**ūtiminī** *help yourselves, use*
Fut.		**ūtitor** *thou* ***shalt*** *use*
		ūtitor *he* ***shall*** *use*
		ūtuntor *they* ***shall*** *use*

c. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

Pres.	**ūtēns**, **ūtēns**, **ūtēns** **ūtentis** ***using***	——
Perf.	——	**ūsus**, **ūsa**, **ūsum** *having used*
Fut.	**ūsūrus**, **ūsūra**, **ūsūrum** ***going to*** *use* or *enjoy*	**ūtendus**, **ūtenda**, **ūtendum** (*deserving*) ***to be*** *used*

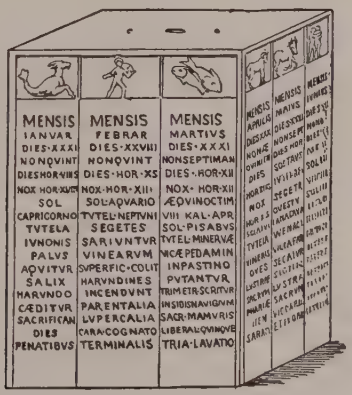
	d. Gerund (Noun) § 175	*e.* Gerundive (Adjective) § 104
Ab.	ūtī *to use, using*	——
G.	ūtendī *of using, to use*	ūtendī, ūtendae, ūtendī

Supine (Noun) § 157

N.	ūsus *use*	ūsūs *uses*	Quī magnō nobīs ūsuī ad
G.	ūsūs	ūsuum	bellum gerendum erant
D.	ūsuī	ūsibus	*which were* (*for*) *great use to*
Ac.	ūsum	ūsūs	*us for carrying on the war*
Ab.	ūsū	ūsibus	**Ex** ūsū fuit *was of advantage*

f. Infinitive (Noun)

Pres.		ūtī (*to*) *use, using*
Perf.		ūsus esse (*to*) *have used*
Fut.	ūsūrus esse (*to*) *be going to use*	——



Kalendārium Reī Rūsticae.

202. Prin. Parts: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**

INDICATIVE

	Active	*Passive*
Pres.	**capiō** *I take, am taking*	**capior** *I am taken*
§ 171	**capis**	**caperis**
	capit	**capitur** § 136
	capimus	**capimur**
	capitis	**capiminī**
	capiunt	**capiuntur**
Imp.	capiēbam *I was taking*	capiēbar *I was taken*
§ 171	capiēbās	capiēbāre, capiēbāris
	capiēbat	capiēbātur
	capiēbāmus	capiēbāmur
	capiēbātis	capiēbāminī
	capiēbant	capiēbantur
Fut.	capiam *I shall take*	capiar *I shall be taken*
§ 171	capiēs	capiēre, capiēris
	capiet	capiētur
	capiēmus	capiēmur
	capiētis	capiēminī
	capient	capientur
Perf.	**cēpī** *I took, have taken*	**captus**[1] sum *I was taken*
§ 171	**cēpistī**	**captus** es
	cēpit	**captus** est
	cēpimus	**captī** sumus
	cēpistis	**captī** estis
	cēpērunt,[2] **cēpēre**	**captī** sunt[2]

[1] Agrees with the subject in gender and number.

[2] **-runt** = **sunt**; **cēpērunt** = ***are having** taken* = ***have** taken.*

Indicative and Subjunctive forms have only twenty-two different endings. See §§ 187, 188, 192, 193.

203. English : (*to*) ***take, took, taken***

SUBJUNCTIVE

	Active	*Passive*
Pres.	capiam *I take*	capiar *I be taken*
§ 172	capiās *thou take*	capiāre, capiāris
	capiat *he take* § 139	capiātur *he be taken*
	capiāmus § 141	capiāmur
	capiātis	capiāminī
	capiant	capiantur
Imp.	caperem *I took*	caperer *I were taken*
§ 172	caperēs	caperēre, caperēris
	caperet	caperētur
	caperēmus	caperēmur
	caperētis	caperēminī
	caperent	caperentur

The Subjunctive uses *only the second set of endings*, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e*, *f*; and 183-6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 *b*, *c*), always change **-bā-** to **-rē-**, **-erā-** to **-issē-**, and **erā-** to **essē-**.

Always change **-ē-** to **-rē-**, **-eri-** to **-issē-**, **eri-** to **essē-**, if the writer's *standpoint* is *past* (see § 147 *g*).

(3d and 4th Conj.) Change **-ē-** to **-ā-**, **-eri-** to **-erī-**, and **eri-** to **sī-**, if the writer's *standpoint* is *present* (see § 147 *f*).

Perf.	cēperim *I have taken*	captus	sim	*I have been*
§ 172	cēperīs	captus	sīs	*taken* § 156 *b*
	cēperit	captus	sit	
	cēperīmus	captī	sīmus	
	cēperītis	captī	sītis	
	cēperint	captī	sint	

VOWEL CHANGES IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

The stem vowel **-i-** becomes **-e-** before **r**;
becomes **-iu-** before **nt** and **-iē-** before **b**.
-ă- and **-ē-** become short before **nt** and *final* **-m**, **-t**, or **-r**. § 170

202. Indicative (*Continued*)

	Active		*Passive*	
Plup.	cēperam *I had taken*	captus	eram *I had been*	
§ 171	cēperās	captus	erās	*taken*
	cēperat	captus	erat	
	cēperāmus	captī	erāmus	
	cēperātis	captī	erātis	
	cēperant	captī	erant	
Futp.	cēperō *I shall have*	captus	erō *I shall have*	
§ 171	cēperis *taken*	captus	eris	*taken*
	cēperit	captus	erit	
	cēperimus	captī	erimus	
	cēperitis	captī	eritis	
	cēperint	captī	erunt	

205. *a.* Participles (Adjectives) § 174

	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Pres.	capiēns	-ns	-ns	——	——	——
	capientis *taking*					
Perf.	——			captus, capta, captum (*having been*) ***taken***		
Fut.	captūrus ***going to*** *take*	ūra	-ūrum	capiendus (*deserving*) ***to be*** *taken*	-nda	-ndum

d. Supine (Noun) § 176

	Sing.	*Plur.*	
N.	captus	captūs	Arma capiendī **facultās**
G.	captūs	captuum	***opportunity to*** *take arms*
D.	captuī	captibus	Suī recipiendī **facultās**
Ac.	captum	captūs	***opportunity to*** *take themselves back* or *withdraw*
V.	captus	captūs	
Ab.	captū	captibus	

203. Subjunctive (*Continued*)

	Active	*Passive*
Plup.	cēpissem *I* ***had*** *taken*	captus **essem** *I* ***had*** *been*
§ 172	cēpissēs	captus **essēs** *taken* § 156 *c*
	cēpisset	cap us **esset**
	cēpissēmus	captī **essēmus**
	cēpissētis	captī **essētis**
	cēpissent	captī **essent**

204. Imperative

Pres.	**cape** *take thou*	**capere** *be thou taken*
§ 173	**capite** *take ye*	**capiminī** *be ye taken*
Fut.	capitō *thou shalt take*	capitor *thou shalt be taken*

205. *b.* Gerund (Noun) § 157 *c.* Gerundive (Adjective) § 158

	Singular	*Singular*		
N.	**capere** *to take; taking*	——	——	——
G.	**capiendī** *of taking*	capiendī	**-ndae**	**-ndī**
D.	**capiendō** (*for*) *taking*	capiendō	**-ndae**	**-ndō**
Ac.	**capiendum, capere** *taking*	capiendum	**-ndam**	**-ndum**
	ad capiendum *to take*	——	——	——
Ab.	**capiendō** *by taking,* etc.	capiendō	**-ndā**	**-ndō**
		Plural		
	Spatium arma capiendī	——	——	——
	time *to take arms*	capiendōrum	**-ndārum**	**-ndōrum**
	Tempus ad arma capienda	capiendīs	**-ndīs**	**-ndīs**
	dēfuit ***time*** *was lacking* —	capiendōs	**-ndās**	**-nda**

e. Infinitive (Noun) § 177

Pres.	**capere** (*to*) *take, be taking*	capī (*to*) *be taken*	§ 127 **-i-**
Perf.	**cēpisse** (*to*) *have taken*	captus esse (*to*) *have been taken*	
Fut.	captūrus esse } ***be going***	captus fore } ***be going to***	
§215 *g*	captum īre } ***to take***	captum īrī } *be taken*	

-i- becomes **-iē-** before **ns** and **-ie** before **nt** in present participles;
-i- becomes **-ie** (sometimes **-iu**) before **nd**.

206. *a.* **gradior, gradī, ——, gressus** *move self, walk*

INDICATIVE

	Active	*Deponent*
Pres.		**gradior** *I move myself, go*
Imp.	§ 182	gradiēbar *I* ***was*** *walking*
Fut.	§ 171	gradiar *I* ***shall*** *walk* or *go*
Perf.	§ 100–1	**gressus** sum *I* (*have*) *walked*
Plup.		gressus **eram** *had walked*
Futp.		gressus **erō** *shall have walked*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.		gradiar *I walk* or ***shall*** *walk*
Imp.	§ 172	graderer *walked, should walk*
Perf.	§ 156 *b, c*	gressus **sim** *I* (*have*) *walked*
Plup.		gressus **essem** *had walked*

b. IMPERATIVE

Pres.		**gradere** *move thyself, walk*
	§ 173	**gradiminī** *move yourselves, walk*
Fut.		graditor *thou* ***shalt*** *walk*
		graditor *he* ***shall*** *walk*
		gradiuntor *they* ***shall*** *walk*

c. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

Pres.	gradiēns, -ēns, -ēns gradientis *walking*	——
Perf.	——	**gressus**, -a, -um *having walked*
Fut.	gressūrus, -a, -um ***going*** *to walk*	gradiendus, -a, -um (*deserving*) ***to be*** *walked*

d. GERUND (Noun) § 175		*e.* GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 104
N.	gradī *to walk, walking*	——
G.	gradiendī *of walking*	gradiendī, -ae, -ī *of walking*

SUPINE (Noun) § 157		
N.	gressus	gressūs
G.	gressūs	gressuum
D.	gressuī	gressibus
Ac.	gressum	gressūs
Ab.	gressū	gressibus

Gradientīs saepsit *wrapped them as they walked (along)*

Gressū patuit dea *the goddess was evident in her gait*

Eā dīrige gressum *direct your steps that way* § 119 *g*

f.	INFINITIVE (Noun) § 176	
Pres.		gradī (*to*) *walk, walking*
Perf.		gressus esse (*to*) *have walked*
Fut.	gressūrus esse (*to*) *be going to walk*	——

Suggestions for Word Study

The root of **gradī** appears in ***grade, gradient,***[1] ***gradation, graduate,*** *under**graduate,*** *un**graduated,*** ***graduation,*** etc.

Using the prefix ***con-***, we have *con**gressional,*** ***congressman.***[1]

How many of the prefixes in §§ 219, 2–3 ; 220 are used with this root? Use a dictionary. Cf. also p. 26, line 19, note, and p. 40.

Make a list of words containing this root.

Make lists of words containing other common Latin roots.

Underscore the parts representing the various forms the original roots assume in Latin, thus:

progressive, convention, efficient, convenient

How does a knowledge of the vowel changes in Latin affect your ability to spell English words correctly?

[1] Study the meaning of the English additions to the Latin roots in word-building. Write definitions showing their effect on the meaning of the original roots.

207. Prin. Parts: audiō, **audīre, audīvī, audītus**

INDICATIVE

	Active	*Passive*
Pres.	**audiō** *I hear*	**audior** *I am heard*
§ 171	**audīs**	**audīris**
	audit	**audītur** § 136
	audīmus	**audīmur**
	audītis	**audīminī**
	audiunt	**audiuntur**
Imp.	audiēbam *I was hearing*	audiēbar *I was heard*
§ 171	audiēbās	audiēbāre, audiēbāris
	audiēbat	audiēbātur
	audiēbāmus	audiēbāmur
	audiēbātis	audiēbāminī
	audiēbant	audiēbantur
Fut.	audiam *I shall hear*	audiar *I shall be heard*
§ 171	audiēs	audiēre, audiēris
	audiet	audiētur
	audiēmus	audiēmur
	audiētis	audiēminī
	audient	audientur
Perf.	**audīvī** *I hear, have heard*	**audītus**[1] sum *I was heard*
§ 171	**audīvistī**	**audītus** es
§ 178	**audīvit**	**audītus** est[2]
	audīvimus	**audītī** sumus
	audīvistis	**audītī** estis
	audīvērunt, audīvēre	**audītī** sunt

[1] Agrees with the subject in gender and number.

[2] The **e-** of **est** is lost in **sit**; **-erit** = **sit**.

Indicative and Subjunctive forms have *only twenty-two* different endings. See §§ 187, 188, 192, 193, 197, 198, 202, 203.

208. English: (*to*) ***hear, heard, heard***

SUBJUNCTIVE

	Active	*Passive*
Pres.	audiam *I hear*	audiar *I be heard*
§ 172	audiās	audiāre, audiāris
	audiat *he hear* § 139	audiātur *he be heard*
	audiāmus § 141	audiāmur
	audiātis	audiāminī
	audiant	audiantur
Imp.	audīrem *I heard*	audīrer *I were heard*
§ 172	audīrēs	audīrēre, audīrēris
	audīret	audīrētur
	audīrēmus	audīrēmur
	audīrētis	audīrēminī
	audīrent	audīrentur

The Subjunctive uses *only the second set of endings*, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e*, *f*; and 183–6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 *b*, *c*), always change **-bā-** to **-rē-**, **-erā-** to **-issē-**, and **erā-** to **essē-**.

Always change **-ē-** to **-rē-**, **-eri-** to **-issē**, **eri-** to **essē-**, if the writer's *standpoint* is *past* (see § 147 *g*).

(3d and 4th Conj.) Change **-ē-** to **-ā-**, **-eri-** to **-erī-**, and **eri-** to **sī-** if the writer's *standpoint* is *present* (see § 147 *f*).

Perf.	audīver**im** *I have heard*	audītus **sim** *I have been heard*
§ 172	audīverīs	audītus **sīs** § 156 *b*
§ 178	audīverit[2]	audītus **sit**[2]
	audīverīmus	audītī **sīmus**
	audīverītis	audītī **sītis**
	audīverint	audītī **sint**

VOWEL CHANGES IN THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

The stem vowel **-ī-** becomes *short* before *another vowel;*
becomes **-iu-** before **nt**, and **-iē-** before **b**.
-ā- and **-ē-** becomes short before **nt** and *final* **-m**, **-t**, or **-r**. § 170

207. INDICATIVE (*Continued*)

	Active		*Passive*	
Plup.	audīveram *I had heard*	audītus	eram *I had been*	
§ 171	audīverās	audītus	erās	*heard*
§ 178	audīverat	audītus	erat	
	audīverāmus	audītī	erāmus	
	audīverātis	audītī	erātis	
	audīverant	audītī	erant	
Futp.	audīverō *I shall have*	audītus	erō *I shall have*	
§ 171	audīveris *heard*	audītus	eris	*been heard*
§ 178	audīverit	audītus	erit	
	audīverimus	audītī	erimus	
	audīveritis	audītī	eritis	
	audīverint	audītī	erunt	

210. *a.* PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
Pres.	audiēns	-ns	-ns	——	——	——
	audientis *hearing*					
Perf.	——			audītus, audīta, audītum (*having been*) *heard*		
Fut.	audītūrus	-ūra	-ūrum	audiendus	-nda	-ndum
	going to hear			(*deserving*) *to be heard*		

d. SUPINE (Noun) § 176

	Sing.	*Plur.*
N.	audītus	audītūs
G.	audītūs	audītuum
D.	audītuī	audītibus
Ac.	audītum	audītūs
V.	audītus	audītūs
Ab.	audītū	audītibus

Audiendī causā vēnī
I came to hear

Eōrum audiendōrum causā or ad eōs audiendōs vēnī *I came to hear them*

208. SUBJUNCTIVE (*Continued*)

	Active	*Passive*
Plup.	audīvissem *I had heard*	audītus essem *I had been heard*
§ 172	audīvissēs	audītus essēs § 156 *c*
§ 178	audīvisset	audītus esset
	audīvissēmus	audītī essēmus
	audīvissētis	audītī essētis
	audīvissent	audītī essent

209. IMPERATIVE

Pres.	**audī** *hear thou*	**audīre** *be thou heard*
§ 173	**audīte** *hear ye*	**audīminī** *be ye heard*
Fut.	audītō *thou shalt hear*	audītor *thou shalt be heard*

210. *b.* GERUND (Noun) § 175 *c.* GERUNDIVE (Adjective) § 158

	Singular	*Singular*		
N.	audīre *to hear, hearing*	——	——	——
G.	audiendī *of hearing*	audiendī	-ndae	-ndī
D.	audiendō (*for*) *hearing*	audiendō	-ndae	-ndō
Ac.	audiendum, audīre *hearing*, ad audiendum *to hear*	audiendum	-ndam	-ndum
		——	——	——
Ab.	audiendō *by hearing*, etc.	audiendō	-ndā	-ndō
		Plural		
	Multōrum audītū *by the hearing of man*	audiendōrum	-ndārum	-ndōrum
	Nihil praeter audītum *nothing but hearsay*	audiendīs	-ndīs	-ndīs
		audiendōs	-ndās	-nda

e. INFINITIVE (Noun) § 177

Pres.	**audīre** *hear, be heeding*	**audīrī** (*to*) *be heard* § 127 **-ī-**
Perf.	**audīvisse** (*to*) *have heard*	**audītus esse** (*to*) *have been heard*
Fut.	audītūrus esse *be going to hear*	audītus fore *be going to be heard*
§215 *g*	audītum īre	audītum īrī

-ī- becomes **-iē-** before **-ns** and **-ie-** before **-nt-** in present participles; **-ī-** becomes **-ie-** (sometimes **-iu-**) before **-nd**. § 170

211. *a.* potior, **potīrī**, ——, **potītus** *make self able, get*

INDICATIVE

	Active	*Deponent*
Pres.		**potior** *I get (hold of)* **6**
Imp.	§ 182	**potiēbar** ***was*** *getting, got*
Fut.	§ 171	**potiar** *I* ***shall*** *get*
Perf.	§ 100–1	**potītus sum** *I (have) got*
Plup.		**potītus eram** *had gotten*
Futp.		**potītus erō** *shall have got*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.		**potiar** *I get* or ***may*** *get*
Imp.	§ 172	**potīrer** *got,* ***might*** *get*
Perf.	§ 156 *b, c*	**potītus sim** *I (have) got*
Plup.		**potītus essem** *had gotten*

b. IMPERATIVE

Pres.		**potīre** *get thou*
	§ 173	**potīminī** *get ye*
Fut.		**potītor** *thou* ***shalt*** *get*
		potītor *he* ***shall*** *get*
		potiuntor *they* ***shall*** *get*

c. PARTICIPLES (Adjectives) § 174

Pres.	**potiēns**, -ēns, -ēns **potientis** *getting*	——
Perf.	——	**potītus**, -a, -um *having* ***got***
Fut.	**potītūrus**, -a, -um ***going to*** *get*	**potiendus**, -a, -um (*deserving*) ***to be*** *got*

d. Gerund (Noun) § 175	*e.* Gerundive (Adjective) § 104
N. potīrī *to get, getting*	——
G. potiendī *of getting*	potiendī, -ae -ī *of getting*

Supine (Noun) § 157

N. ——
G. ——
D. ——
Ac. potītum
Ab. potītū

Many case forms of supines are wanting. In many verbs, only forms in -um or -ū are found.

f. Infinitive (Noun) § 176

Pres.	potīrī (*to*) *get, getting*
Perf.	potītus esse (*to*) *have got*
Fut. potītūrus esse (*to*) *be going to get*	——

Lūdus Litterārius — The Game of Letters (School).

212. Indicative

	Active	*Passive*		
Prcs.	ferō *I bear*	feror *am borne*	eō *I go*	fīō *am made*
§ 171	fers	ferris	īs	fīs
	fert § 170, 1	fertur	it § 137	fit
	ferimus	ferimur	īmus	fīmus
	fertis	feriminī	ītis	fītis
	ferunt	feruntur	eunt	fīunt
Imp.	ferēbam	ferēbar	ībam	fīēbam
§ 171	ferēbās	ferēbāre -ris	ībās	fīēbās
	ferēbat	ferēbātur	ībat	fīēbat
	ferēbāmus	ferēbāmur	ībāmus	fīēbāmus
	ferēbātis	ferēbāminī	ībātis	fīēbātis
	ferēbant	ferēbantur	ībant	fīēbant
Fut.	feram	ferar	ībō	fīam
§ 171	ferēs	ferēre -ris	ībis	fīēs
	feret	ferētur	ībit	fīet
	ferēmus	ferēmur	ībimus	fīēmus
	ferētis	ferēminī	ībitis	fīētis
	ferent	ferentur	ībunt	fīent
Perf.	tulī *I bore*	lātus sum	īvī *I went*	factus sum
§ 171	tulistī	lātus es	īvistī	factus es
§ 178	tulit	lātus est	īvit	factus est
	tulimus	lātī sumus	īvimus	factī sumus
	tulistis	lātī estis	īvistis	factī estis
	tulērunt or tulēre	lātī sunt	īvērunt[1] or īvēre	factī sunt

[1] īvērunt or īvēre, iērunt or iēre; **-v-** is usually dropped in forms of **īre** and its compounds.

Ind. and Sub. forms have only *twenty-two different endings.*

213. Subjunctive

	Active	*Passive*		
Pres.	feram *I bear*	ferar *be borne*	eam *I go*	fīam *be made*
§ 172	ferās	ferāre -ris	eās [2]	fīās [3]
	ferat	ferātur	eat § 140	fīat
	ferāmus	ferāmur	eāmus	fīāmus
	ferātis	ferāminī	eātis	fīātis
	ferant	ferantur	eant	fīant
Imp.	ferrem [1]	ferrer [4]	īrem	fierem
§ 172	ferrēs	ferrēre -ris	īrēs	fierēs
	ferret	ferrētur	īret	fieret
	ferrēmus	ferrēmur	īrēmus	fierēmus
	ferrētis	ferrēminī	īrētis	fierētis
	ferrent	ferrentur	īrent	fierent

The Subjunctive uses *only the second set of endings*, § 168. It has no Future. Study its meaning by the aid of §§ 138 *e*, *f*; and 183–6.

In changing Indicative forms to the Subjunctive (§ 137 *b*, *c*), always change **-bā-** to **-rē-**, **-erā-** to **-issē-**, and **erā-** to **essē-**.

Always change **-ē-** or **-bi-** to **-rē-**, **-eri-** to **-issē-**, **eri-** to **essē-**, if the writer's *standpoint* is *past* (see § 147 *g*).

(3d and 4th Conj.) Change **-ē-** or **-bi-** to **-ā-**, **-eri-** to **-erī-** and **-eri-** to **sī-**, if the writer's *standpoint* is *present* (see § 147 *f*.).

Perf.	tulerim	lātus sim	īverim	factus sim
§ 172	tulerīs	lātus sīs	īverīs	factus sīs
§ 178	tulerit	lātus sit	īverit	factus sit
	tulerīmus	lātī sīmus	īverīmus	factī sīmus
	tulerītis	lātī sītis	īverītis	factī sītis
	tulerint	lātī sint	īverint	factī sint

Peculiarities of Vowels in the Indicative and Subjunctive

[1] See § 170 note. [2] **-ī-** becomes **-i-** before another vowel (cf. § 170 **-ī-**) but **i-** becomes **e-** at the beginning of a word or before a vowel (except **e**). [3] Note the **-ī-** before another vowel in **fīō**. [4] See § 170 note.

212. Indicative (*Continued*)

Plup. tuleram	lātus eram	īveram	factus eram
§ 171 tulerās	lātus erās	īverās	factus erās
§ 178 tulerat	lātus erat	īverat	factus erat
tulerāmus	lātī erāmus	īverāmus	factī erāmus
tulerātis	lātī erātis	īverātis	factī erātis
tulerant	lātī erant	īverant	factī erant
Futp. tulerō	lātus erō	īverō	factus erō
§ 171 tuleris	lātus eris	īveris	factus eris
§ 178 tulerit	lātus erit	īverit	factus erit
tulerimus	lātī erimus	īverimus	factī erimus
tuleritis	lātī eritis	īveritis	factī eritis
tulerint	lātī erunt	īverint	factī erunt

215. *a.* Participles (Adjectives) § 174

	Act.	*Pass.*	*Act.*	*Pass.*	*Pass.*
Pres.	ferēns § 97 ferentis	——	iēns § 97 euntis	——	——
Perf.	——	lātus § 98	——	itum § 98	factus
Fut.	lātūrus	ferendus	itūrus	eundum	§ 104 -ī-

b. Gerund (Noun) § 175 *c.* Gerundive (Adj.) § 158

N. ferre	īre			
ferendī	eundī	-eundī	-eundae	-eundī

d. Supine (Noun) § 157

N. ——	-itus	Mihi eundum est *I must go*
G. ——	-itūs	Dē flūmine trānseundō spēs
D. ——	-ituī	*hope of crossing the river*
Ac. lātum	-itum	Difficilī trānsitū flūmen
Ab. lātū	-itū	*a river of difficult passage*

213. SUBJUNCTIVE (*Continued*)

	Active			*Passive*	
Plup.	tulissem	lātus essem	īvissem	factus essem	
§ 172	tulissēs	lātus essēs	īvissēs	factus essēs	
§ 178	tulisset	lātus esset	īvisset	factus esset	
	tulissēmus	lātī essēmus	īvissēmus	factī essēmus	
	tulissētis	lātī essētis	īvissētis	factī essētis	
	tulissent	lātī essent	īvissent	factī essent	

214. IMPERATIVE

Pres.	fer [1] *bring*	ferre [1]	ī *go (thou)*	fī *become*
	ferte	feriminī	īte	fīte
Fut.	fertō	fertor	ītō	
§ 173	fertō	fertor	ītō	
	fertōte	——	ītōte	
	feruntō	feruntor	euntō [2]	

215. *e.* INFINITIVE (Noun) § 177

	Act.	*Pass.*	*Act.*	*Pass.*
Pres.	ferre *bear*	ferrī	——	fierī *be done*
Perf.	tulisse	lātus esse	——	factus esse
Fut.	lātūrus esse	lātus fore	——	factus fore
	latum īre	lātum īrī		factum īrī

f.	*Active*	*Passive*
Pres.	īre *go, be going*	īrī *traveling be done*
Perf.	iisse (*to*) *have been going*	itum esse —— *have been done*
Fut.	itūrus esse *be going to go*	itum īrī *be going to be traveled*

g. Occasionally used instead of the future.

(ii) Sē perditum eunt *they **are going** to ruin themselves.*

Videō sē perditum īre — *I see they are **going to destroy** themselves*

Videō eōs perditum īrī — *I see that they are **going to be** destroyed*

[1] See § 170. [2] See Note 2, § 213.

216. *a.* **Forms**[1] **made on the Present Stem** (§ 163 *a*).

-a- before final **-m** or **-r** may be the *sign* either *of the Present Subjunctive* or *Future Indicative :*

legam, loquar, fiam, ferar, patiar, audiam

-ā- or **-a-** (when shortened before **-t**, **-nt**, or **-ntur**)

First Conjugation[2] — *Stem Vowel — Present Indicative*

vocās, cōnāris (**cōnāre** § 191 *b*) ; **rogat, nūntiātur** ;
stāmus, vagāmur ; **amātis, laudāminī** ; **dant,**[3] **iuvantur**

Second Conjugation — *Sign of the Present Subjunctive*

iubeās, videāre, teneāris ; liceat, polliceātur ;
audeāmus, iubeāmur ; habeātis, doceāminī ; audeant

Third and Fourth Conjugations — *Sign of the Present Subjunctive* (and *First Person sing.* of the Future Indicative)

capiās, patiāre, congrediāris ; legat, loquātur ;
audiāmus, mittāmur ; ūtāminī, agātis ; fiant,[4] ferantur

b. In forms made on the Present Stem (§ 163 *a*).

-e- before final **-m** or **-r** is always *Present Subjunctive.*

-ē- or **-e-** (when shortened before **-t**, **-nt**, or **-ntur**)

First Conjugation — *Sign of the Present Subjunctive*

vocēs, cōnēre (cōnēris) ; roget, nūntiētur ;
stēmus, vagēmur ; amētis, laudēminī ; dent,[3] iuventur

[1] Not containing the sign **-bā-**, **-rē-**, or **-bi-**. [2] The Prin. Parts must be learned. [3] **Dare** resembles the first. [4] **Fierī** follows the third conjugation.

Second Conjugation — *Stem Vowel — Present Indicative*

iubēs, **tenēris**, (**iubēre** §§ 127, 194); **licet**, pollicētur;
audēmus, **verēmur**; **habētis**, **vidēminī**; **tenent**, con**tinent**ur

Third and Fourth Conjugations — *Sign of the Future Ind.*

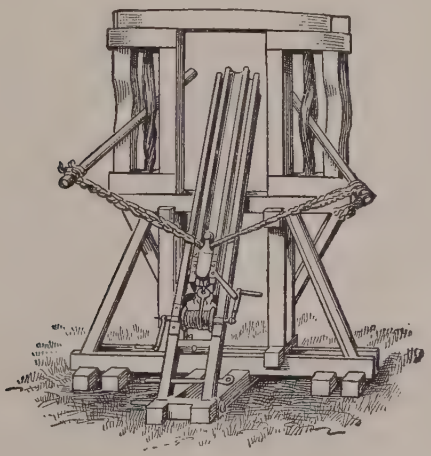
fīēs, interficiēre, sequēre; capiet, accipiētur;
audiēmus, potiēmur; sciētis, patiēminī; fient, ferentur

But in the third conjugation

-e-ris is Pres. Ind. **loque**ris, **mitte**ris, **cape**ris
-ē-ris is Fut. Ind. loquēris, mittēris, capiēris

c. Give Mode and Tense and translate.

audēre vocēre vidēre loquēre dētur tenētur ferētur nūntiāre largiāre patiēre cōnāmur cōgāmur laudāmur dīcātur mandātur nūntient mūnient dīcent



Ballista.

217. *a.* In forms made on the Perfect Stem (§ 163 *b*).

Any verb having the ending **-istī, -istis**, or **-ērunt** is instantly known to be a *perfect indicative active* form and the perfect stem may be learned from it.

b. Read and translate the following paragraphs and write out the principal parts of the verbs from your observations.

Gallī rebelliōnem facere volunt. Hōc cōnātū nōn dēsistunt. Concilium convocant. Ducēs inter sē cōnsulunt. Iam bellum gerere cōnstituunt, cum ūnus ē ducibus surgit; surrēctus ita loquitur:

"Iam diū, frātrēs, bellandī cupidī estis. Saepe concilium convocāvistis. Conciliō convocātō, mē cōnsuluistis. Persaepe apud vōs surrēxī neque vōbīs ita dīcere dēstitī: Rōmānōs potentīs, Gallōs fortīs esse īnfirmōs; hōs saepe contrā illōs coniūrāvisse; bella multa gesta esse; tum dēmum Gallōs semper victōs, arma eōrum Rōmānīs trādita esse. Hīs dē causīs, ut saepe iam dīxī, suādeō, nē bellum cum eīs, quī tanta tamque multa iam bella tam bonā gessērunt fortūnā atque adhūc semper vīcērunt, gerātis atque pācem servētis."

c. **Contracted Forms**

-v- is often dropped in the combinations **-īvī-, -īvi-, -īve-.** audīvī, petīvimus, cupīvit, audīverat, cupīvisset become audiī, petiimus, cupiit, audierat, cupiisset, cupīsset

-ve-, -vē-, and **-vi-** (not before **-t** or **-mus**) are often dropped.

cōnsulunt *ask advice of, consult* 4 **surgit** *rises*
cōnstituunt *are deciding* **gerere** *wage* **trādita** *delivered*
servētis *keep, observe* **īnfirmōs** *unsteady* **vincere** *win, defeat*

d. Write out the full form of each of the following:

iērunt	vocāstis	iūrāsse	trānsīssent
ierant	mandārunt	collocāsse	cōnsuērint
īsse	rogāstī	servāssent	cōnsuērat
exīsset	cupīstī	putārō	pugnārant
petiisse	putāstī	rōgārunt	cōnsuēsse
petīsse	convocārim	nūntiārit	superārint

218. *a.* The meaning of ancient root words is usually broader than that of modern ones. They set forth the actual facts in more primitive and simple fashion, whereas our words have become more mechanical means of conveying ideas and farther removed from the plain facts they represent. Scarcity of words formerly made it necessary to apply each one to a wide range of things.

	Librōs	**ē-ligit,** (*he*) ***is selecting*** *books.*
	books	out-picks
	Litterās	**legit,** (*he*) ***is reading*** *a message.*
	letters	picks
	Frūctūs	**legit,** (*he*) ***is gathering*** *fruit.*
	fruits	picks
Avis	**aequor**	**legit,** *the bird* ***skims*** *the level-sea.*
bird	the even	picks
Nāvis	**lītus**	**legit,** *the ship* ***skirts*** *the shore.*
boat	shore	picks
Nauta	**lītus**	**legit,** *the sailor* ***scans*** *the shore.*
sailor	shore	picks

b. The original meaning of the root **leg-** is easily seen in its descendants, ***legible*** (writing) and *eligible* (persons).

c. The underlying idea conveyed by **leg-** is something like

pass-along-seeing-gathering or *following*,

according as it refers to the passing along of the eye and finger of a reader, the eye and hand of a picker, the eye and body of a bird, or the hull of a ship. And the sameness of the actions becomes still more apparent as we consider the spread-out surface of the ancient roll or book, the extended row of rolls to select from, the ground traversed in picking wild berries, the level expanse of the sea and the extent of shallows, beach, and coast land.

d. We must not think of the abundant fruit of cultivated trees or of glancing easily over printed pages, with separated words, for when **leg-** was first used, picking meant searching and reading once meant painfully gathering ideas from rudely carved lines of words all run together as one. And the few words of primitive peoples were made to perform many services, whereas we have borrowed words from all our neighbors in our desire to have one word for each thing.

219. The prefixing of prepositions and other particles has made vowel changes in many common root words.

1. **ae** sometimes becomes **ī**; **au** sometimes becomes **ū**.

Simple Verbs, etc.		Compounds	Related Words
aestimāre *rate*	***esteem***	**ex-īstimāre** *think out*	***estimate***
quaerere *seek*	***query***	**ex-quīrere** *seek out*	***exquisite***
caedere *hew, cut*	***chisel***	**oc-cīdere** *cut on front, kill*	***suicide***
prae *ahead of*	***pre-***	**prī-mus** *foremost, first*	***primary***
claudere *shut*	***clause***	**ex-clūdere** *shut out* or *off*	***exclude***
clausī *I closed*	***enclose***	**ex-clūsī** *I shut out* or *off*	***exclusive***
causa *reason*	***causal***	**re-cūsāre** *give back reasons*	(why not)

2. Short **a** becomes **e**, especially before **r** or *two consonants*.

Simple Verbs, etc.		Compounds	Related Words
dare *put, give*	***date***	**ab-dere** *put away, conceal*	***render***
dedī *I gave, sent*		**ab-didī** *I concealed*	
		circum-dare *surround*	
crē- *faith, trust*	***creed***	**crē-dere** *put faith in*	***credible***
scandere *climb*	***scan***	**a-scendere** *climb up*	***ascension***
gradī *walk, go*	***gradual***	**ag-gredī** *go at, attack*	***aggressive***
patī *suffer*	***patient***	**per-petī** *endure through*	***perpetual***

3. Short **a** and **e** become **i** before single consonants, except **r**.

habēre *hold, keep*	***habit***	**pro-hibēre** *keep forth, off*	***prohibit***
tenēre *hold*	***tenant***	**con-tinēre** *keep together*	***contain***
facere (**i**) *make, do*	***fact***	**cōn-ficere** (**i**) *do up, finish*	***confection***
tangere *touch*	***tangent***	**at-tingere** *touch upon*	***contingent***
frangere *break*	***fragile***	**īn-fringere** *break into*	***infringe***

4. In words *beginning with a vowel* or **h** contractions often occur.

emere *take, buy*	***redeem***	**sūmere** (**sub-emere**) *take up*	***resume***
agere *drive, do*	***agent***	**cōgere** (**co-agere**) *collect, force*	***cogent***
habēre *have*	***inhabit***	**dēbēre** (**dē-habēre**) *have from, owe*	***debt***

220. The consonants in prepositions vary greatly when used in compounds according to the first letter of the root word.

1. **ab** (**ā-**, **ab-**, **abs-**, **au-**) *from, away, aside, off:*

vertere *turn*	***vertex***	**ā-vertere** *turn aside*	***avert, averse***
iacere (**i**) *throw*	***jet***	**ab-icere** (**i**) *cast away*	***abject***
tenēre *hold, keep*	***tenure***	**abs-tinēre** *keep from*	***abstinence***
ferre *bear*	***fertile***	**au-ferre** *carry off;* **ablātus**	***ablative***
tulī *I bore*		**abs-tulī** *I took away*	

2. **ad** (**a-, ac-, ad-, af-, ag-, al-, am-, an-, ap-, ar-, as-, at-**) *to, for, up to, up on, toward, near, by,* etc.

Simple Verbs, etc.		Compounds	Related Words
scandere *climb*	***scansion***	**a-scendere** *climb up*	***ascend, ascent***
cēdere *yield, go*	***cede***	**ac-cēdere** *go to*	***accede, access***
dare *put, give*	***dative***	**ad-dere** *put beside*	***add, addenda***
facere (**i**) *do, act*	***fact***	**af-ficere**[1] (**i**) *act toward*	***affect***
agere *drive*	***agent***	**ad-igere** *drive to*	*exigent*
gradī *walk, go*	***gradual***	**ag-gredī**[2] *go at, attack*	***aggressor***
ferre *bring*	***refer***	**ad-ferre** *bring up (to)*	***afferent***
lātus *brought*	***ablative***	**al-lātus**[2] *brought up to*	***relate***
nūntiāre *bring word*		**an-nūntiāre**[2] *bring word*	***announce***
petere *seek*	***petition***	**ap-petere** *seek for*	***appetite***
sistere *stand*	***insist***	**as-sistere** *stand by*	***assist***
tribuere *give*	***tribute***	**at-tribuere** *give to*	***attribute***
rapere (**i**) *snatch*	***rapid***	**ar-ripere** (**i**) *seize upon*	***rapture***

3. **ante** *ahead of, before;* **circum-, circu-** *around, about.*

cēdere *come, go*	***cession***	**ante-cēdere** *go ahead of*	***antecedent***
dare *put, give*	***data***	**circum-dare** *put around*	***circus***
īre *travel*	***itinerant***	**circu-īre** *go around*	***circuit***

4. **cum** (**co-, col-, com-, comb-, con-, cor-**) *together, up, fully* or *thoroughly.*

emere *take, buy*	***redeem***	**co-emere** *buy up*	***sample, exempt***
nōscere *begin to know*		**co-gnōscere** *learn fully*	***cognizant***
loquī *speak*	***loquacious***	**col-loquī** *speak with*	***colloquial***
parāre *get*	***prepare***	**com-parāre** *get together*	***compare***
ūrere *burn*		**comb-ūrere** *burn up*	***combustion***
facere (**i**) *make*	***fact***	**cōn-ficere** (**i**) *do up*	***confection***
rumpere *break*	***rupture***	**cor-rumpere** *break up*	***corrupt***

[1] Often printed **ad-ficere**, but pronounced **af-ficere**. [2] Cf. note 1.

5. **dē-** *down, from;* **dis-** (**dī-, dif-, dir-**) *from, apart, off.*

Simple Verbs, etc.		Compounds	Related Words
capere (i) *take*	***capture***	**dē-cipere** (i) *take down*	***deceive***
facere (i) *make*	***factor***	**dē-ficere** (i) *fail*	***deficient***
dare *put, give*	***data***	**dē-dere** *lay down, give up*	§ 219, 2
specere (i) *look*	***spy***	**dē-spicere** (i) *look down*	***despicable***
medius *middle*	***mid-***	**dī-midium** *from-the-middle*	***demi-***
ferre *bear, carry*	***bear***	**dif-ferre** *bear apart*	***different***
emere *take*	***example***	**dir-imere** *break up* or *apart*	§ 219, 3
pōnere *set*	***position***	**dis-pōnere** *put at intervals*	***dispose***

6. **ex** (**ē-, ef-, ex-**) *out, out of, forth, up out.*

dare *put, give*		**ē-dere** *put forth, raise out*	***edit***
nūntiāre *report*	***nuncio***	**ē-nūntiāre** *tell out*	***-nounce***
facere (i) *make*	***fact***	**ef-ficere** (i) *make out* § 219, 3	***effect***
ferre *bear*	***transfer***	**ef-ferre** *carry away;* (**ē-lātus**)	***elate***
pedēs *feet*	***pedestrian***	**ex-pedīre** *free (the feet)*	***expedient***
sequī *follow*	***sequence***	**ex-sequī** *follow out*	***execute***

7. **in** (**il-, im-, ind-, ir-**) *in, on, into, upon, at;* ***in-, un-.***

lātus *brought*	***relate***	**il-lātus** *brought upon*	***illative***
pedēs *feet*	***pedal***	**im-pedīre** *entangle (feet)*	***impede***
pendēre *hang*	***pending***	**im-pendēre** *hang over*	***impend***
ex-uere *put off*		**ind-uere** *put on, clothe*	***indue***
rīdēre *laugh*	***ridicule***	**ir-rīdēre** *laugh at*	***deride***
opīnāns *thinking*	***opinion***	**in-opīnāns** *unthinking*	

8. **inter-, intel-** *between, at intervals;* **intrō-** *into, in.*

legere *gather*	***legend***	**intel-legere** *be aware*	***intellect***
cēdere *yield, come*	***cede***	**inter-cēdere** *come between*	***intercede***
facere (i) *make* § 219, 3		**inter-ficere** (i) *do to pieces, kill*	
mittere *let go*	***mission***	**inter-mittere** *let go at intervals*	
dūcere *draw, lead*	***duke***	**intrō-dūcere** *take into*	***introduce***

9. **nec-** *not;* **ob** (**o-, ob-, obs-, oc-, of-, op-**) *in face of, against.*

Simple Verbs, etc.		Compounds	Related Words
ōtium *leisure, ease*		**neg-ōtium** *not ease, work*	***negotiate***
legere *gather, pick*		**neg-legere** *not gather*	***negligent***
lēgī *I gathered*		**neg-lēxī** *I overlooked*	
mittere *let go*	***missile***	**o-mittere** *let go by*	***omit***
tenēre *hold, gain*	***tenet***	**ob-tinēre** *hold against odds*	§ 219, 3
tendere *stretch*	***tend***	**os-tendere** *show*	***ostensibly***
tetendī *I stretched* 4		**os-tendī** *I showed*	
currere *run*	***current***	**oc-currere** *run in the face of*	***occur***
ferre *bring* 4	***transfer***	**of-ferre** *bring before* 3 p 4 t	***offer***
tulī *I brought*		**ob-tulī** *I brought before*	
lātus *brought*		**ob-lātus** *being offered*	***oblation***
pōnere *place, set*	***pose***	**op-pōnere** *put in way*	***opponent***

10. **per-, pel-** *through, over, to pieces, to destruction, very.*

facere (i) *do*	***factor***	**per-ficere** (i) *do through*	***perfect***
īre *go, travel*		**per-īre** *go to destruction*	***perish***
tenēre *hold*	***tenant***	**per-tinēre** *hold through*	***pertain***
paucī *few* § 64	***paucity***	**per-paucī** *very few (all told)*	§ 64

11. **prae-** *ahead of, before;* **praeter-** *beyond, past, by.*

cēdere *yield, go*	***cede***	**prae-cēdere** *go ahead of*	***precede***
habēre *hold, keep*	***have***	**prae-bēre** *hold before, furnish*	§ 219, 4
facere (i) *make, put*		**prae-ficere** (i) *put at head*	***prefect***
īre *go, travel*	***initial***	**praeter-īre** *go by, pass*	***preterit***

12. **prō-** (**pol-, por-, pro-, prō-, prōd-**) *forth, on, beforehand.*

licērī *bid, offer*		**pol-licērī** *offer beforehand, promise*	
regere *go straight*	***Rex***	**por-rigere** *go straight on, extend*	
fugere (i) *flee*	***fugitive***	**pro-fugere** (i) *flee forth*	
gradī (i) *go, walk*	***grade***	**prō-gredī** (i) *go on* § 219, 2	***progress***
īre *go, travel*	***exit***	**prōd-īre** *go forth*	

13. **sē-, sēd-** *apart, away, aside;* **re-, red-** *again, back.*

Simple Verbs, etc.		Compounds	Related Words
cernere *see*	*discern*	**sē-cernere** *separate*	
crētus *seen, taken*		**sē-crētus** *taken aside*	*secret*
parāre *get, put*	*prepare*	**sē-parāre** *set apart*	*separate*
red-itiō *a going back*		**sēd-itiō** *going apart*	*sedition*
cēdere *move*	*cede*	**sē-cēdere** *go apart*	*secede*
cessī *I gave way*	*cession*	**sē-cessī** *I withdrew*	*secession*
cūra *care*	*curator*	**sē-cūrus** *having no care of*	*secure*

14. **sub** (**sub-, suc-, suf-, sug-, sum-, sup-, sū-, sus-**) *under, up; as support* or *help.*

īre *go, travel*	*itinerant*	**sub-īre** *undergo*	
sequī *follow*	*sequence*	**sub-sequī** *follow up*	*subsequent*
cēdere *go, move*	*recede*	**suc-cēdere** *come up* or *after*	*succeed*
ferre *bear*	*offer*	**suf-ferre** *bear up under*	*suffer*
gerere *make*	*belligerent*	**sug-gerere** *build up*	*suggest*
gessī *I made*		**sug-gessī** *I built up*	
mittere *let go*	*remit*	**sum-mittere** *send as help*	*submit*
petere *seek*	*petition*	**sup-petere** *be on hand*	
portāre *bring*	*import*	**sup-portāre** *bring up*	*support*
emere *take, buy*	§ 219, 4	**sū-mere** *pick up, take*	*assume*
ēmī *I took*		**sū-mpsī** *I took up*	*sumptuous*
specere (**i**) *look*	*species*	**su-spicere** (**i**) *look up*	*suspicious*
capere (**i**) *take*	*capacity*	**sus-cipere** (**i**) *undertake*	*susceptible*
tenēre *hold*	*tenure*	**sus-tinēre** *hold up, endure*	*sustain*

15. **super** *over, above;* **trāns, trā-** *across, over.*

esse *be, remain*	*essence*	**super-esse** *be over* or *left*	
dare *give, put*	*dative*	**trā-dere** *hand over,* § 219, 2	*tradition*
īre *go, travel*	*exit*	**trāns-īre** *cross, go over*	*transit*
dūcere *lead*	*induce*	**trā-dūcere** *lead* or *take over*	

221. *a.* Prepositional ideas are often reëchoed by the verb. Where there are several prepositional ideas in connection with a single verb, each is expressed separately.

Inde **per** Alpīs **in** Italiam **con**tendit *from there he hurried-**on** **over** the Alps **into** Italy.*

b. But a single prepositional idea is very often expressed twice; once by a *preposition used with a noun*, and again by the *same preposition* or a particle of similar meaning *prefixed to the verb*, especially in expressions of place and position.

Longē **ā** domō **ab**est *he is far **away from** home* Cf. §§ 61 *e*, 230
Ā Rōmā **dis**cēdit *he **de**parts **from-the-vicinity-of** Rome*
Ad oppidum **ac**cēdit *he is coming-**up to** the town* Cf. § 220, 2
Cum Rōmānīs **con**tendunt *they **con**tend **with** the Romans* § 62 *a*
Dē salūte **dē**spērant *they give-**up** hope **of** saving themselves*
Dē fīnibus suīs **ex**eunt *they go-**out of** their borders* § 220, 6
Cōpiās (**ex**) castrīs **ē**dūcit *he leads-**out** his troops **from** camp*
Eōs **dē**dūcit **ex** hīs regiōnibus *he takes them **out of** these parts*
Eōs **in** īnsidiās **in**dūcit *he draws them **into** a snare* Cf. § 60
Intrā fīnīs nostrōs **in**grediuntur *they **en**ter **inside** our borders*
Inter nōs et id silva **inter**cēdit *there is a wood **between** us and it*
Inter hunc et mē mūrus **inter**est *there's a wall **between** him and me*
Cōpiās **prō** castrīs **prō**dūcit *leads-**forth** troops **in front of** camp*
Sub nostram aciem **suc**cēdunt *they come-**up** (*hill*) **under** our line*
Cōpiās (**trāns**) flūmen **trā**dūcō *I lead my troops **across** the river*

Frequentative Verbs

222. Some verbs denote an *action* as *repeated* or *intensified.*

a.	Originals	Frequentatives
	beat, daze, spit,	***batter**, **dazzle**, sput**ter**,*
	twit, wrig, shove.	***twitter**, **wriggle**, **shuffle**.*

b. Latin frequentative verbs are made on the participial stems of other verbs and contain the element **-tā-** or **-sā-**.

c. ORIGINALS		FREQUENTATIVES	
nāre *float*	***nav**y, **nav**al*	**nātāre** *keep floating*	***natat**orium*
volāre *fly*	***volat**ile*	**volitāre** *flit, bustle*	
habēre *have, hold* 4	***have***	**habitāre** *dwell* **in** 6	***in**habit*
dīcere *say, tell*	***dict**ion*	**dictāre** *keep telling*	***dictate***
specere (**i**) *see*	***spec**ies*	**spectāre** *keep viewing*	***spectacle***
vertī *turn self*	***in**vert*	**versārī** *busy self*	***versat**ile*
iacere (**i**) *throw*	***reject***	**iactāre** *toss, keep throwing*	***jet***
venīre *come*	***conven**tion*	**ventitāre** *come and go*	

d. The originals of some frequentatives are uncertain.
dubitāre *keep delaying, hesitate* Inf.; *doubt* **quīn** Sub. ***dubious***
flāgitāre *demand insistently* or *urgently* **4 p 4 t** § 230 *h*
sollicitāre *keep urging* or *insisting* **4**; *urge on* **4** ***solicitous***

Inceptive Verbs

223. Verbs denoting the *beginning of an action* are formed by annexing the element **-sce-** (*grow, become, begin to*), which appears as ***-ish*** in the English ***vanish*** and ***flourish***. See p. 12.

a. ORIGINALS		INCEPTIVE VERBS	
lūcēre *be bright*	***luc**id*	**lūcēscere** *become (grow) bright*	
flōrēre *bloom*	***flower***	**flōrēscere** *begin to bloom*	***flourish***
frīgēre *be cool*	***frig**id*	**frīgēscere** *grow cool*	***refrigerator***
alere *feed*	***alim**ent*	**ad-olēscere** *grow up*	***ad-olescent***
alitus *raised*	***altitude***	**ad-ultus** *grown up*	***adult***
valēre *be well*	***valor***	**valēscere** *get well*	***convalescent***
prōficere (**i**) *make forward, gain*	***profit***	**proficīscī** *begin to advance, set out*	***proficient***
creāre *make*	***creat**e*	**crēscere** *grow*	***crescent, increase***

b. The originals are often missing or little used.

oblīviscī *become unmindful of, forget* **2** § 230 *b* — ***oblivion***
reminīscī *become mindful of, recall, remember* **2** — ***reminiscence***
nōscere *become acquainted with, come to know* **4** — ***know, knowledge***
cognōscere *become aware of, find out* — ***recognize***
nāscī *spring up, rise, be born* — ***nascent, innate, nation***
veterāscere *grow old, become established* — ***inveterate, veteran***

224. The Latin "Guide Posts"

Words meaning *who, that, as, because, when, since, if,* etc., introduce parts aside from the main statement, and show that the verbs, that go with them, are not the main verb. They are the "guide posts" pointing the way to the main verb by *indicating how many subordinate verbs come before it.*

quī, quae, quod *who, which, that, as, that-he, since-he, though-he*
quod, quoniam (w. Ind.) *because, since, that, as, inasmuch-as*
ut, utī, ubi, postquam, simul ac (w. Ind.) *when, after, as-soon-as*
ut, utī (w. Sub.) *that, in-order-that, so-that, how*
nē (w. Sub.) *that . . . not, in-order-that . . . not*
sī *if;* **nisi** *if . . . not, unless;* **sīn** *but if*
cum (w. Ind. denoting time) *when;*
(w. Sub. denoting cause) *since, as*
cum (w. Sub. denoting situation) *when, while, after*
cum (w. Sub.) *although*
quamquam, etsī (w. Ind.) *even if, although*
dum (w. Ind.) *while;* **dum** (w. Sub.) *till, until;* **dum modo** *if only*

		1	0	
Dē	**quārtā vigiliā,**	**ut**	**dīx-era-t,**	**profectus est.**
		1	0	
About fourth watch,		*as*	*told-had-he,*	*set-out-he.*

He set out about the fourth watch, as he had told (them he would).

Ut and *as* are marked 1 because they show that one verb is coming before the main verb. **Dīxerat** and *he-had-told* are

marked 0 because they show that no other verb is coming before the main verb is reached, unless another " guide " intervenes.

225. Each new " guide " adds one to the number of verbs expected before the main verb, and each subordinate verb reduces that number by one. Figures at any given point indicate how many verbs are thus far known to precede the main verb.

1 0 1 2
Caesar, quoniam senātus cēnsu-era-t, utī, quī-cumque
1 0 1 2
Caesar, inasmuch-as senate decreed-had-it, that, who-ever

1 2 1
Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod-posset, Aeduōs dēfende-
1 2 1
Gaul province held-he, what could-he, Aeduans defend-

0
ret, **Aeduōrum iniūriās neglēct-ūrus nōn era-t.**
0
should-he, *Aeduans' wrongs overlook-going-to not was-he.*

1 0 1 2 1
Inasmuch as the senate had ordered, that, whoever held Gaul
0 1 0
(as his) *province, should, as far as he was able, defend the Aeduans,*
Caesar was not going to overlook the Aeduans' wrongs.

The first verb after a " guide " belongs with it, unless another " guide " intervenes.

Iūs est, ut, quī vincant, eīs, qu-ōs vinca-nt imper-e-nt.[1]
1 2 1 2 1 0
Law is, that, they who win, those, who-m win-they, rule-may.
1 2 1 0 1 0
It is a law, that those who win may rule those, whom they subdue.

[1] The figures should be reduced to 0 before a period. A semicolon requires the same, as it indicates the practical completion of the sense. Parts between semicolons may be treated as complete sentences.

Iūs era-t bell-ī, ut, quī vīc-isse-nt, eīs, qu-ōs
Right was-it war-of, that they-who won-had-they, those, who-m
vīc-isse-nt, quem ad modum vel-le-nt imperā-re-nt.
subdued-had-they, what after fashion like-d-they, rule-might-they.
It was the right of war, that those who had conquered, might rule those, whom they had subdued, after what fashion they liked.

226. If a word meaning *and* (*or* or *nor*) stands immediately after the main verb, it points to another main verb farther on; but if it follows a subordinate verb, it revives the force of the "guide" to which the subordinate verb belongs.

Caesar duās legiōnēs cōnscrīps-it et init-ā aestāt-e,
Caesar two legions enrolled-he and begun-at summer-at,
in Galliam quī dēdūce-re-t, **Quīntum Pedium mīs-it.**
to Gaul that-he take-might-he, *Quintus Pedius sent-he.*
Caesar enlisted two legions and at the beginning of summer sent Quintus Pedius, that he might take (them) *to Gaul.*

Standing after **cōnscrīpsit**, **et** points on to **mīsit**.

Da-t negōtium Senon-ibus, quī fīnitimī Belg-īs
Gives-he task *Senons-to*, who borderers Belgians-to
era-nt, utī ea, quae apud e-ōs gera-ntur,
were-they, that those, which among the-m going-on-are-they,
cognōsc-a-nt, sē-que de hīs rēbus certiōrem
learn-shall-they, him-and as-to these things pretty-certain
faci-a-nt. **Hī omnēs nūntiā-v-ērunt**, manūs cōg-ī.
make-shall-they. *They all report-ed-they* bands gathered-be.

He assigned (it as) *a task to the Senons, who were neighbors to the Belgians, that they should find out those* (things) *that were going on among them, and should keep him posted about these things. They all reported* (that) *bands* (were) *being gathered.*

-que, *and*, connects **faciant** to **cognōscant** and renews the force of **utī**, which governs **cognōscant.**

227. Verbs are often omitted, where they are easily understood.

	1			0
Flūmen Dubis,	ut	circin-ō	circum-ductum	( )
River Doubs,	as-if	compasses-by	about-dug	( )

oppidum cingi-t.
town girdles-it.

The river Doubs encircles the town, as if (it had been) *drawn around it with a pair-of-compasses.*

					1	0
Ē-dūc	**tē-cum**	**etiam**	**omnīs**	**tu-ōs,**	sī minus	( ),
					1	0
Out-take	*thee-with*	*also*	*all*	*thy-men,*	if not-all	( ),

1 0
quam **plūrimōs** ( ).
1 0
as most ( ).

Take out all your men with you too, if (you can) *not* (take them) *all* (take out) *as many as* (you can).

The full Latin sentence is: **Ēdūc tēcum etiam omnīs tuōs, sī minus** (potes), **quam plūrimōs** (potes).

We say: *as well as he can* or *as best he can.* Latin uses only the latter form: **quam optimē potest**, *as best he can*, or, **quam celerrimē potest**, *as quickest he can*, or, **quam maximum mīlitum numerum**, *as greatest a number of soldiers he can.*

Galeae.

Our task and how it is to be accomplished

228. Nothing can make the purpose of well-graded readings clearer, or better emphasize the importance of helps such as are given in this appendix than a glance at the problem which is solved for you below.

It is a rather complicated sentence from the author you are likely first to attack, and the solution serves at once to illustrate the most convenient and satisfactory method by which you must already have attained the ability to attack that author and to outline the surest steps by which you may still attain such ability, if you have not already done so.

229. You will probably regard this sentence difficult at first sight.

"Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat, quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret." B. G., I., 33, 4.

But you can easily read in Latin and understand:

1 *a*. Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolēbant.

2 *a*. Germānī autem [1] Rhēnum trānsībant.

3 *a*. **Germānī** in Galliam **veniēbant**.

4 *a*. Multitūdō Germānōrum in Galliam veniēbat.

5 *a*. Germānī autem Rhēnum trānsībant et magna multitūdō eōrum in Galliam veniēbat.

NOTE. — **Cōnsuēscēbant**, *were becoming accustomed*, assumes the tense of **trānsībant** (2 *a*) and **veniēbant** (3 *a*) and changes them to present infinitives. See § 132.

6 *a*. Germānī autem Rhēnum **trānsīre** cōnsuēscēbant.

7 *a*. Germānī autem Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam magna eōrum multitūdō venīre cōnsuēscēbat.[2]

NOTE. — The statement of an actual occurrence is changed to the *infinitive with subject accusative* when it becomes the subject of a verb. §§ 142, 152 *a*.

8 *a*. **Germānōs** in Galliam **venīre** perīculōsum erat.

9 *a*. **Germānōs** autem **cōnsuēscere** Rhēnum trānsīre Rōmānīs perīculōsum **erat**. (Cf. 2 *a* and 6 *a* above.)

NOTE. — A declaration changes its form when it becomes the object of a verb. §§ 142, 153. Here **erat** becomes **esse**.

10 *a*. Paulātim [3] autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre Rōmānīs perīculōsum **esse** vidēbat.

11 *a*. Magnam multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam venīre populō Rōmānō perīculōsum esse vidēbat.

12 *a*. Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre populō Rōmānō perīculōsum esse vidēbat.

[1] **Autem** *however*. [2] Agrees with its nearest subject. [3] **Paulātim** *gradually, little by little*.

1 *b*. **Hominēs** sibi temperātūrī er**ant**.

2 *b*. Cimbrī Teutonīque Galliam occupāv**erant**.

3 *b*. Cimbrī et Teutonī **ita** fēc**erant**.

4 *b*. Rhodanus Galliam ā prōvinciā dīvidē**bat**.

5 *b*. Sēquanī proximī prōvinciae[1] ex Gallīs sunt. Facile erat Rhodanum ē Sēquanīs in prōvinciam trānsīre.

NOTE. — **Cum** with the *subjunctive* may mean *after*. §§ 115 *b*, *c*, 224.

6 *b*. **Cum** Cimbrī Teutonīque omnem Galliam occupāv**issent**, in prōvinciam exī**bant**. Ex prōvinciā in Ītaliam contendē**bant**.

NOTE. — **Quīn**, *but, so that . . . not*, takes the subjunctive. § 115.

7 *b*. Hominēs barbarī sibi temperātūrī nōn er**ant**, **quīn** in prōvinciam exī**rent**. § 155 *b*.

8 *b*. **Hominēs** barbarōs sibi temperātūrōs nōn **esse** exīstimābat, **quīn** in provinciam nostram exī**rent**.

9 *b*. Hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs sibi temperātūrōs nōn exīstimābat, quīn ex prōvinciā in Ītaliam contende**rent**.

NOTE. — **Ut** with the indicative often means *as*. § 147 *b*.

10 *b*. Hominēs ferī ac barbarī in prōvinciam exitūrī erant, **ut** Cimbrī Teutonīque fēc**erant**. §§ 102–3, 202.

11 *b*. Hominēs ferī ac barbarī temperātūrī nōn erant, quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāssent, in prōvinciam exīrent, **cum** Rhodanus Gallōs ā prōvinciā dīvide**ret**.

NOTE. — But in indirect statements, all subordinate verbs stand in the subjunctive. § 137 *b*.

12 *b*. Hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs sibi temperātūrōs nōn exīstimābat, quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāssent, **ut** ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcis**sent**, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde[2] in Ītaliam contenderent, **cum** Rhodanus Gallōs ā prōvinciā dīvide**ret**.

[1] *I.e.* the cisalpine province, now northern Italy.

[2] **Inde** *from there*.

"Paulātim autem **Germānōs cōnsuēscere** Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, **populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat**; **neque sibi hominēs** ferōs ac barbarōs **temperātūrōs exīstimābat**, quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliam contenderent, praesertim[1] cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret." §§ 225, 226.

The tricks thus employed by Latin authors to express thoughts are limited in number. You can learn them all (or nearly all) beforehand and then read the authors. But to become used to them and master them you must read. This is what is meant by preparing for Caesar, Cicero, and other writers; and if you have not read an abundance of easy Latin intelligently, you are not prepared to read the average Latin of their writings without the greatest drudgery and difficulty.

What shall one do in order to become able to read the authors easily and comfortably and enjoyably?

1. Read easy Latin first. 2. Read connected Latin from the first. 3. Re-read it till you master it. 4. Make yourself understand yourself as you read. 5. Read plenty of Latin that is easy to master. 6. Read aloud to train your eye, to get your own tongue accustomed to narrate to you, and to impress the Latin forms and phrases (in their natural order) on your own ear and understanding. 7. Read the Latin both before and after translating. 8. Read harder and harder sentences and read them harder and harder, and you will soon be able to read anything.

[1] **Praesertim** *especially.*

230. *a.* What appears to be *direct* or *indirect object* in English is expressed in a variety of ways in Latin according to the nature of the governing word. The *governing power* of certain words (especially verbs) will frequently be indicated by using abbreviations to point out some of the more common constructions that must be used with them. Other constructions will be learned by experience and observation.

Constructions	Abbr.	Examples	
Infinitive as subject	Inf. s.	**Legere** licet	§ 131
Infinitive as object	Inf. o.	**Legere** cōnātur	§ 130
Infinitive with subject Accusative	4 Inf.	**Puerum īre** iubet	§ 134
		Puerum īre patitur	§ 142 *a*
b. Takes the Genitive	2	**Librī** cupidus est	§ 107 *c*
		Puerī interest	§ 73 *c*
c. Takes the Dative	3	**Cōnsiliō** interest	§ 73 *d*
		Servīs praeest	
d. Takes the Accusative	4	**Puerum** vocat	§ 5 *d*
e. Takes the Ablative	6	**Librō ūtitur**	§ 182 *b*
f. Acc. of the person, Abl. of the thing	4 p 6 t	**Puerum librō** dōnat	§ 74, 12
		Puerum librō spoliat	§ 63 *b*
g. Dat. of the person, Acc. of the thing	3 p 4 t	**Puerō librum** dōnat	§ 56, 3
		Puerō [1] **librum** imperat	§ 5 *f*
		Puerō [2] **librum** ēripit	§ 5 *f*
h. Two Accusatives	4 p 4 t	**Puerum librum** flāgitat	§ 147 *e*
		Puerum nōmen rogat	§ 155
i. Acc. (thing) ā, ab w. Abl. (person)	4 t ab p	**Librum ā puerō** [1] postulat	§ 147 *e*
		Id ab aliīs [3] quaerit	§ 147 *e*
		Id ā mē petit	
j. ē, ex w. Abl. (person)	4 t ex p	**Id ex puerō** [1] quaerit	§ 147 *e*
Acc. and Dat.	4 t 3 p	**Id puerō** persuādet	§ 147 *e*
ut-clause (thing)	3 p ut w. Sub.	**Puerō** persuādet **ut eat**	§ 147 *a*

[1] Translate *of the boy.* [2] Translate *from the boy.* [3] Translate *of others.*

ENGLISH–LATIN EXERCISES

(Based on text and word lists and paradigms of Appendix. No English-Latin vocabulary necessary.)

While striving to master the forms of a *few* nouns thoroughly, pupils often console themselves with the thought that they are preparing to recognize the cases of *all* nouns promptly and unerringly. Their expectations may well be fulfilled in forms like

sōlis	virtūtī	magnus	amīce	lūcem	tōtō
bonōs	cornūs	omnīs	āera	rēgum	Circēs

because no other case has the same spelling. But when we remark that no Latin scholar on earth can possibly tell the case of

omnis	amīcī	tempus	mare	decem	fīliō
custōs	frūctūs	equīs	oppida	rēgnum	diēs

without first seeing them used in sentences, it becomes evident why the pupil's hope of being able to tell the case of a word by the *last letter or so* is every day being shattered in Latin classes.

The fact is that the character and form of most Latin words are not to be determined so much by knowing their lineage as by observing the " company they keep " — *i.e.* their relation to the words with which they are used.

These exercises aim to develop the habit of looking at words *from both points of view* and to train pupils to employ both these indispensable methods of procedure, viz.:

a. Using forms found in model sentences or like those given in paradigms, and

b. Writing forms of other words known to be correct from their use in easy passages of the text.

Note. — Easy exercises accomplish the desired results far more readily than more difficult ones. These exercises have been made especially simple and easy, as they are intended either for rapid oral or written work. They may be used at intervals, as the reading proceeds, to clinch the pupil's grasp of forms, while their use is most apparent, and to assist in developing a clearer and more definite idea of the *machinery* through which the human mind works to express thoughts both in English and Latin.

One-Word Exercises. English Case-Forms

English cannot be turned into Latin without careful study of the use of each word. The purpose of Exercises I–VI is to compel attention to the construction of single words in English and Latin sentences. Constructions that are apt to be confounded or need to be contrasted are studied together. Sections marked (*a*) in Exercises I–VIII require the use of the nouns found in §§ 75–6 and other words having the same endings.

Exercise I — Predicate Nominative and Direct Object

Study carefully §§ 5 *a, d, e; cf.* § 74, *3, 4; 76. Omit words in parentheses. Number each. Commence each exercise with a capital. Punctuate as in English.*

a. 1. (It is) evening. 2. (I love) the evening. 3. (I see) the master. 4. (He calls) his son. 5. (That is) the son. 6. (He is called) Mark. 7. (He is thought) an enemy. 8. (He is) unfriendly. 9. (That island is) Rhodes. 10. (Do you see) Rhodes? 11. (That is) Philippi. 12. (Do you see) Philippi? 13. (That is) the boy. 14. (We see) the boy. 15. (They are) boys. 16. (They see) the boys. 17. (That is) a book. 18. (He has) a book. 19. (Those are) books. 20. (They have) books.

b. Express the following in Latin (see pp. 3–5) as predicate nominatives.

1. A sphere. 2. A great globe. 3. The earth. 4. The sun. 5. A globe. 6. A great sphere. 7. Large globes. 8. Flat. 9. Round. 10. Large.[1] 11. Bright. 12. Globe-like. 13. Small. 14. Pale.

Express the following in Latin as direct objects.

1. The earth. 2. What? 3. A great light. 4. What (things)? 5. Another light. 6. What things?

[1] Predicate nominatives are either nouns or adjectives; p. 5 note, § 83.

Exercise II — Direct and Indirect Object

Study carefully § 5 d, f; cf. §§ 56, 3; 74, 3, 4, 6 and 93. Use words occurring in § 5 and on pages 2–5 of the text.

a. 1. (It is) Mark. 2. (Call) Mark. 3. (Give) Mark (this). 4. (I see) pupils. 5. (Are they) pupils? 6. (They are not) masters. 7. (Tell) the pupils (so). 8. (He saw) boys. 9. (Did he tell) the boys (so)? 10. (He told) most (of them). 11. (See) the books. 12. (Are they) books? 13. (Some are) pupils; (others are) teachers. 14. (That is) a village. (See *5 g* and Vocab.)

1. (Call) the boys. 2. (Do not call) the master. 3. (They are called) globes. 4. (See) the globes. 5. (It is) the master. 6. (That is) a boy. 7. (He is not) a pupil. 8. (It is) his son. 9. (Give) the son (a book). 10. (Call) a boy. 11. (Is he called) Mark? 12. (He calls) most-of-them. 13. (We choose) the boys. 14. (Tell) the boys (so). 15. (Give) the sons (this).

b. Express as indirect objects (see pp. 6–8, 11 and § 74).

1. The earth. 2. Moon. 3. Stars. 4. It; them. 5. Cato.

Express as direct objects (see pp. 6–11 and § 74, 4).

1. Light.[1] 2. The earth. 3. It.[1] 4. Them. 5. Another-body's light. 6. A soft light. 7. Other lights. 8. These lights. 9. A-great-deal. 10. Many (things); what (things)? 11. The stars. 12. Me; himself. 13. A river. 14. Cato.

Express as predicate nominatives (see pp. 6–11; § 74, 3).

1. Lighted. 2. Luminous. 3. Dark.[2] 4. Bright. 5. Like. 6. Another's.[2] 7. Glittering. 8. Bright and hot. 9. Thick and countless. 10. Flat. 11. Globular; round. 12. Large. 13. Glittering and hot. 14. Light and shadows. 15. Little dots; stars; a star. 16. Spheres. 17. Other suns. 18. Cato. 19. Swift. 20. A ray; rays. 21. Julius. 22. A book.

[1] Use two or more different words.

[2] Which are plural? Which neuter? § 55 *c*.

EXERCISE III — **Direct Address and Exclamations**

Study § *74, 7 and 8. Cf.* §§ *75–6. Use words on pp. 2–5.*

a. 1. Thou foe. 2. My son. 3. (Look), master! 4. O Mark! 5. My (native) Rhodes. 6. (Fortunate) Rhodes! 7. (Poor) Mark! 8. (Come) boys. 9. O pupils. 10. (Lucky) pupils! 11. (Look) my sons! 12. (Speak) foes! 13. O (fortunate) Philippi! 14. Ye masters. 15. O (great) globes! 16. (Poor) boys! 17. O (bright) rays!

EXERCISE IV — **Ownership Asserted; Ownership Assumed**

Study § *5 e. Cf.* §§ *56, 2, 3; 105 and 106 b.*

a. 1. (That is) a book. 2. (I see) the book. 3. (It belongs) to Mark. 4. (It is) Mark's (book). 5. (Is there a name) to the book? 6. (That is) a school.[1] 7. (Those are) pupils. 8. (Call) the pupils. 9. (Give) the pupils (books). 10. (Are there books) for the pupils? 11. (Is there any name) to the school? 12. Mark (has books). 13. (I have) Mark's (books). 14. (Mark has) the books. (§ *5 e.*) 15. (It belongs) to the boy. 16. Boys'. 17. Globe's. 18. Of most-(of-them). 19. Of Philippi.

Express in Latin (see pp. 7–14).

1. Earth's.[2] 2. Of the moon. 3. Its.[3] 4. Their.[2] 5. Stars'.[2] 6. Of the sky. 7. Of the sun. 8. Of this figure. 9. Of the smaller dipper. 10. And-of-them.

EXERCISE V — **Measures of Extent and Difference; Time**

Study § *68. Cf.* § *5 d, j; 56, 4, 6; 74, 17, 18, 19.*

a. 1. (It is) autumn.[4] 2. During autumn. 3. During the evening. 4. At evening. 5. Within a year. 6. (I see) hamlets. 7. (They are) villages. 8. (It is) the year. 9. A year's (time). 10. Years' (work). 11. (Time) of year. 12. (Is there any end) to the year? 13. (It lasts) a year. 14. (It lasts) for years (§ 56, 4). 15. A year (later). 16. (Ten) years (after).

[1] **Lūdus.** [2] In more than one way. [3] § 109 *b, c.* [4] **Autumnus.**

b. Express in Latin; see pp. 6, 10, 12, 18, 19.

1. During-the-day.[1] 2. During the night. 3. So great a distance (§ 74, 17). 4. At midday. 5. In the morning. 6. All day. 7. Late in the day. 8. All night long. 9. The whole year. 10. At midnight. 11. At the rising (of the sun). 12. At night. 13. The[2] higher the better (74, 19). 14. (Is away) a-great-deal. 15. A-great-deal better. 16. Next year. 17. Last year. 18. (Can)not (read) at all. 19. A year before. 20. The year before. 21. (Is away) two years. 22. Seven years later. 23. Yesterday.[3] 24. Today. 25. Tomorrow.[1] 26. On that day.[4] 27. In six years. 28. For six years.

EXERCISE VI — **Subject Nominative; Subject Accusative**

Study §§ 56, 1 and 4; 121, 122, 125, 134, 142 a. Cf. § 74, 1 and 2.

a. 1. A boy (goes). 2. (We see) a boy (go). 3. Boys (call). 4. (I hear) boys (call). 5. A friend (is calling). 6. (I hear) a friend (calling). 7. Most-of-them (came). 8. (We saw) most-of-them (come). 9. The villages (burned). 10. (We saw) the villages (burn). 11. The school (is closed). 12. (He orders) the school (closed).

b. Express as subjects of finite verbs (see pp. 2–11).

1. A globe. 2. The moon. 3. The sky (p. 5, note.) 4. The sun. 5. Light.[3] 6. Night. 7. The earth.[3] 8. This light. 9. These lights. 10. Globes. 11. The stars.[3] 12. We; I; you; thou. 13. Julius. 14. Julia. 15. The boy. 16. He; it;[3] she; they.[3]

Express as subjects of infinitives.

1. A globe. 2. The moon. 3. The sky. 4. The sun. 5. Light.[3] 6. Night. 7. Earth.[3] 8. This light. 9. These lights. 10. Globes. 11. Stars. 12. Us; me; it;[3] them.

[1] Latin adverb. [2] English adverb; Abl. in Latin.
[3] More than one way. [4] Of which declension is each? § 55 *c.*

a. 1. (There goes) a boy.[1] 2. (I see) the boy (go). 3. (He bade) the boy (go). 4. (There) he (goes). 5. Horses (run). 6. (I see) horses (run). 7. The sons (go). 8. (I let) the sons (go). 9. (Where are) the boys? 10. (There are) the boys![1] 11. (He orders) the boys (to go).[2] 12. (Here is) the boy! 13. (Where is) the master? 14. (He is calling) the boy. 15. The boy (is called). 16. (He bids) the boy (hurry). 17. (There go) the boys. 18. (I see) the boys (run). 19. (They order) the school (closed). 20. The school (is closed). 21. (It is closed) for a year (§ 56, 4). 22. (Here comes) Mark.

[1] If the word *here*, *there*, or *where* stands first in an English sentence, the subject usually stands after the verb. [2] § 146 *a*.

Two-Word Exercises [1]

Predicate Nominative — what a person or thing *is*, *becomes*, *is made* or *called* or *said to be*, etc.

Predicate Accusative — what one *knows*, *thinks*, *declares* or *learns* a person or thing *to be* or *become*, etc.

Exercise VII — *Study* § 5 *a–c; cf.* §§ 74, 3; 146, 1. *Use words* (*pp. 24–6*) *like paradigms* §§ 75–6.

a. 1. Paulus (is considered) a friend. 2. (I think) Paulus a friend. 3. (I know) Paulus (to be) a friend. 4. (I see) my friend Paulus. 5. His son (is thought) hostile. 6. (I think) his son (to be) an enemy. 7. (I call) his son an enemy. 8. The boy (is named) Paulus. 9. (He calls) his son Paulus. 10. (We know) the boy (to be) Paulus. 11. (We know) the boys (to be) friendly. 12. The master (is) a Greek.

b. Express as predicate nominatives (*see pp. 5, 6, 10–1, 14*).

1. A globe. 2. The moon. 3. Large (*n.*). 4. Great globes. 5. Large (*f.*). 6. Dark (*n.*). 7. Day. 8. Shadows. 9. Stars.[2] 10. Pale. 11. A star. 12. Suns. 13. Spheres.

[1] In exercises marked (*a*). [2] More than one way.

14. Small. 15. Round.[1] 16. The dipper. 17. Motionless. 18. The larger dipper. 19. The smaller. 20. Polaris.[2]

Express as predicate accusatives (*see pp. 5, 6, 10–2*).

1. A globe. 2. The moon. 3. Bright (*sing.*). 4. Great[2] globes. 5. Large (*f.*). 6. Dark (*n.*). 7. Day. 8. Shadows. 9. Pale. 10. Stars.[1] 11. A star. 12. Suns. 13. Spheres. 14. Small. 15. Very-large. 16. Night. 17. Midday. 18. High.

Express as predicate nominatives (*see pp. 15–21*).

1. South. 2. West-wind. 3. Cool.[1] 4. Damp. 5. Soft. 6. Hard. 7. Harder. 8. Flowing. 9. Shapeless. 10. Even. 11. Plains. 12. Hills.[3] 13. Rough. 14. Thin. 15. Dense. 16. Denser. 17. More thin. 18. Very-rare. 19. Fixed. 20. End. 21. Situated. 22. The North Pole. 23. Cold (*pl.*). 24. Cold (*sing.*). 25. Warm.[1] 26. Spring. 27. Summer. 28. Longer. 29. Green. 30. Clear. 31. Blue. 32. Very-short. 33. Dry. 34. Covered-with-flowers.

Exercise VIII — Predicate of the Object; Appositives

Note. — Predicate Nouns are attached to the direct object in such a way as to become a *part of the assertion.*

Ex. (They count) the boy a friend. Cf. § *5 b.*

Write the word for *boy* as direct object; then *friend, predicate of the object* (accusative). **Puerum Puerum amīcum.**

Study § *5 b and* § *93; cf.* § *74, 5.*

1. (He considers) the Romans his enemies. 2. Romans (seem) friendly. 3. Most-of-them (are not) enemies. 4. (I call) most-of-them friends. 5. Our friend Mark (is calling). 6. Our friend Mark's (plan). 7. (Tell) our friend Mark. 8. (They see) your friend the master. 9. Friend Mark! 10. (We know) the boy (to be) Mark.

[1] More than one way.
[2] Of which declension is each? § 55 *c*; cf. §§ 42, 2; 52. [3] § 79 *a.*

b. Express as predicates of the object (see pp. 3, 12–5).

1. A globe. 2. The East. 3. The West. 4. The South. 5. The pointers. 6. The North. 7. The west wind.

Express as subjects with appositives (pp. 15, 17, 19).

1. The first (one), Boreas. 2. The latter being adjusted. 3. The star Polaris. 4. Water when-falling (p. 42).

Express as objects with appositives (see pp. 20–3).

1. Places that-were-deserted. 2. The fruits that-are-ripe. 3. Fields and woods that are white.

Study § 94. Use words found on pp. 24–6.

a. 1. O (fortunate) Greeks who-were-philosophers. 2. (They call) the Greek Theodorus. 3. (He names) his son Lucius. 4. (He is older) than my friend Aemilius. 5. (They saw) Rhodes when-it-was-a hamlet.[1] 6. (He is) a boy that-is-friendly. 7. The master who-is-our-friend (told us this). 8. (We knew) his son when-a-boy. 9. (He saw) Philippi when-it-was-a-mere-village. 10. The son (is learning it) while-he-is a boy. 11. (We told) most of-them as-they-were-friendly. 12. (Invite) the Greeks even-though-they-are-enemies. 13. The master (lived here) when-a-boy. 14. (Tell) the son, if-he-seems-friendly. 15. (Ask) the boy even-if-he-is-a Greek. 16. (We shall ask) the Romans because-they-are-our-friends. 17. (Invite) Titus since-he-is-my son. 18. (They are stronger) than Mark when-he-was-a boy. 19. A boy who-was-his-friend (warned him).

Exercise IX — Infinitives in English and Latin

Study §§ 121–3, 127–8, 130. What is a finite verb? § 125. Use Infinitives only. Omit words in parentheses.

1. (I ought) to call. 2. (I will) call. 3. (They may) be called. 4. (I can) be called. 5. Calling (may) be done. 6. (I

[1] Study § 94.

ought) to try. 7. (I can) make effort. 8. (I can) order. 9. (It may) be ordered. 10. Order (may) be given. 11. To read. 12. (It can) be read. 13. (I may) take. 14. (We can) let. 15. (It may) be heard. 16. (I can) send. 17. (He is willing) to go. 18. Traveling (may) be done. 19. (I may) be unwilling. 20. (It cannot) be. 21. (He began) traveling. 22. (They dare not) speak. 23. (Doesn't he dare) to be heard?

Exercises of one to three words. *See §§ 131–4 a.*

a. 1. Trying (is permitted). 2. (One may) try. 3. Reading (is allowed). 4. Bribing (is) giving. 5. Call (is) speak. 6. To order (is) to allow. 7. To be taken. 8. Be going. 9. To be. 10. To be put. 11. Be able. 12. Let. 13. To wish. 14. Prefer. 15. Be unwilling.

1. (I seem) to be able. 2. (Seem) to be. 3. (Seem) to hear. 4. (Kept) from trying. 5. (Ordered) to read. 6. (Kept) from being. 7. (Forced) to let. 8. (Said) to be.

1. (I wish) to call my friends (§ 133). 2. (We can) be friends. 3. (He seems) to be unfriendly. 4. (Might) be called friend. 5. (Is ordered) to call the boys. 6. (Seems) to be calling the master. 7. (Appears) to *be* a wall. 8. (May) be willing to speak. 9. (I may) prefer to read. 10. To try to go.

b. 1. (Hear) Mark call (§ 134). 2. (I hear) calling done. 3. (Let) a boy go. 4. (I think) Mark willing. 5. (Regard) boys able to speak. 6. (I order) boys to be called. 7. (I hear) the son call. 8. (I hear) it ordered. 9. (Hear) the order given. 10. (I saw) a boy take a horse. 11. (I saw) the horses taken.

Express as direct objects of other verbs (pp. 21–2, 26).

1. To ripen. 2. Reaping. 3. Picking. 4. To be. 5. To become white. 6. To pick. 7. To gather. 8. To make-ready. 9. To speak. 10. To learn.

Express as subjects of other verbs (cf. §§ 129, 131, 133).

1. Seeing. 2. Going-out. 3. To see (p. 20). 4. To wander (p. 24). 5. Writing (p. 29). 6. Looking-over (p. 34). 7. To count (p. 36). 8. To measure (p. 41). 9. Reading. 10. To write (p. 29). 11. To get (p. 45). 12. Acquiring (p. 46). 13. Writing (p. 48). 14. To enumerate (p. 50). 15. Getting. 16. Building. 17. Keeping-up. 18. Providing. 19. To bring-up (p. 52).

Complete Sentences

Exercise X — The Present Indicative (Finite)

Study §§ 136–7. Review § 5 a–c and 74, 1–5.

1. He is calling. 2. The boy is calling. 3. [1] She is calling the boy. 4. A boy is being called. 5. It is called Rhodes. 6. (The island) is called Rhodes. 7. He is called Mark. 8. The boy is called Mark. 9. Calling-is-being-done. 10. They call. 11. Boys call. 12. They call the boy Lucius. 13. The boy is called Lucius. 14. He calls the boys friends.

1. The boys are called friendly. 2. They order. 3. The order-is-given. 4. They are ordered. 5. Reading is being done. 6. It is read. 7. They do go. 8. One goes.

Note. — Every language has its own peculiar order of words. Latin words must be written or spoken in the *natural Latin order*. The infinitive regularly stands before indicatives meaning *may, can, let, wish, try, will, prefer, are heard, are ordered*, etc. Imitate the order of words in the model sentences given in §§ 130–4.

Exercise XI — Indicatives and Infinitives

a. 1. They call. 2. They can call (§ 121). 3. They are trying. 4. They may try. 5. It is permitted to try. 6. One may read. 7. They read. 8. They will not read. 9. They

[1] Place the *verb at the end* of the sentence or of its clause.

will-rather hear. 10. He prefers to hear. 11. He is reading. 12. He is ordered to read. 13. He is ordered to go. 14. It is being read. 15. It can be read. 16. She reads.

Infinitives with Indicatives (§§ *129, 132; cf.* § *155*).

b. 1. Seem to rise (p. 12). 2. Seems to remain (p. 14). 3. Seem to turn-themselves (p. 19). 4. Are seen going. 5. Are seen turning-themselves-back (p. 25). 6. Of speaking (p. 26). 7. About doubling (p. 29). 8. Cannot be discerned (p. 30). 9. Was the custom to count (p. 30). 10. One may measure (p. 41). 11. Method of measuring. 12. Taught to find (p. 43). 13. To get by reading (p. 45). 14. By hearing; by seeing (p. 46). 15. (We) are taught to write (p. 48). 16. Are forced to write; ought to shine (p. 49).

Express in Latin (*as found on pp. 22–3; cf.* §§ *136–7*).

Irr.	-ā-	-ē-	-e-	-i-	-ī-
brings	blows	shines [1]	burns	there begins	raves
becomes	roars	sees [2]	grows	looks-down	comes [3]
(they) are	blow	see	fall	begin	come [4]
become	bend	are silent	seek	look-down	go [4]
are-away [5]	move	are-rigid	dry-up	take; make [6]	hear

Express in Latin (*see pp. 10, 20–3; cf.* §§ *181–3*).

is called	is seen	is spoken of	is-made [7]	is heard
detains-itself	seems	turns-itself [8]	dies	bribes
are called	seem	feed (selves)	die	bribe
gather (selves)	dread	come-back	let	open
attempt	are-mixed	help-selves [9]	go (§ 206)	go out

c. Express in Latin (*cf.* §§ *136–7*).

1. Gift-is-made (§ 137). 2. Penetrating-is-done (p. 16). 3. Answer-is-given (p. 43). 4. Descending-is-done (p. 18). 5. Taking away-is-done (p. 43). 6. Going-is-done (p. 18).

[1] p. 12. [2] § 74. [3] p. 15. [4] p. 24. [5] p. 10. [6] p. 21. [7] § 212. [8] p. 19. [9] p. 26.

7. Calling-is-done (§ 136). 8. One may (§ 136). 9. Reading-is-done (or) one reads (§ 106 *c*). 10. One takes; one heeds; one goes (§ 136). 11. One replies (p. 43). 12. One writes (p. 49).

NOTE. — A former thought or statement is often mentioned as a part of a new thought or statement (§ 142). Former thoughts are often expressed as the direct object of verbs meaning *see, hear, perceive, know, say, read, order, bid, let, wish* (§ 142).

d. 1. The master calls. 2. They hear the master call. 3. Boys try. 4. He lets the boys try. 5. The sons speak. 6. They let the sons speak. 7. The-order-is-given. 8. They hear the-order-given. 9. The master is reading. 10. The boys wish the master to read. 11. The son goes. 12. He lets his son go. 13. They hear that[1] the son goes. 14. The boys try. 15. They wish the boys to try. 16. He wishes that the boys try. 17. It is being read. 18. They wish it to be read.

e. Imitate the sentences on pp. 12 and 13.

In the morning the sun rises. It rises off east. We see the sun rise. At mid-day the sun is high in the sky. We call the mid-day noon. The sun shines all day. We see the sun shining in the sky. Late in the day it sets. We see (it) set off west. At evening it-gets-dark. The stars grow bright. We see the stars grow bright. The moon rises off east. We see the moon rise. It shines all night. We see the moon shining in the sky. Late at night the moon sets. The stars also seem to set in the west.

f. Express in Latin as found in the text.

(We) are (p. 16); call, see (p. 12); get (p. 7); hear (p. 13).
(We) are-away, stand, like, choose (p. 24); desire[2] (p. 26).
(We) are able (p. 48); are called (§ 187); are taught (p. 43).
(We) think (for ourselves), help-ourselves, measure (p. 38, § 182).

[1] § 146 *a*. [2] or *wish*.

(We) look, speak-of, declare, know, know-not, inquire (p. 42).
(We) notice, regard, learn, become-acquainted-with, are able, advance-ourselves, become, distinguish, can, are taught (p. 45).
(We) get, go out, make, are-made (p. 46).
(We) shall-note, have-said, were, shall-learn, shall-follow (p. 34).

Express in Latin as found in the text or paradigms.

(Thou) art (p. 57); art reading (p. 5); askest (p. 43);
(Thou) callest (§ 187); art rejoicing; dost-understand (p. 57); takest (§ 202); hearest (§ 207); goest (§ 212).
(Thou) canst (§ 183); art called; art excited; art forgetful (p. 57); art taken (§ 202); art heard (§ 207).
(Thou) wilt-have-completed; wilt-begin; wilt-be-clad (p. 57).
(You) did-read; are-reading; will-read (p. 10).
(I) am; think; am called; hold; rejoice; understand (p. 57); take (§ 202); hear (§ 207); can; could;[1] was; were[1] (§ 183).

Exercise XII — Commands; The Position of the Vocative

Study Imperative forms. See §§ 183 c, 186, 189, 191 b, 194, 196 b, 199, 201 b, 204, 206 b, 209, 211 b, 214. Cf. § 170, note.

The negative of a command or entreaty is **nē** (*not*). The negative of a declaration is **nōn** (*not*).

Nōlī, nōlīte[2] (*do not*) followed by the infinitive is far more common and more polite than **nē** with the imperative.

Nē puerum vocā!	**Nōlī eum vocāre**	**Nōn vocat**
don't call the boy!	*do not call him*	*he is not calling*

1. Call the master, Mark.[3] 2. Don't call the boys! 3. Do not call the boys. 4. Go, boy! Don't be called. 5. Go, boys;[3] don't be called! 6. Try,[4] Aemilius. 7. Try, boys!

[1] More than one way. [2] § 186. [3] § 56, 5. [4] §§ 181–2.

8. Do read,[1] master! Order[2] the boys to read. Bid Mark (to) try. 9. Read, Mark! Don't be bidden. 10. Let[3] the boys go, master! 11. Let Titus be invited, boys. Don't let Paulus hear! Do not let[3] the master hear. 12. Go, boy! Don't be ordered. Don't be caught. 13. Be friendly, Mark.

[1] Cf. § 199. [2] Cf. § 194. [3] Cf. § 206 *b*.

Exercise XIII — Adverbs and Indeclinable Numerals

Study § 69 and the table of numerals, p. 29.

The boy has a book. He reads well. The boys have books. They can read well. The barbarian is not a pupil. He can not read. Most Greeks can read. The majority (of) Romans can read well. Romans speak (in-) Latin. Mark speaks (in-) Latin. He can speak well. Titus speaks better. Most pupils speak very well. Theodorus speaks differently. He speaks (in-) Greek. The barbarians do not speak (in-) Greek. They cannot even speak (in-) Latin. The Gaul[1] tries to speak Latin. He speaks as well as he can. Theodorus speaks badly. The master calls the boys. They hear the-calling-done. They do not wish to go. He calls again-and-again. Afterward though-unwilling[2] they go as quickly as possible. He tells (bids) them to read. They read very well. They read as long-as they can. Afterward he lets them go.

1. How long is he absent?[3] 2. He is away for a-long-time. 3. The master calls the boys more-than-once. 4. They are far away.[3] 5. They do not hear. 6. They are too far away. 7. They stay (are) away[3] too long. 8. They go away[4] as far as possible. 9. They wander[5] far and wide. 10. They go away very seldom. 11. They do not love the master as much as they fear him. 12. They do not wish the master ill.

[1] **Gallus.** [2] **invītī.** [3] **§ 185.**
[4] **abeunt.** [5] **vagantur.**

1. There are ten pupils. 2. Apollonius (3) has fifty books. 3. Titus gives Theodorus books. 4. The boy does not read well. 5. He reads as best he can. 6. The barbarians [2] cannot even read. 7. The boys read more easily. 8. Marcus reads the book five times. 9. He loves to read. 10. He reads as rapidly as he can. 11. He often makes-mistakes.[2] 12. Titus loves horses especially. 13. He loves horses more than (he loves) books. 14. [3] Titus (3) has twenty horses.[1] 15. He gives the master books. 16. The master reads very well. 17. They express-themselves otherwise than the master (speaks).

[1] See § 62 *f*. [2] **errat.**
[3] (3) = Dat. (1) = Nom.; cf. § 105.

Exercise XIV — The Use of Prepositions

Note. — Some Latin prepositions are always followed by the accusative case; some always take the ablative; **in** and **sub** may take either case. Each Latin preposition has *just one underlying idea*, that we cannot express exactly with any one word. Each partial meaning given must be taken in the sense of all the others. English prepositions have no exact equivalents in Latin.

Ex. *They send Mark a book.* Cf. § 5 *f*.

Write the word for *book* (direct obj.) 1. **Librum . . .**
Distance is involved. Use **ad** 1. **Librum ad . . .**
Ad governs the Acc. case 1. **Librum ad Mārcum . . .**
Dare § 128 means *give* or *send* 1. **Librum ad Mārcum dant.**

Ex. *He starts for the fields.* Cf. § 5 *g*.

Destination; **in** with Acc. 2. **In agrōs . . .**
Proficīscī start (like **loquī** § 136) 2. **In agrōs proficīscitur.**

Ex. *He seems* (a man) *of friendly feeling toward Titus.*
Amīcō animō in Titum vidētur.

Use a preposition with the accusative in each. Study § 57.

1. In-the-direction-of-the hamlet. 2. (Wait) till evening! 3. Near the village. 4. Up to the walls.[1] 5. They go toward the fields. 6. Up on the wall. 7. Close-by the village.[2] 8. He is next-to Mark. 9. He is ordered to go ahead-of the boys. 10. The pupil is in-care-of the master. 11. They are going among friends. 12. They are wandering in-the-vicinity-of the village. 13. They happen[3] upon a barbarian. 14. He is starting for school. 15. Between the pupils.

Use only prepositions with the ablative. Study § 58.

1. From-the-direction-of the village. 2. From a boy (up). 3. He is called by a boy. 4. Away from the walls. 5. From-the-direction-of Rhodes. 6. Down from the wall. 7. The boy is with the master. 8. They are among friends. 9. He is on the wall. 10. And for this reason. 11. He speaks concerning the books. 12. A few of our men are speaking. 13. He speaks for his friends. 14. They are (§ 185) far away from the school (§ 221 *b*). 15. He is in the village.

Use at least one preposition in each exercise. Study § 60.

1. He sends Mark a book. 2. They are on the wall. 3. They lead the horses up on a hill. 4. Titus goes to the village (§ 5 *g*). 5. He puts the boys to flight. 6. The boys have in mind to call the master (§ 105). 7. Call the boys to the house, Titus. 8. They are far away from the house (§ 221 *b*). 9. Titus sends Theodorus a book. 10. Our friends are at the village. 11. They return home from the village. 12. The boy

[1] § 63 *a*. [2] **vīcus -ī, m.** [3] **incidere**, cf. §§ 197, 221 *b*.

goes with the horses. 13. Mark is one of them. 14. Not a few of the boys are in the school. 15. They rush [1] to arms. 16. He is (a boy) of unfriendly mind toward the Greeks (§ 62 *g*).

Use no prepositions. For case forms see §§ 56, 60–2, 76.

1. Give a book to Mark! 2. They ride on horses (§ 62 *b*). 3. Apollonius goes to Rhodes. 4. They return home. 5. Mark goes to Philippi. 6. He is in Cyprus. 7. They go (out) from home (§ 221 *b*). 8. Mark gives Theodorus a book. 9. They return at evening. 10. They are coming-back [2] from Rhodes. 11. They till the land with horses. 12. They wait for a year. 13. It is the master's son. 14. It is the house of Titus. 15. The field is next (§ 68 *c*, Ex.) to the village (3).

Use one preposition with the accusative in each. § 57.

1. Beyond the village. 2. In the eyes of Apollonius. 3. At my house. 4. At Titus' house. 5. In which direction are they going? 6. In sight of town. 7. They are wandering over the fields. 8. Because of the height of the walls.

Use one preposition with the ablative in each. § 58.

1. One of [3] them is returning. 2. There is a bridge over (on) the river. 3. One of the boys is going out from home. 4. In comparison with the books. 5. Not a few of the pupils are trying. 6. They wait-for [4] Titus in front of the walls. 7. I take Titus for a friend. 8. They go along with the master. 9. He is among the boys. 10. The master returns [2] ahead of the pupils. 11. In behalf of the barbarians.

[1] **currere**; cf. § 197.
[2] **revertī** like **loquī**, § 136; see § 182.
[3] See § 66 *c*.
[4] **exspectare**.

Exercise XV — Indefinite Numbers

Study § 64. Use prepositions in Nos. 14 and 16.

1. How-many pupils are there? 2. There are many. 3. They are going home. 4. They see horses. 5. The horses belong to Titus. 6. Titus sees several. 7. How many does Theodorus see? 8. He sees five horses. 9. The master sees just-as-many. 10. Mark sees as many as Titus. 11. The Gaul sees none. 12. How many are going? 13. Our (men) are going. 14. Titus takes as many as possible with him. 15. The majority wish to go. 16. Not-a-few of the boys ride on horses.

Exercise XVI — Indefinite Pronouns (Masculine)

Study §§ 40, 65–6 and 108–10 masculine only. See § 74.

Use one preposition in each sentence (except 12, 13, 15, 16).

1. The boys are wandering in the fields. 2. A-few are in the school. 3. Some prefer to remain (§ 128) in school. 4. Very few are going to the village. 5. The master goes with the boys. 6. They go to the fields. 7. She sees the boys go to school. 8. She sees her (people) go to the village. 9. They call their men into the house. 10. She sends her (friends) books (§ 5 *f*). 11. My-people are of friendly feeling toward Mark. 12. The good-men love horses. 13. Horses do not like bad-men. 14. The good are of friendly mind toward the bad. 15. Some praise Mark, others blame him. 16. The one praises Mark, the other (praises) Titus.

1. One praises one, another another. 2. Which one of the (two) boys blames Mark? 3. Neither-one blames Mark. 4. Neither (§ 66) Mark nor any one of the boys speaks. 5. Some blame one, others another. 6. The ones praise the master, the others blame him. 7. Nobody calls the pupils. 8. Who is ordering the boy to speak? 9. He alone is going home. 10. They alone return home (§ 182 *b*).

Exercise XVII — First and Second Declension Nouns

Note. — All the nouns thus far given belong to the same class as **alumnus**, pl. **alumni**. First Declension nouns belong to the same class as our word **formula**, pl. **formulae** (borrowed from Latin). Neuter nouns of the Second Declension are of the same class as **stratum**, pl. **strata**. They have **-um** (rarely **-us**) in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular and **-a** in the same cases of the plural. Note that the ending **-a** occurs in the singular of the one class but in the plural of the other.

Study § 77. *Use no prepositions. Cf.* §§ *56, 60.*

1. In Alexandria. 2. In Rhodes. 3. At Arpinum. 4. In Philippi. 5. From Syracuse. 6. At Leuctra. 7. He is Titus' son. 8. She is a daughter of Titus. 9. Arpinum is a town. 10. Son's and daughter's. 11. Town's. 12. The sons' and daughters'. 13. Towns'. 14. He goes to Philippi. 15. They go either[1] to Athens or[1] to Leuctra. 16. He goes to Arpinum. 17. They go to Rhodes. 18. According to a plan. 19. He goes out from Athens. 20. By the north wind.

[1] Use **aut . . . aut**: cf. § 66 *a*.

Use one preposition in each. §§ *57–8.*

1. To the town. 2. Through towns and villages. 3. With sons and daughters. 4. Into the crowd. 5. Into camp. 6. Into the provinces. 7. Toward the provinces. 8. In-sight-of Arpinum. 9. Away from the camp. 10. Toward Athens. 11. In the towns. 12. To-a-point-near Philippi (§ 60).

Note. — To get the base of a noun of the First or Second Declension, drop **-ī** or **-ōrum**, **-ae** or **-ārum** from the *genitive*. Use the uncontracted Genitive Singular only to get the base. In writing Latin use the contracted form of the Genitive Singular, if any. Do not attempt to write the Nominative Singular without first making sure of the exact spelling; see §§ 6 *c*, 41–3. Each noun has its own set of endings. From the Nominative and Genitive given in the vocabulary, it can be determined which set of terminations a noun has.

Study §§ 59, 129, 135; cf. §§ 190 b, 191 d, 195 b, 196 d, 200 b, 201 d, 205 d, 206 d, 210 b, 211 d, 215 b.

1. For the sake of hearing. 2. For attacking. 3. Is necessary to try (cf. § 152 *a*). 4. He is ready to read. 5. He can read well. 6. Upon inquiring. 7. Upon taking. 8. By fleeing. 9. He is prepared to flee. 10. They wish to read. 11. To act is necessary. 12. It is time to act. 13. Time to see is not given. 14. Time to take arms is not given.

Exercise XVIII — Time, Cause, Purpose, Manner, Respect

Study §§ 56, 6; 59; 74, 12, 15, 16, 18; 96 b, c. *See pp. 31–2.*

Use no prepositions. 1. To Aemilius. 2. To Aemilia. 3. In wisdom.[1] 4. In abundance.[2] 5. With resources.[2] 6. From care. 7. From Leuctra. 8. In an hour.[3] 9. For an hour (4). 10. For five hours (4). 11. To the inhabitants.[4] 12. Hour's. 13. Galba's.[5] 14. Girl's. 15. In the course[6] of an hour. 16. In the period[6] of a year. 17. In zeal.[7] 18. In two years. 19. According to the plan. 20. Wrongly. 21. He is praised for his diligence. 22. (Go) for grain. 23. (Start) for Rome.

Use a preposition in each. 1. In-the-eyes-of Aemilius. 2. In-the-care-of Aemilia (§ 57). 3. With Galba. 4. Between Aemilia and the maid.[8] 5. Beyond Rome. 6. On-this-side-of the camp (§ 57). 7. By a slave; by a maid. 8. About troops.[2] 9. From among the troops. 10. One of the poets (§ 66 *c*) is calling. 11. Few of the philosophers wish to go. 12. In-behalf-of the sons; in-behalf-of the daughters. 13. In the opinion of the crowd. 14. Carefully. 15. With diligence. 16. According to Paulus' plan. 17. To Aemilius. 18. Against a companion. 19. For the camp. 20. At Julius.

[1] **cōnsilium.** [2] **cōpia -ae**, f. [3] **hōra -ae**, f. [4] **incola -ae**, m.
[5] **Galba -ae**, m. [6] **spatium -ī**, n. [7] **studium -ī**, n. [8] **serva -ae**, f.

Study §§ 66 b, c and 120 a–e. Use words on pp. 28–9.

One preposition in each. 1. One of the sons is calling. 2. Aemilia is calling one of the girls. 3. Two of the boys are at home. 4. They can see one of the towns. 5. He is called by one of (his) daughters. 6. They see the horses of two of the barbarians (§ 63). 7. Three of the towns are taken. 8. He can see three of the horses. 9. Thousands of barbarians are fighting with the Romans. 10. The master gives three of the boys books. 11. Titus is reading a book of one of his sons. 12. Mark gives one of the boys a book. 13. The camp is in-sight-of Leuctra. 14. They are ten miles away from the camp. 15. Both are coming from the village. 16. Either Lucius or Galba will call the boys to the house.

Study §§ 67–8; cf. uses of words on pp. 31–2.

1. Year before last. 2. Ten miles. 3. Ten miles away. 4. On that day. 5. He cannot read at all. 6. Twice in the course of a year. 7. Four times in a period of three years. 8. For a period of four days. 9. He cannot see at first. 10. He sees Aemilius for the first time at Arpinum. 11. Five times in the course of a year. 12. He calls again and again.

Study §§ 70, 71 c; 72; 73 a–e; 74, 17 and 19.

1. There is need of so much for the pupils. 2. How much of good is there to the book? 3. It is rated of very great (value). 4. He buys it at a very small (figure). 5. It is so much the interest of the pupils. 6. They take part in reading. 7. Slaves are for-the-most-part a protection to boys. 8. How much do they read? 9. They read as much as I. 10. How much better can Titus read? 11. Very little better. 12. The one reads too little, the other well enough. 13. There is nothing bad to him. 14. He is not alarmed at all.

Exercise XIX — Indefinite Pronouns (Neuter)

Study §§ 71 a, b; 108 a, b; 109 a, 110, 111, 112.

1. What is of more (value)? 2. They hear nothing else. 3. The Greeks defend none of the towns; boys are a protection to the one, slaves to the other. 4. If there is any protection, he may tell them. 5. If any one knows anything, one may tell it. 6. What one hears, he may tell them. 7. How able are they? 8. Which of the towns is defended better? 9. They defend both, what they can. 10. We do not know whether they read or speak (§§ 137 *c*; 139; 143). 11. They neither read nor speak (§ 66). 12. They are ready for neither (thing). 13. It is permitted to read everything (that is) best.

Exercise XX — The Agreement of Pronouns

Note. — Pronouns agree with the words for which they stand in gender and number. What determines their case?

Express by words found in the text.

The earth is not luminous; *it* is dark; the sun gives *it* [1] light, 6, 5. We choose *boys;* we select *two; they* are not far from us; we hear *them speaking.* We see *a light; it* is called the sun, 4, 3. *The sun* is not flat; *it* looks globe-like, 4, 3. *The earth and moon* are dark; *they* are not luminous, 7, 2. What gives *them* light? The sun illuminates *them*, 7, 4. There are *two dippers; and* one *of them* is called the smaller, the other the larger, 14, 9. The second is *Auster; and it* starts from-the-direction-of the noonday-sun, 15, 7.

We call *the fourth* Zephyrus; *it* blows from the west, 15, 11. There are two poles; *and* one *of them* is called the North, the other the South Pole, 19, 9. *These regions* are cold; everything *in them* is frozen, 19, 11. The farmer plants *trees, whose* fruit

[1] Figures refer to pages and lines where pronouns are found.

he will never see, 20, 21. He plants *trees, that-they* may profit others, 20, 22. There is *a school* at Rome; prominent men let their sons go *to it*, 26, 2; *in it* they learn Greek (things).

Exercise XXI — Personal and Reflexive Pronouns

Study §§ 116 a–c; 138–9; 147 c.

1. I call thee. 2. Thou callest me. 3. I urge that thou call (§ 188) us. 4. Give (§ 184) me the book. 5. They send me (§ 5 *b*) books. 6. They are at my house (§ 57). 7. Who is at thy house? 8. He asks who is going (§ 143) with me. 9. You urge that we call Mark. 10. Whom (§ 110) do you call us? 11. Why does he order us to go? 12. A demand-is-made by you. 13. Which (§ 108) of you (two) blames us? 14. What one of us accuses you?

1. I call my (friends, § 64) to me. 2. I urge that thou call (§ 188) the boy to thee. 3. We request that he call the pupils to him. 4. He demands lands for himself. 5. He calls Titus to him. 6. They take[1] (their) sons with them. 7. We reproach[2] ourselves. 8. We take[2] the boys with us. 9. He forgets (§ 107 *c*) Mark's insult (2) to him (3). 10. They forget Titus' injury to me.[3] 11. He has[4] troops about him.

Exercise XXII — The Imperfect and Perfect Tenses

Study §§ 183–5. Translate past tenses by the Perfect.

Where were you last year, Titus? You were at home (§ 60)? I was at thy house (§ 57). I could not see thee. Thou wast absent at-the-time. Wast thou not at Mark's house (§ 109 *b*)? There is (some one-) who knows (§ 137 *c*) where thou wast. Many are said to have been with thee. They did not fail

[1] dūcunt. [2] 74, 4, 3. [3] Use the genitive. [4] habet.

thee (3). One is said to have been absent. Many do not know where thou wast (§ 143). Galba says many wish (§ 142 *a*) to find out.[1] I was with Galba. We were not far away. There were many with us. Thou couldst not see Galba. He could not see thee. Neither of us could see thee.

Translate past tenses by the Imperfect. See §§ 144–5.

I was at Arpinum year before last, boys. Doesn't Mark know where I was (§ 142)? He was in the camp. The camp was (§ 66 *c*) not far from town. And-if-he (§ 115 *c*) was in the town, he could see me often. Why (§ 14) did you fail me (3)? You could easily (§ 69) find out where I was. Galba will go away if he can. They however wish the boys to be at hand.

Exercise XXIII — The Perfect, Active and Passive

Note. — To get the perfect stem of any verb, drop -ī from the Perfect Indicative, Active, First Person, Singular. The Perfect Active of all verbs has the same endings as **fuī** (§ 183 *b*). For the passive, see §§ 168, 171, 187, etc.; cf. §§ 99 and 101.

rogāvī *I asked*	**habuī** *I had*	**dīxī** *I said*	**cēpī** *I took*	**fuī** *I was*
vetuī *forbade*	**vīdī** *saw*	**lēgī** *read*	**fēcī** *did*	**vēnī** *came*
vocāvī *called*	**iussī** *bade*	**tulī** *bore*	**īvī, iī** *went*	**dedī** *gave*

1. I asked. 2. Thou hast called. 3. He forbade. 4. We have had. 5. You saw. 6. They have bidden. 7. I said. 8. Thou hast borne. 9. She has read. 10. We took. 11. You have done. 12. They have gone.[1] 13. I was. 14. Thou hast been. 15. He has come. 16. We came. 17. You have been giving. 18. They have been. 19. They have been absent. 20. I was able. 21. Thou hast been asking. 22. I have seen. 23. It has been going. 24. He has been reading. 25. We have often (§ 69) forbidden. 26. To have taken; to have seen; to have gone; to have given.

Note. — Rewrite changing to the Subjunctive. To the passive.

[1] Translate in four different ways.

Exercise XXIV — The Third Declension

Study §§ 57–8, 78–81, 82 a–c. One preposition in each.

1. With a guard. 2. As-for the wound. 3. Toward the mouth of the river. 4. Toward the country. 5. In-the-opinion-of the maiden. 6. To the judges. 7. Toward the ships. 8. In what direction? 9. Toward the sea. 10. Into river Arar. 11. Near Bibracte. 12. From the direction of Gades. 13. Because of the tax. On the sea.

Use no prepositions. 1. With a wound. 2. To the country (§ 74, 10). 3. To Bibracte. 4. From Gades. 5. On account of a wound. 6. By force. 7. By sea. 8. On the river Arar. 9. By clouds. 10. With oxen. 11. By walls. 12. At Gades. 13. In Bibracte. 14. To Gades. 15. Because of the tax.

Exercise XXV — Nouns of all Declensions and Classes

Study §§ 81; 82 a–c; 145. Use words on pp. 51, 56.

There is a house near by the river. A boy is going-up to the house. He is called Aemilius. He approaches the doorstep. On it (§ 119 *e*) he reads "Look-out-for the dog." Does he see the dog? Does it alarm him at all? There is a maiden near the entrance. She is a girl of nine years. Her-name-is Aemilia. She is Aemilius' sister. She calls him. She wishes her brother good-health. The brother hears his sister's voice. He comes to her. They talk. Then they run to the house.

General Truths — Present Tenses (*see pp. 52–4*)

With us (p. 31) the father is called the man-of-the-house. He rules the household. The house is a care to him. It is the father's (duty) to build a home, to provide all (things) of which there is need. It is the mother's (part) to look after the children. She is spoken-of-as a matron. Many things are a care to her.

The mother brings up her sons and daughters, makes bread, prepares food, keeps all (things) in order. Children obey their father, mother (and) elders; yield to them, bow to their will. It is necessary that children be obedient.

Actions Continued in the Past — The Imperfect (*pp. 51–2*)

Among (p. 31) the Romans the father had the power of life and death over the mother, children (and) slaves. They led away captured (men) into slavery. It was permitted slaves however to buy back their freedom by serving.

There was a river in Latium. It was called the Liris. It flowed into the sea. Not far from the Liris was a plantation. It was a possession of Paulus who-was-a Roman citizen. The river Fibrenus flowed into the Liris. There was a villa near the river. It was Paulus' villa. Paulus was a farmer. He had possessions at either side of the river Fibrenus. There was a bridge over the river Liris. The depth of the water was very-slight. Some used-to-cross by-fording, others by the bridge.

Paulus was sitting in the atrium. He was talking with a Greek. The Greek was called Chilo. He was inquiring of him what there was new. Chilo was telling him all (things). The master was praising Chilo, because he looked-after the cattle. He was giving him instructions. He was equalizing the tasks of the work. He was assigning each-one a share of toil. He was deciding where each should go, what he should do on the next day.

Acts Finished in the Past[1] — Perfect Tenses

There was too little water for the cattle. The slaves cared-for them. They drove them to the river Fibrenus. One of the slaves ran-away. Brennus saw him escape. He did not tell

[1] Occurring on a single occasion and not spoken of as repeated.

this to Chilo, the overseer. The latter spoke with the master Paulus. He made mention of Brennus. He ought to have paid [1] the penalty. The master forbade Chilo to punish him. Chilo, to be sure, being-a-Greek did not seem (a man) of good feeling toward Gauls.

EXERCISE XXVI — **Agreement of Adjectives** (§§ *83–9; 109 c*)

paucī, paucae, pauca, *few* [2] **plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque** *most* [2]

m.	m.	m.	m.	f.	f.
liber	bonus	agricolae	bonī	plēraeque	puellae
a good book		*of a good farmer*		*most (of the) girls*	

1. He is a good (§ 91) son. 2. He is a good boy. 3. He is a good farmer. 4. It is our horse. 5. It is my book. 6. It is another's book. 7. It is our town. 8. It is our daughter. 9. It is our friend. 10. Aemilia is a good girl. 11. He sees our horse. 12. He calls few friends. 13. They are good sons. 14. It is our father. 15. He is a powerful friend. 16. Toward our camp. 17. Of most horses. 18. Of few horses. 19. Of our father. 20. Of my horse. 21. Of another's horse. 22. Of a good farmer. 23. He is a bad boy.

N. s. m.	N. s. m.	G. s. m.	G. s. m.	N. pl. m.	N. pl. m.
Galba	amīcus	Librī	veteris	Agricolae	amīcī sunt
Galba (who is)	*friendly*	*of an old book*		*farmers are friendly*	

1. What sort of horse is it? 2. It is a good horse. 3. It is my horse. 4. A beautiful (§ 91) horse. 5. Does he see (§ 145) the beautiful horse? 6. What-kind-of-a book does he bring (§ 212)? 7. A good book. 8. He brings an old book. 9. He saw (§ 192) my books. 10. He brings such a book as Mark's (is). 11. What-sort-of farmer is he? 12. Friendly. 13. What sort of town? 14. Such a town as Arpinum.[3]

[1] **dare dēbuit.** [2] Place before their nouns. [3] Rewrite in the plural.

Write the following expressions in the Nominative. See § 42.

1. Old customs. 2. My friends. 3. Old trees. 4. Other's trees. 5. Old wounds. 6. My wounds. 7. Old wars.[1] 8. Old wrongs (§ 96 *c*). 9. My wrongs. 10. Equal wrongs. 11. Equal dangers.[2] 12. Powerful races.[3] 13. Very powerful tribes. 14. Great dangers.

NOTE. — Rewrite the above in the Nominative Singular, Genitive Singular, Genitive Plural, Accusative Singular, and Ablative.

EXERCISE XXVII — Comparison of Adjectives

Place the adjectives tantus *and* quantus *before their nouns, the others after their nouns. Use words on pp. 38–9. Write each expression in the Nominative, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative cases.*

1. A wide river. 2. A broad field. 3. A shorter route. 4. A narrow way.[4] 5. A broader field. 6. A short route. 7. A low hill. 8. A high mountain. 9. A high tree. 10. A short person.[5] 11. A longer route. 12. A shorter way. 13. A very long march. 14. A rather easy route. 15. Very great care (§ 96). 16. Enormous size. 17. So great height.

NOTE. — Rewrite Nos. 1 to 15 above in the plural.

EXERCISE XXVIII — Irregular Adjectives (§§ *40, 108–9, 120*)

Write each in the Nominative, Genitive, Dative, and Accusative cases.

1. The son alone. 2. The daughter alone. 3. All Gaul. 4. The whole camp. 5. Any town. 6. No island. 7. Which thing? 8. Neither horse. 9. Either girl. 10. Any men. 11. The other (man). 12. Others. 13. The other daughter.

NOTE. — Rewrite in the plural.

[1] **bellum, -ī**, n. [2] **perīculum, -ī**, n. [3] **gēns, gentis**, f. [4] **via, -ae**, f. [5] **homō, hominis**, m.

Exercise XXIX — Adjective Forms of Verbs

Study §§ 93–104. Write each in the Nominative, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative cases.

1. A boy (who is) trying. 2. A maiden (who is) waiting. 3. (One who is) reading. 4. A crowd (that is) departing. 5. The sun (when) rising. 6. A (thing that is) excelling. 7. A slave fleeing. 8. (He) going. 9. A (thing) demanded.[1] 10. (He when) ready. 11. (She though) terrified. 12. A (man who had been) taken. 13. A town (that was) fortified. 14. A legion (that was) best prepared. 15. A less impeded route. 16. A thing[2] heard. 17. (He) having delayed. 18. (She) having spoken. 19. A boy having followed. 20. A crowd going to follow. 21. A maiden (when) going to go out. 22. A judge (who was) going to grant. 23. A (thing that ought) to be granted. 24. A ship (that is) to be awaited. 25. A number to be divided. 26. A town (that ought) to be fortified. 27. A river (that ought) to be crossed (§ 215 *a*, *c*).

Note. — Rewrite in the plural.

Exercise XXX — Expressions of Purpose, Result, etc.

Write each sentence six different ways. § 159.

1. Envoys come to seek peace. 2. They send (a man) to call the boys. 3. They come to Rome to ask aid. 4. He sends envoys to seek auxiliaries.[3] 5. They send troops to devastate[4] the fields. 6. Soldiers[5] are called to defend[6] the town.

Write each sentence one or two ways. §§ 149, 151.

1. They are not so brave as to try this. 2. No one is so brave that he would not be frightened. 3. They had done it to frighten him. 4. There are many that are easily frightened. 5. There is no one but is frightened occasionally.

[1] Neuter. [2] **rēs.** § 81. [3] **auxilia, -ōrum,** n. [4] **vāstāre.** [5] **mīles, mīlitis.** [6] **dēfendere.**

Exercise XXXI — The Indicative and Subjunctive

Review §§ 136–40; study §§ 137 c, 138 a–c, 147, 149, 156.

Present Tenses

He is going; they urge *that he go. Who is he?* I know *who he is. They try;* he recommends *that they try.* If he *is away*, he *does* not *hear* it. If he *should be away*, he *would* not *hear* it. *He hears;* they speak so, *that he hears.* He *can* not read the book. He *would read*, if he *should be able.*

Imperfect Tenses (§§ *171–2*)

He was trying; they urged *that he should try. Where was he?* They knew *where he was.* If he *was present*,[1] he *heard it.* If he *were present*, he would *hear* it. He *kept-hearing* (it). It *was said* in-such-a-way that he *heard* it. He *could* not read. He *would*[2] read it, if he *could.*

Perfect Tenses

Where was he? They told Titus *where he was. He heard* (it); it was said in-such-a-way *that he heard* (it). If he *was away*, he *could* not hear it. If he *should be* away, he *would* not *hear* it. He *would* tell Mark, if he *should be able.*

Pluperfect and Imperfect

He had been away; he had not *heard* (it). If *he had been present, he would have heard it. Where had they been?* No one told Titus *where they had been.* He *had been* able to tell Mark. He *had not been willing.* He *could* have told[3] Mark, if *he had been willing.* He *did* not *tell* us, because he *was not willing.* Although (§ 115 *b*) he *had heard* it, he *would not* tell. If we *had seen* you, we *should have called* you.

[1] Use a form of **adesse**; cf. § 185. [2] Subjunctive, see § 186. [3] = *would have been able* (to tell).

Exercise XXXII — Variations of Expressions

Study the sections referred to with each group. Express in Latin as found in the text or reference given.

§§ *56, 6; 57–8; 74, 15; 224.* Because they are so great a distance away 10, 8 and 17.[1] Therefore 15, 5. By reason of its very nature. On account of evenness 17, 8. Suffer for lack of water. Suffer with thirst 21, 17. (And) for this reason; (and) on account of this fact 20, 8; 35, 10; 47, 18; 69, 17; 75, 9. For the same reason 49, 6. For my sake 57, 20. Why? 57, 4, 21; § 115 *c.*

§§ *56, 6; 74, 16.* In shape, 3. In all respects, 17. In order, 28.

§§ *56, 6; 62 b; 71 c; 182.* With its heat 21, 3. By the rays 7, 4. With its own light 9, 6. Of *or* by its own weight 18, 4. By other bodies' light 11, 9. With fruit 22, 5. With frost 22, 9. With clouds 22, 15. With ice 23, 9. With snow 23, 14. With citizenship 24, 6. On horses; on horseback 25, 10. By three names 25, 16. With masters 26, 9; with the eyes 30, 10. In hours; in days; in months; in years 31, 2. By the month and day 32, 3. With air 33, 14. In miles 38, 11. By fording; on bridges 39, 14, 15. By the width 40, 4. In the left hand 47, 9. By machinery 49, 20. By a rapid journey 50, 20.

§ 62 *a.* With them 16, 3. With horses 20, 19. With boys 24, 10. Along with them 26, 21. With our own measures 26, 24. With many 48, 16. With him 50, 16; 67, 11. With carts 51, 7. With her 55, 20; 58, 5. With the rest 58, 2; with the Greeks 58, 9; with this slave 58, 13; with Theodorus 58, 21. With his father and Crassus 67, 16; with his father as-he-returns 71, 16. With his young son 67, 8, 9.

§§ *56, 6; 96 b.* In the right proportions 30, 8. With greater pains 47, 4. Slowly and with great care 48, 3. With great diffi-

[1] Numbers refer to pages and lines.

culty 49, 19. In fair shares 51, 23. Of a sudden 55, 6. With great noise 55, 9. According to what fashion dressed 57, 18. As quickly as possible 60, 3. With great danger 63, 3. According to his own notion 63, 17. With fitting words 65, 17. With a king's taste 67, 8. In a hoarse language 71, 8. In a louder voice 71, 11. With a great fuss made 72, 14. Without wrong doing 87, 20. In secret 91, 22. Without offense 92, 19. In a low voice 55, 21.

§§ *56, 2, 6; 62 g.* (Some are of one color) others of another color 30, 9. Of the same length 35, 7. Of three hours 35, 18. To the depth of many thousand feet 39, 19. Of a smaller body; of shorter stature 40, 12. Of good feeling toward Gauls 52, 4. Of good mind toward him 55, 15. A girl of nine years 55, 19. Of enormous size 59, 12. Of any favor (in the eyes of his father at that time) 60, 16. Of good disposition toward him 65, 18. A boy of eleven years stood 70, 17. He would have appeared to us (a boy) of fifteen years. He was of so large limbs 70, 19. Was of great favor 76, 27.

§§ *56, 2; 72.* More (of) heat 20, 3. Less (of) light 20, 6. Two thousand books 29, 13. One fourth of a day 31, 24. As much of trouble as 34, 16. More of trouble 36, 17. Length is estimated in miles 38, 16. One half (of) a pace 40, 13. What is there (of) remainder? Nothing (of) remainder 43, 16. What good or beautiful 45, 11. Something new 46, 7. Some business 46, 12. What-amount of a book 49, 18. What new 51, 17. What affair? 60, 10. No annoyance 61, 7. Any hindrance 62, 8. A large part of the public land 63, 11.

§§ *56, 6; 94–6.* With light absent; (when) light (is) absent 30, 3. The sun (when) setting 35, 13. In counting days; when counting days 36, 9. And-upon-this being done; and (as soon as) this (is) done 43, 4. When reading-is-being-done 47, 9. During the night 6, 5; 14, 2. During Caesar and Bibulus consuls 57, 3. On the fourth day 31, 16. On these things having

been found out 59, 14. Upon this message being given 62, 11. Upon Aemilius requesting it 65, 16. With Caesar unwilling; (if) Caesar (is) unwilling 86, 5. And-with it removed 87, 5. Upon the Aeduans promising grain 89, 6.

§ *96 c.* According to the custom; by the method 50, 2. According to the custom of Greeks 64, 18. By what method 31, 5. Of his own accord 64, 9. According to his own notion 63, 17. According to[1] his custom; according to her custom; according to their custom (§ 96 *c*).

§ *56, 4; 68 a, b.* How much they differ 34, 21. Differ a great deal from ours 40, 9. Advance more or farther every-day 45, 6. Writes a great deal 50, 6. Pleases us little 51, 10. Not at all 57, 13. Do you understand at all? 57, 18. Are as far apart as the length of a man can occupy of space 59, 8. For the most part 69, 7.

Teaches them many (things) 34, 5. (We) are taught the most important tricks 43, 4. Are taught to read 45, 2. Asks me my name (§ 155). Ask the Aeduans (for) grain 90, 19.

§§ *5 j; 56, 6; 69.* More than five miles 50, 21. Longer than a year 70, 13. More than five miles 90, 13. Was shorter than the one that we use 40, 11. They stepped shorter than we 40, 13. The Romans were of shorter stature than we (are).

§§ *5 e; 105–6.* There is weight to all things. Each has its own weight 42, 2, 3. Each (thing) has its own color. Blue (belongs) to the sky. Gold has a yellow color. There are different-colored rays to light 30. There is a golden color to the fields 21. (There is) only one name to most Greeks 25. We have in mind 24. There are thirty days to November 31. There is no measure to space 33. For reading (persons) there is access 45. A name belonged to the boy Arminius 71.

[1] More than one way.

EXERCISE XXXIII — **The Rendering of English Prepositions**

Study the sections referred to with each group.

On. §§ *56–62; 74, 18.* On the ground 19, 12. On horses; on foot 24, 10. On high mountains 23, 5. On the seventh day 32, 3. On one side 33, 10. On the book 47, 13. On the earth 3, 2; 42, 7. On itself 42, 12. On the upper side 70, 7. On inquiring 82, 6. On all Gaul 84, 6. On them 101, 10.

Over. §§ *56, 3, 6; 57–8.* Over the fields 21, 5. (Over) the earth 23, 14. Over this thing 85, 10. (Boast) over this victory 83, 5. Over this river 86, 4. Above this number 29, 13.

To. §§ *60, 159.* To-day 10, 11. To-morrow 10, 13. To air 18, 3. To the fields 20, 17; 21, 12. To Arpinum 24, 8. To school 25, 13. To it 26, 2. To Italy 26, 15. To each (thing) 30, 4. To these measures 32, 16. To all space 33, 7. To the depth 39, 19. To their body 40, 1. To establish peace 84, 16. To go out 84, 5. To any one 64, 20; 88, 5. Till the last day 31, 17.

For. §§ *56–60.* For rest 12, 10. For the cattle 21, 9. For themselves. For winter 21, 11. For lack of water 21, 16. For each day 22, 7. For Rome 26, 10. For us 26, 21. For many years 26, 13. (For) great use. For reading the books 34, 8. For width 41, 8. For example 43, 11. For writing 49, 10. For-what-place 51, 24; cf. 119 *d.* For my sake 57, 21. As for Paulus (§ 57). For him 64, 11. For his age 70, 19.

About. §§ *57–8.* About autumn; about their hearth 22, 1, 17. About this matter 34, 14. About doubling 29, 1. At about the twelfth hour 64, 21. About ten (§ 57).

Of. §§ *56, 62 g, 66 c.* Of which 14, 9; 19, 9. (Cleared) of leaves 22, 12. (Treats) of numbers 43, 2. Of measuring; of measuring circles 41, 11, 15. Of one foot 39, 6. Of two hundred feet 48, 21. Of a white color 30, 13. (Full) of air 33, 14.

VOCABULARY

Where the uses or peculiarities of words are more important than the mere meaning, reference is made to sections of the appendix where they are treated. Certain proper names are purposely omitted in order to allow the student to master them by observation as directed in §§ 45, 55c. The nominative case of such nouns should be used to render them in English, unless they are found in an anglicized form in headlines or in the appendix.

Some words not found in the text are given to illustrate the form or meaning of others.

The following abbreviations are used: Ab., Abl. *ablative;* Ac., Acc. *accusative;* adj. *adjective;* App. *appendix;* B. G. *Gallic War;* cf. *compare;* dir. *direct;* Eng. *English;* f., fem. *feminine;* Futp. *future perfect;* Imp. *imperfect;* Imv. *imperative;* Ind. *indicative;* indir. *indirect;* m., mas. *masculine;* n., neu. *neuter;* o., obj. *object;* Part. *participle;* P. P. *perfect participle;* Plup. *pluperfect;* sing. *singular;* Sub. *subjunctive;* s., subj. *subject;* w. *with.*

For explanation of other signs see § 230, page 280.

ā, ab, abs 58; 62d; 220, 1

ab-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, in 4; 219, 2

ab-dūcō, ab-dūcere, ab-dūxī, ab-ductus *lead away*

ab-eō, ab-īre, -iī, -itus *go away*

ab-horreō, ab-horrēre, ab-horruī *shrink from*

abs-tineō, abs-tinēre, abs-tinuī, -tentus 220, 1

ab-sum, ab-esse, ā-fuī, ā-futūrus 185, ā or **ab 6; absēns** 94b

ac 66, 69

ac-cēdō, ac-cēdere, ac-cessī, -cessus *ap-proach, come near, be added,* **ad 4;** 220, 2; 221b

ac-celerō, ac-celerāre *hasten*

ac-cidō, ac-cidere, -cidī 3; 95

ac-cipiō, ac-cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus *receive, accept, learn*

ac-clīvis, -e *upward sloping*

ac-commodō, ac-commodāre *adjust*

ac-currō, -currere, -currī, -cursus *run to* or *up to* **ad 4**

ac-cūsō, ac-cūsāre 4; 74, 4

ācer, ācris, ācre *sharp, active, spirited;* **ācriter** *sharply;* **acerbus, -a, -um** *bitter;* **aciēs, aciēī f.** *edge; line* (of battle)

ad (w. Acc.) §§ 57, 220, 2

ad-dō, ad-dere, -didī, -ditus *put beside, give to, add* **3p, 4t**

ad-dūcō, ad-dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus *lead on, bring to, induce*

ad-eō, ad-īre, -iī, -itus *go to, get at;* **aditus, -ūs** m. *a going to, an approach, access*

ad-hibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus *have at hand* or *present*

ad-hūc *up to this* 119d

ad-mīror, -mīrārī, —, -mīrātus *wonder at* **4**

adolēscō, adolēscere, adolēvī, adultus *grow up;* **adulēscēns, -entis** *young (man)*

ad-orior, ad-orīrī, —, ad-ortus *rise up against, attack*

ad-sum, ad-esse, ad-fuī, ad-futūrus *be present, be at hand*

adventus, -ūs m. *a coming to*

ad-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, versus *turn toward;* **animum advertere** or **animadvertere** *turn attention to, notice* **4**; **adversus** *turned towards; facing, opposed, unfavorable* **3**; **adversus** w. Acc. *against*

aedēs, -is f. *building; temple;* (pl.) *house;* **aedi-ficō, -āre** *build a house, build;* **aedificium -ī** n. *building*

aeger, -gra, -grum *sick;* **aegrē** *with difficulty; hardly.*

aequus, -a, -um *level, even, equal; fair, kindly;* **aequum est** *it is fair;* **aequē (ac)** *equally, as well (as);* **aequitās** aequitātis f. 43; **aequor, -oris** n. 41; **aequāre** *equal*

aes, aeris n. *copper, bronze; money;* **aes aliēnum** (*another's money*), *debt*

aestās, aestātis f. *summer*

aestimō, -āre 73; **ex-īstimāre** *reason out, think, judge*

aetās, -ātis f. *age, time of life*

aethēr, -is m. 51, *ether, a very light, colorless and attenuated substance thought to pervade all other substances and all space so far as known.*

af-ferō, ad-ferre, at-tulī, allātus *bring to, carry to*

af-ficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus *do to, affect, visit with*

affīnitās, -ātis f. *relationship* (by marriage), *affinity*

ager, agrī 41; **agri-cola, -ae** m. (landsman) *farmer, peasant*

ag-gredior, ag-gredī, —, ag-gressus 219, 2; 220, 2

agmen, -minis n. *drove, army on march*

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus 97–8; 102–4; 197; *drive, carry on, do, act, discuss, treat;* **grātiās agere** *render thanks;* **agitō, agitāre** *keep driving, pursue, hound;* **ad-igere** *drive to, hurl*

albus, -a, -um *dead white* 223

aliquis (aliquī), aliqua, aliquid (aliquod) *some, any* p. 182

aliquot *some, several;* **aliquotiēns** *several times* 64; 120g

alius, -a, -um 40, 65, 103, 117.; **alius atque** or **ac** *other than;* **aliter** 69; **aliās** p. 183; **aliō** p. 182; **alibi** *elsewhere;* **aliunde** p. 183; **aliēnus, -a, -um** 109c; *strange, foreign, unfavorable;* **aes aliēnum** n. *debt*

alō, alere, aluī, alitus or **altus** *feed, support, raise;* **altus, -a, -um** 92; **altum** n. *high sea, deep (sea);* **altē** *highly, deeply;* **altitūdō, -dinis** f. 62g, 92

alter, altera, alterum 40, 65, 109, 120

ambō, -ae, -ō 55a note

ā-mittō, ā-mittere, -mīsī, -missus *let go away, lose; send away*

amō, amāre 97, 107; **amor, -ōris** m. *love;* **amīcus, -a, -um** 91; **amīcē** *in a friendly way;* **amīcitia, -ae** f. 91

am-plector, am-plectī, —, amplexus *fold* or *wrap around, embrace, surround;* **amplexus, -ūs** m. *embrace*

amplus, -a, -um *large, spacious; splendid;* **amplius** *more* (of distance or number); **amplē** *largely, on a large scale*

an see **utrum** 71

an-ceps, -cipitis *two-headed; double, doubtful*

angustus, -a, -um 92; **angustiae, -ārum** 92; *defile, narrows*

animus, -ī *spirit, feeling, mind; courage, high spirits;* **animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus** *turn the mind to; notice, observe, attend to, punish* **in 4**

annus, -ī 74, 17; **annuus, -a, -um** *for-a-year, yearly, annual*

ante 57; **ante . . . quam** 69; **ant-eā** 69; **antīquus, -a, -um** *ancient, old time, former*

ante-ponō, ante-pōnere, -posuī, -positus *put ahead of* **3** and **4**

a-periō, a-perīre, a-peruī, a-pertus (*get from*) *uncover, open;* **apertus, -a, -um** *open, uncovered*

ap-pellō, ap-pellāre *call* (*to*), *call upon, appeal to*

ap-petō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus *seek for*

ap-propinquō, -propinquāre *draw near to, approach*

Aprīlis, -e *of April* 109c

apud 57

aqua, -ae f. *water*

Arar 79

ara, -ae, f. *altar*

arbitror, arbitrārī, —, arbitrātus *serve as judge; consider* 181; **arbitr-ium, -ī** n. *notion, judgment*

arbor, arboris f. *tree*

arcessō, arcessere, -īvī, -ītus *summon, invite, send for*

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsus *blaze; glow;* **ārdor, -ōris** m. *a burning*

āreō, ārēre *dry up, wither;* **āridus, -a, -um** *dry* 223

arma, -ōrum n. 44, 60; **armō, armāre** *arm, equip*

arō, arāre *plow, till*

ar-ripiō, ar-ripere, -ripuī, -reptus *seize upon, snatch* **3p, 4t**

ars, artis f. *skill, art, trick*

a-scendō, a-scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus 219, 2; 220, 2; **ascēnsus, -ūs** m. *ascent*

a-scīscō, a-scīscere, -scīvī, -scītus *take to, adopt* **3** and **4**

asper, aspera, asperum *rough, harsh, bitter, rugged*

as-sentiō, as-sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus *agree* (*to*), *assent*

at *but, but yet* cf. 66

āter, ātra, ātrum (*dull*) *black, dark.*

atque or **ac** 66, 69; **simul atque** *as soon as* 224

ātrium, -ī m. *reception room, atrium, a main hall of a Roman house*

at-tingō, at-tingere, -tigī, -tāctus 219, 3 **ad** + **tangō**

at-tribuō, at-tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtus *assign to* 220, 2
auctor, -ōris m. *originator, producer, author;* auctōritās, -ātis *authority, power, influence*
audeō, audēre, —, ausus 94b; 100; audāx, audāx, audāx Gen. audācis 85; audācter 91; audācia, -ae *boldness, daring, recklessness*
audiō, audīre 98, 122, 136, 207
au-ferō, au-ferre, abs-tulī, ablātus 220, 1; 180–1; cf. 136, 142
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus *increase*
aurum, -ī m. *money, gold*
aut 66a, b
autem (never stands first in a sentence) *moreover, but, however*
auxilium, -ī *support, assistance;* pl. *auxiliaries* (augēō)
ā-vertō, ā-vertere, -vertī, -versus 220, 1; *avert;* āversus, -a, um, *unfriendly, hostile*
avus, -ī m. *grand-father;* avunculus, -ī *maternal uncle*

bellum, -ī m. *war;* bellō, bellāre (*make*) *war;* bellicōsus, -a, -um *warlike*
bene 69; bene-ficium, -ī *service, kindness;* benīgnus, -a, -um *kindly, friendly*
bis 67; bīnī, -ae, -a 120; bīduum, -ī n. 68; bi-ennium, -ī n. 68 (annus)
bonus, -a, -um 64, 70, 91; melior, -ius 91; optimus, -a, -um 91

bracchium, -ī n. *fore-arm, arm*
brevis, -e 88, 92; brevitās, -ātis f. 92; breviter *shortly*

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsus *fall; be slain;* cāsus, -ūs m. *fall, chance, accident, case*
caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesus *cause to fall, fell, cut, kill, slay;* caedēs, -is f. 55d; cf. nūbēs 79c
caelum -ī n. *air; sky*
campus, -ī m. *plain, field*
candeō, candēre *be white, glow;* candidus, -a, -um *shining, white;* candor, -ōris m. *whiteness;* incendere *set on fire*
canis, -is m. *dog*
cantus, -ūs m. *singing*
capiō, capere, cēpī, captus 97, 98, 102, 104, 127, 136, 222; captus, -ūs m. *a taking, idea*
caput, capitis n. 82; anceps, ancipitis *two-headed*
carcer, -is m. *prison*
carrus, -ī m. 149f
cārus, -a, -um *dear*
casa, -ae *hut*
castra 62f, 66b; castellum, -ī n. *little camp, fort, redoubt*
causa, -ae f. *cause, reason* 59; *case;* ac-cūsāre *bring case against, accuse*
caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus *take care, be cautious* — (*of* or *that*) 4 or nē w. Sub.
cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessus *move, step, go away, yield, retreat* 97
celer, -is, -e 74, 1; celeritās, -ātis f. *swiftness, rapidity;* celeriter *quickly*

centum 120; p. 29; **centuriō, -ōnis** m. *commander* (of hundred), *centurion*
cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus *separate, distinguish, see*
certus, -a, -um *certain, sure;* **certiōrem facere** 155a; p. 46
cervus, -ī m. *stag, buck*
cēterus, -a, -um *other, the rest*
cibus, -ī m. *food;* **cibāria, -ōrum** n. *food stuffs,* (*ground*) *meal*
cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus 181b
circu-eō, circu-īre 220, 3; **circuitus, -ūs** *a going around, circuit, detour;* **circus, -ī** m. *circle, ring; circus, games;* **circum** 57, 220, 3; **circiter** 57; **circinus, -ī** m. 26, *compasses*
circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datus **3** and **4** or **4** and **6**; 220, 3
circum-fundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus *pour around*
circum-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus *come around, surround* **4**
cis or **citrā** 57; **citerior, -ōris** *on this side, hither, nearer*
cīvis, -is m. *citizen;* **cīvitās, -tātis** f. *citizenship; state*
clāmō, clāmāre *shout;* **clāmor, -ōris** m. *outcry, shout*
clārus, -a, -um *clear, bright*
Claudius, -a, -um *Claudian, of the Claudian family*
coepī, coepisse, coeptus 123
co-erceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus *shut together; restrain, check*
cognōmen, -inis n. *surname, name*
co-gnōscō, co-gnōscere, co-gnōvī, co-gnitus *become thoroughly acquainted, learn;* Perf. *know* **4**
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus 98, 103, 121, 219, 4; **cōgitō, -āre** *think*
cohors, cohortis f. *cohort*
co-hortor, -hortārī 147e
collega, -ae m. *associate in office*
col-ligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus *gather*
collis, -is m. *hill*
col-locō, -locāre *place, arrange;* **nūptum collocāre** *send to marry*
col-loquor, -loquī, —, -locūtus 220, 4; **colloquium, -ī** n. *interview*
collum, -ī n. *neck*
colō, colere, coluī, cultus *till, cultivate, cherish, worship;* **incolere** *dwell in, live*
comb-ūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustus 220, 4
com-memōrō, com-memorāre *speak of, call to one's attention*
com-meō, com-meāre (**ad**) *go back and forth* (*to*) *visit, go to;* **commeātus, -ūs** m. *supplies; trip*
com-mittō, com-mittere, -mīsī, -missus *join together, do, allow* **3p, 4t** or **ut** w. Sub.
com-moveō, com-movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus *startle, alarm* 98
commūnis, -e *common, general*
commūtātiō, -ōnis f. *a change*
com-parō, com-parāre 220, 4
com-periō, com-perīre, com-perī, com-pertus *find out, learn*
com-pleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus *fill completely, fill up*
com-plūrēs, -plūrium *several*

con-cēdō, con-cēdere, con-cessī, con-cessus 98, 102, 104

con-cidō, con-cidere, -cidī *fall flat, collapse*

con-cīdō, con-cīdere, con-cīdī, -cīsus *cut down* or *to pieces*

concilium, -ī n. *meeting, council;* **conciliāre** *win (over), get by asking*

con-diciō, -ōnis f. *terms*

con-dōnō, -āre *give up, for-give, pardon*

con-dūcō, con-dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus *bring together; hire*

cōn-ferō, cōn-ferre, -tulī, -lātus 82, 104, 155; **sē cōnferre** *take self*

cōnfēstim *promptly, with haste*

cōn-ficiō, cōn-ficere, cōn-fēcī, -fectus 98, 102, 219, 3; 220, 4

cōn-fīdō, cōn-fīdere, —, **fīsus** *trust firmly, rely on* **3** or **6**

cōn-fīrmō, -fīrmāre *make firm, strengthen; assure, encourage*

cōn-flīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctus *dash together, fight, struggle*

con-gredior, -gredī, —, **gressus** *come together, meet* **cum 6**

con-iciō, con-icere, con-iēcī, con-iectus *hurl, throw at* **in 4**

con-iungō, con-iungere, con-iūnxī, -iūnctus *join together, unite*

coniūnx, -ugis *consort, spouse, husband* or *wife*

con-iūrō, -iūrāre *swear together;* **coniūrātiō, -ōnis** f. *conspiracy*

cōnor, cōnārī 97, 100, 102, 122, 127, 191; **cōnātus, -ūs** m. 157

cōn-sanguineus, -a, -um *of same blood; kindred;* pl. mas. *kinsmen*

cōn-scīscō, con-scīscere, -scīvī, -scītus; sibi mortem cōnscīscere *take* or *bring death on self*

cōn-scrībō, cōn-scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus 226; **patrēs cōnscrīptī** *enrolled fathers, senators*

cōn-sentiō, cōn-sentīre, cōn-sēnsī, cōn-sēnsus 156 **cum 6**

cōn-sequor, cōn-sequī, —, **cōn-secūtus** *follow up, overtake, attain*

cōn-servō, cōn-servāre *preserve, put away, save (for* **3** or **in 4**)

cōn-sīdo, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessus *settle, take position, encamp*

cōnsilium, -ī n. 77; *counsel, advice, wisdom*

cōn-sistō, cōn-sistere, cōn-stitī *take a position; consist; halt*

cōn-spiciō, cōn-spicere, cōn-spexī, -spectus *catch sight of, see;* **cōnspectus, -ūs** m. *view, sight;* **cōnspicārī** *espy, catch sight of*

cōn-stituō, cōn-stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus *put together, establish, build, set up, station; decide*

cōn-stō, cōn-stāre, -stitī *stand with, be consistent, agree, be complete, consist;* **cōnstat** *it is established, known,* or *certain;* **cōnstanter** *consistently, uniformly*

cōn-suēscō, cōn-suēscere, cōn-suēvī, -suētus *become accustomed;* **cōnsuēvisse** or **cōnsuēsse** *be accustomed;* **cōnsuētūdō, -inis** f. 146

cōnsul, **-is** m. 95–6; **cōnsulāris**, **-e** *consular; exconsul;* **cōnsulātus**, **-ūs** *consulship;* **cōnsultum**, **-ī** *decree;* **cōn-sulō**, **-sulere**, **-suluī**, **-sultum** (*take*) *counsel, ask* **4p**, **6t**

cōn-sūmō, **-sūmere**, **-sūmpsī**, **-sūmptus** *use up*

con-tendō, **-tendere**, **-tendī**, **-tentum** *stretch with, struggle with, strain, struggle to, make haste* **Inf. o**; *insist-on* **4**. See 154

con-tineō, **-tinēre**, **-tinuī**, **-tentus** 62f, 63, 97, 98, 154, 219, 3; (**terra**) **continēns**, **-ntis** f. *mainland*

contrā prep. with acc. *against;* **contrārius**, **-a**, **-um** *opposite*

contumēlia, **-ae** f. 107

con-veniō, **-venīre**, **-vēnī**, **-ventus** *come together, meet, assemble;* **convenit** *it is meet, fitting,* or *agreed* **Inf. s**; **con-ventus**, **-ūs** m. *meeting, conference; court*

con-vocō, **-vocāre** *call together*

cōpia, **-ae** f. *supply, abundance, opportunity;* pl. *forces, troops; supplies, resources;* **cōpiōsus**, **-a**, **-um** *well supplied*

cornū, **-ūs** *horn; wing* (of army) 81

corpus, **corporis** n. *body*

cōs. = **cōnsulibus**

cotīdiē *every day:* **cotīdiānus**, **-a**, **-um** *daily, ordinary*

crassus, **-a**, **-um** *thick;* **crassitūdō**, **-inis** f. *thickness*

crēber, **crēbra**, **crēbrum** *thick, close, frequent*

crēdō, **crēdere**, **crēdidī**, **-crēditus** *believe, trust* **3** or **3p**, **4t**; 219, 2

creō, **creāre**, 223; **crēscere**, **crēvī**, **crētus** 223

cruciātus, **-ūs** m. *torture, torment*

crūdēlis, **-is**, **-e** *cruel;* **crudēlitās**, **-ātis** 94b **crudeliter** *cruelly*

cuius 109b; **cui** 110; **-que** 111

cultus, **-ūs** m. *civilization; looks*

cum 58, 220, 4; 221b

cum 115b, c; 119a, b; 224

cuneus, **-ī** m. *wedge*

cupiō, **cupere**, **cupīvī**, **cupītus** *long for, desire* **4**; **4 Inf.**; 162; **cupidus**, **-a**, **-um** *desirous* **2**; **cupiditās**, **-ātis** *desire, eagerness* **2**

cūr 141b

cūra, **-ae** f. 63; **cūrāre** 158

currō, **currere**, **cucurrī**, **cursus** *run;* **ac-currere** *run up to;* **cursus**, **-ūs** m. *a running; run, course*

cūstōs, **-ōdis** 43, 78; **cūstōdia**, **-ae** f. *protection, custody;* **cūstōdīre** *guard*

damnō, **damnāre** *declare guilty, condemn*

dē 58, 220, 5; 221b

dē-beō, **dē-bēre**, **dē-buī**, **dē-bitus** **Inf. o**. 121, 219, 4

decem p. 29; **dēnī**, **-ae**, **-a** *ten each* 120; **deciēns** p. 29; **decimus**, **-a**, **-um** 120

dē-cernō, **-cernere**, **-crēvī**, **-crētus** *determine, decide, decree*

dē-cipiō, **dē-cipere**, **dē-cēpī**, **dē-ceptus** 220, 5

dē-dō, **dē-dere**, **-didī**, **-ditus** *lay down, give up, surrender;* **sē**

dēdere *devote;* **dēditiō, -ōnis** f. *a giving up, surrender*
dē-dūcō, dē-dūcere, -dūxī, ductus *lead away, conduct, take*
dē-ferō, dē-ferre, dē-tulī, -lātus *bear away, carry away, report*
dē-ficiō, dē-ficere, dē-fēcī, -fectus 220, 5; *revolt* **ā, ab** 6
dē-iciō, dē-icere, -iēcī, -iectus *throw* or *cast down; disappoint;* **dēiectus, -ūs** m. *down pitch, slope*
de-inde *thereupon, then* 120g
dēlīberō, -āre *think over*
dē-ligō, dē-ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus *select;* **dēlēctus, -ūs** m. *levy*
dē-minuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtus *lessen, diminish*
dēmum or **dēnique** 66
dēnī, -ae, -a *ten each* 120
dē-nūntiō, -āre *send word to*
dē-populō see **populō**
dē-serō, dē-serere, -seruī, -sertus *give up, abandon, desert*
dē-sīderō, -āre *long for, miss;* **dēsīderium, -ī** n. *desire, longing*
dē-sistō, dē-sistere, -stitī *desist from, stop, cease* 6 or Inf.; 157
dēspērō, dēspērāre (dē) *despair (of)*; 221b
dē-spiciō, dē-spicere, dē-spexī, dē-spectus 220, 5
dē-stituō, dē-stituere, dē-stituī, dē-stitūtus *leave unsupported, desert*
dē-sum, de-esse, dē-fuī 185
dē-terreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus 153; 155b
dē-trahō, dē-trahere, dē-trāxī, -tractus *draw off, take away, rob*
dē-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus *take* or *carry along*
dexter, -tra, -trum *right;* **dextra, -ae** f. *right hand;* **ā dextrā** *on the right*
diciō, -ōnis f. *sway*
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus *tell, say, speak, speak of as, call* (see 103; 146a); **causam dīcere** *plead a case;* **dictiō, -ōnis** f. *the pleading*
diēs, diēī m. or f. *day* 81
dif-ferō, dif-ferre, dis-tulī, dīlātus 220, 5; cf. 212
dif-ficilis, -is, -e 92, 157e; **difficultās, -ātis** f. 92
dif-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgī *flee away*
dī-ligō, dī-ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus *pick out; cherish;* **dī-ligēns** 97 *careful;* **dīligentia, -ae** f. 74, 15; **dīlēctus, -a, -um** 98 *loved*
dīmidius, -a, -um 220, 5; **dīmidium, -ī**
dī-mittō, dī-mittere, dī-mīsī, dīmissus *let go away, dismiss*
dis-cēdō, dis-cēdere, dis-cessī, dis-cessus 97; **discessus, -ūs** m. *departure, flight*
discō, discere, didicī *learn;* **disciplīna, -ae** f. *training; learning;* **discipulus, -ī** m. *learner, pupil*
dis-pōnō, dis-pōnere, dis-posuī, dis-positus 220, 5
dis-simulō, -simulāre *pretend not*
dis-tineō, dis-tinēre *keep apart*
diū 69, 119b
dīversus, -a, -um *turned apart, different, diverse*
dīves, -itis *rich;* **dīvitiae, -ārum** *riches, wealth*

dīvidō, dīvidere, -vīsī, -vīsus 98, 104
dō, dare, dedī, datus 97–8 ; 102, 104, 106e, 128, 184 ; **in fugam dare** *put to flight;* **operam dare** *pay attention; give effort*
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus *teach* **4p 4t** ; *explain*
doleō, dolēre, doluī *feel pain* or *grief; suffer;* **dolor, -ōris** *pain*
dolus, -ī *device, trickery*
domus, -ūs f. 81 ; **domī** 61 ; **domum** *homeward;* **domō** 60 ; **dominus, -ī** 146 ; **domina, -ae** *mistress, lady;* **domicilium, -ī** n. *dwelling, abode;* 181b
dōnō, dōnāre 230 **3p 4t** or **4p 6t** ; **dōnum, -ī** n. *gift, present*
dubius, -a, -um *doubtful;* **nōn dubium est quīn** 153 ; **dubitāre** 146b
ducentī, -ae, -a 120 or p. 29
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus *lead, draw* (conclusion), *deem, consider, hold;* **in mātrimōnium or uxōrem dūcere** *marry;* **ductus, -ūs** *leading* cf. 157
dum 147d
duo 120 ; **duodecim** 120
duplex, -icis 120f ; **duplicāre** *double*
dux, ducis *leader, guide, general*

ē, ex 58
ea 115
eā p. 183
ec — ! **ec-quis? -qua? -quid?** 145a
ē-dō, ē-dere, -didī, -ditus 220, 6 ; **ēditus, -a, -um** *elevated, raised*
ē-doceō, ē-docēre *show exactly*
ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus 221b
ef-ferō, ef-ferre, ex-tulī, ē-lātus *let out, take out, get out* (news)
ef-ficiō, ef-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus 220, 6 ; *work out, bring about,* **4** or **ut** w. **Sub.**
ef-fugiō, ef-fugere, -fūgī *flee* (*away*), *escape* **4**
ego *I,* **meī, mihi, mē, mē-cum** 116a
ē-gredior, ē-gredī, —, ē-gressus 97, 100, 102
eius, eiusdem 109b
ē-ligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus 218
ē-loquor, ē-loquī, —, ē-locūtus *speak out*
ē-mittō, ē-mittere, ē-mīsī, ē-missus *send out* or *up, let go out*
emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus 73
ē-nārrō, -āre *tell off, recite, recount*
enim (never stands first) 66
ē-nūntiō, ē-nūntiāre 154, 220, 6
eō, īre, iī or **īvī, itum** 97–8, 102–4, 137, 140, 212
eō 74, 19 ; **eō** 119d or p. 182; **eōdem** 112b ; 119d or p. 182; **eōrum, eōrundem** 109b
epistula, -ae f. *formal letter*
equus, -ī 62, 74, 12 ; **eques, -itis** m. 43, 159 ; **equester, -tris, -tre** *of a horseman, equestrian;* **equitāre** *ride, drill* (*on horse*); **equitātus, -ūs** m. *cavalry*
ē-ripiō, ē-ripere, -ripuī, -reptus 98, 230g, **4p** ; **ē, ex 6**
errō, errāre *go astray, wander, err;* **error, -ōris** m. *wandering, mistake*

ē-rumpō, ē-rumpere, ē-rūpī, ē-ruptus *break out, burst forth, dash out;* ēruptiō, -ōnis f. *a dash*

et 66

etiam (et + iam) *also, even*

et-sī w. Ind. 156 ; 224

ē-veniō, ē-venīre, ē-vēnī, ē-ventus *come out:* ēventus, -ūs m. *outcome*

ē-vocō, ē-vocāre *call out, summon*

ex, ē 58, 220, 6 ; 221b

ex-audiō, ex-audīre *overhear*

ex-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus *go out, leave*

ex-cipiō, ex-cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus *take out, take up; except, meet*

ex-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus 221 *go out;* exitium, -ī n. *ruin, overthrow*

ex-erceō, ex-ercēre, ex-ercuī, ex-ercitus *keep in motion, train, exercise, carry on;* exercitus, -ūs m. *training, army;* exercitāre *drill;* exercitātiō, -ōnis f. *training*

ex-igō, ex-igere, ex-ēgī, ex-āctus *drive out, exhaust, finish, take from by force*

ex-īstimō, -āre 219, 1 ; 4 Inf. ; exīstimātiō, -ōnis f. *opinion*

ex-pediō, ex-pedīre 98 -ī-; 220, 6

ex-pellō, ex-pellere, ex-pulī, ex-pulsus *drive out, expel*

ex-plōrō, *ascertain;* explōrātus *assured;* explōrātor, -ōris m. 62e

ex-pōnō, ex-pōnere, -posuī, -positus *set forth, explain*

ex-pūgnō, -pūgnāre *take by storm, storm;* expugnātiō, -ōnis *capture*

ex-quīrō, ex-quīrere, -quīsīvī (-iī), -quīsītus 219, 1

ex-sequor, ex-sequī, —, ex-secūtus 220, 6

ex-siliō, ex-silīre *leap up* or *forth;* exsilium, -ī n. *exile*

ex-spectō, -spectāre 97, 104–6d, 141

extrā w. acc. *outside of;* exterī *those outside, foreign;* exterior *outer;* extrēmus *outermost, end of*

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus *do, make, arrange, cause* 148–9, *bring about;* facinus, -oris n. *evil deed, crime;* facilis, -e 92 ; facile 69, 92 ; facilitās, -ātis f. *ease;* factiō -ōnis f. *party;* facultās -tātis 92

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus *deceive;* falsus, -a, -um *deceptive*

fāma, -ae f. *report, rumor; fame*

famēs, -is f. abl. famē 55c, 107

-familiās (old Gen.) = familiae

fās *right, fate;* fātum, -ī n. *fate*

faucēs, -ium f. *jaws; throat*

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautus *favor* 3

fēmina, -ae *woman;* fēmineus, -a, -um *of a woman, woman's* cf. 109c

ferē *almost, about*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus 212, 104, 155b ; *bear, carry, endure; bear news, declare;* ferāx, -ācis or fertilis, -e *bearing; productive*

ferrum, -ī *iron; weapon;* ferreus, -a, -um *of iron* cf. 109c

ferus, -a, -um *wild;* fera (bēstia) *wild animal*

fīdō, **fīdere**, —, **fīsus** *confide, trust* **3** ; *rely* **6** ; **fidēs**, **-eī** 47 ; *protection;* **fīdus**, **-a**, **-um** *faithful*

figūra, **-ae** f. *shape, form*

fīlia, **-ae** ; *daughter;* **-us**, **-ī** *son*

fīnis, **-is** 44, 47 ; **fīnīre** *end, terminate;* **fīnitimus**, **-a**, **-um** *bordering* **3** ; **fīnitimī**, **-ōrum** *neighbors*

fīō, **fierī**, —, **factus** 212 *become, be done, happen*

fīrmus, **-a**, **-um**, *strong, firm, solid; steadfast;* **firmiter** *firmly*

flāgitō, **-āre** 147e, 230

flāvus, **-a**, **-um** *yellow*

fleō, **flēre**, **flēvī**, **flētus** *weep*

flō, **flāre**, **flāvī**, **flātus** *blow*

flōs, **flōris** m. 42 ; **flōrēre** 223

fluō, **fluere**, **fluī**, **fluxus** *flow;* **īnfluere** *flow in;* **flūmen** 74, 1 ; 78

focus, **-ī** m. *hearth*

fodiō, **fodere**, **fōdī**, **fossus** 162 (via) **fossa**, **-ae** f. *ditch*

folium, **-ī** n. *leaf, page*

fore 183 = **futūrus esse**

forīs Abl. *out of doors*

fors (**fortis**) f. *chance;* **forte** *by chance, perchance;* **fortasse**, **forsitan** (for **fors sit an**), *perhaps, perchance*

fortis, **-e** 91, 149 ; **fortiter** 91 ; **fortitūdō**, **-inis** f. *bravery, strength*

forum, **-ī** *market* or *public place*

fossa, **-ae** f. see **fodiō**

frangō, **frangere**, **frēgī**, **frāctus** *break, shatter;* **fragor**, **-ōris** m. *breaking, noise, din*

frāter, **frātris** *brother;* **frāternus**, **-a**, **-um**, *brotherly* cf. 109c

frētus, **-a**, **-um** *leaning, relying* **6**

frōns, **frontis** f. *forehead; front*

frūmentum, **-ī** 74, 17 ; **frūmentārī** *procure grain, forage;* **frūmentārius**, **-a**, **-um** *of grain* 109c

fuga, **-ae** f. 60 ; **in fugam dare** or **fugāre** p. 15 *put to flight;* **fūgiō**, **fugere**, **fūgī**, **fugitūrus** **4**, 97

fuit 183

furō, **furere** *rave*

gaudeō, **gaudēre**, —, **gāvīsus** *rejoice;* **gaudium**, **-ī** n. *joy*

gēns, **gentis** f. *race, family, clan, tribe;* **genus**, **generis** n. *birth, origin, lineage; sort, kind;* **generātim** *by tribes*

gerō, **gerere**, **gessī**, **gestus** *bear, carry; wear, carry on, accomplish, manage, do;* **rem gerere** *do business;* **bellum gerere** *make* or *wage war* 226 or p. 238

gladius, **-ī** 62

glōria, **-ae** f. *fame, pride; liking, admiration;* **glōriārī** *glory in, take pride, boast* **6**

gradior, **gradī**, —, **gressus** *step, walk, move;* **gradus**, **-ūs** *a step, grade, rank* pl. *steps, stair*

Graecus, **-a**, **-um** *Greek;* **Graecus**, **-ī** *a Greek;* **graecē** 69 ; **Graecia**, **-ae** *Greece*

grātus, **-a**, **-um** *pleasant, agreeable, acceptable;* **grātum**, **-ī** *a thing pleasing, a favor;* **grātia**, **-ae** 59, 62g ; **grātiam habēre** *be grateful;* **grātiās agere**

return thanks; **grātiam referre** *return a favor;* **grātulārī** *congratulate*

gravis, -e *heavy, severe, serious, dignified;* **graviter** *severely, seriously;* **gravitās, -ātis** f. *weight; dignity*

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus 58, 102, 104, 222c ; **habitāre** 222c

haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesus *stick*

harēna, -ae f. *dry soil; sand, arena.*

hībernus, -a, -um *of winter;* (**castra**) **hīberna** *winter camp* cf. 109c

hic, haec, hoc 117b, 119c ; **hic . . . hic** ; *this . . . that; the one . . . the other;* **hic . . . ille** *the latter . . . the former;* **hīc** 119e ; **hinc** 119f ; **hāc** 119g ; **hōc** 154 ; **hodiē** *this day, to-day;* **hūc** 119d ; **adhūc** *up to this, thus far*

hiems, hiemis f. *winter;* **initā hieme** *at the beginning of winter;* **media hiems** *midwinter;* **extrēma hiems** *last of winter;* **summa hiems** *the depth of, dead of winter;* **hiemāre** *pass the winter*

hodiē see **hic** ; **hodiernus, -a, -um** *to-day's, of to-day* cf. 109c.

homō, hominis *human being, man*

honōs or **honor, honōris** m. *office, honor;* **honestus, -a, -um** *honorable;* **honestāre**, *honor*

hōra, -ae f. *hour*

hortor, -ārī, —, hortātus 147c.

hortus, -ī, m. *garden*

hōrum, 109b

hostis, -is 63 ; *stranger, foreigner, enemy* (*public*) as opp. to **inimīcus** (*private*) *enemy*

huius 109b

hūmānus, -a, -um *of man, human* 109c ; *cultured, refined;* **hūmānitās, -ātis** f. *refinement, culture*

humus, humī m. *ground;* **humī** (Loc.) *on the ground;* **humilis, -e** 92

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī *lie* (*dead*)

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus *throw, hurl;* **iactāre** 222c ; **coniciō, conicere, coniēcī, coniectus** *throw* (*all together*), *thrust*

iam *now, soon, already; at that time, at this time;* **iam diū** *long since;* **iam . . . iam** *at one time . . . at another;* **nōn iam** *no longer*

ibi p. 183

īdem, eadem, idem 47 ; **eōdem** p. 182 ; **ibīdem** p. 183 ; **indidem** p. 183 ; **eādem** p. 183 ; **item** 119b

id, quod ; **ea, quae** 115

idōneus, -a, -um *suitable* **3** or **ad 4**

Īdūs, -uum f. *Ides;* see page 36

igitur 66

ignis, -is m. *fire*

ille, illa, illud 109b, 118b (after its noun) *that well-known* or *famous;* **ille . . . hic** *the one . . . the other, the former . . . the latter;* **illō, illūc** 119d; **illīc** 119e ; **illinc** 119f ; **illāc** 119g

imber, imbris m. *rain shower*

immōtus, **-a**, **-um**, *unmoved* 98 ; 220, 7

im-pediō, **im-pedīre** 98

im-pendeō, **-pendēre** 220, 7

imperō, **-āre** 147e ; **3p**, **4t** ; **3p ut Sub.** ; **imperātor**, **-ōris** m. *commander, general;* **imperium**, **-ī** n. *command; chief command, power, control, government*

im-petrō, **-āre** 147e ; **4 ab 6** ; **ut Sub.**

impetus, **-ūs** m. *charge, attack, rush*

im-plōrō, **-āre** *ask* **4t**, **ab p.** cf. 147e

im-pōnō, **-pōnere**, **-posuī**, **-positus** *put in, put on, put upon, impose, levy upon* **3p**, **4t** or **4**, **in 4**

īmus, **-a**, **-um** 92

in 57 and 58

in-cendō, **in-cendere**, **in-cendī**, **in-cēnsus** *set on fire;* **incendium**, **-ī** n. *fire, conflagration*

in-cidō, **in-cidere**, **in-cidī** *fall upon, happen upon,* **in 4**

in-cipiō, **-cipere** *take to, begin*

in-citō, **in-citāre** *rouse*

in-colō, **in-colere**, **in-coluī** *dwell in, inhabit* **4** ; **in-cola**, **-ae** m. *inhabitant;* **agri-cola** *farmer*

in-columis, **-e** *unharmed, safe*

in-cūsō, **in-cūsāre** *bring charge against, upbraid*

inde, p. 183

index, **-icis** m. *pointer, discloser, informer;* **indicium**, **-ī** *information, accusation;* **indicāre** *point out, show, make known, accuse*

in-dūcō, **in-dūcere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductus** *lead on, influence*

indulgeō, **-ēre** *indulge* **3**

in-eō, **in-īre**, **-iī**, **-itus** *go into enter (upon)* ; **initium**, **-ī** n. *an entering upon, beginning*

īnferī, **inferior**, **īnfimus** 92

īn-ferō, **in-ferre**, **in-tulī**, **il-lātus** 155b, 220, 7 ; **bellum īnferre 3** *carry war against*

īnfirmus, **-a**, **-um** *weak, unsteady*

ingēns, **ingentis** cf. 84 ; *enormous*

in-gredior, **in-gredī**, —, **in-gressus in 4** ; 153

in-imīcus, **-a**, **-ūm** *unfriendly* 75 ; **inimīcitia**, **-ae** f. *enmity*

in-īquus, **-a**, **-um** *unfair, unjust* 219

initium see **ineō**

in-iūria, **-ae** f. 107

in-iussus, **-a**, **-um** *unbidden* cf. 98 ; 220, 7

inopia, **-ae** f. *want, lack*

in-opīnāns, **-antis** (*when*) *not expecting, unaware* 84, 220, 7

inquam *I say;* **inquit** *says he*

īn-sequor, **īn-sequī**, —, **īn-secūtus** *follow on, pursue*

īnsidiae, **-ārum** f. *a sitting against; ambush, treachery*

īnsolenter *insolently*

īn-stituō, **īn-stituere**, **īn-stituī**, **īn-stitūtus** *set up, decide, establish; equip;* **īnstitūtum**, **-ī** n. *custom, institution*

īn-stō, **īn-stāre**, **īn-stitī** *stand on, keep at, press on; insist*

īn-struō, **īn-struere**, **īn-strūxī**, **in-strūctus** *heap up; arrange, set in order, plan, contrive*

īnsula, -ae f. 60 ; 74, 21
īn-sum, īn-esse *be in*
in-teger, -gra, -grum *untouched; fresh, complete*
intel-legō, intel-legere, intel-lēxī, -lēctus 220, 8 ; *l aware, see*
in-tendō, in-tendere, -tendī, -tentus *strain toward, stretch out toward*
inter 57 ; 220, 8 ; 221b
inter-cēdō, inter-cēdere, -cessī, -cessus 220, 8 ; 221b
inter-diū *during the daytime*
inter-dum *sometimes, meanwhile*
inter-eā *there between; meanwhile*
inter-ficiō, inter-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus *make away with, kill, put to death* 220, 8
inter-iciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus *thrust in, situated between, intervening*
inter-im *there between, meanwhile*
inter-mittō, inter-mittere, -mīsī, -missus *let go between times, interrupt, let up, stop* 220, 8
interneciō, -ōnis f. *massacre* (**nex**)
inter-pōnō, inter-pōnere, -posuī, -positus *put between, interpose; offer, allege*
inter-sum, -esse, -fuī 69, 73c, d
intervāllum, -ī n. *interval*
intrā (w. Ac.) *within*
intrō-dūcō, intrō-dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus 220, 8 *lead into*
intulī see **īnferō**
in-veniō, in-venīre, -vēnī, -ventus *come upon, find* **4** ; *find out* **4 Inf.**
in-victus, -a, -um *unconquered, invincible*
invītō, invītāre, *invite*
invītus, -a, -um (*when*) *unwilling,* (*though*) *reluctant* 94, 96
ipse, ipsa, ipsum 118
īra, īrae *anger;* **irācundus, -a, -um** *hot-tempered;* **īrāscī** 223b *grow angry;* **īrātus** *angry, enraged*
is, ea, id 112, 115, 119c ; p. 182 ; **eō** p. 182 ; **ibi** p. 183 ; **inde** p. 183 ; **eā** p. 183 ; **ita** 119b
iste, ista, istud 109b, 118b ; **istīc** 119e ; **istūc** 119d ; **istinc** 119f ; **istāc** 119g
ita-que *and so, therefore*
item 119b
iter, itineris n. 82a, b, e *a going; journey, route, line of march;* **iter facere** *march;* (**eōs**) **itinere prohibēre** *keep* (*them*) *from marching* or *passing*
iterum 67, 120g
itūrus 102–3
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus **4 Inf.** ; 122, 127, 136, 139
iūdex, iūdicis 46, 78 ; **iūdicāre** *serve as judge, judge, decide, think, declare;* **iūdicium, -ī** n. *court, judgment, decision*
iugum, -ī n. *yoke; ridge, chain of hills; summit;* **iūmentum, -ī** n. *yoke animal*
Iūlius, -ī 60
iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus *join*
iūs, iūris n. 42, 225 ; **iūrāre** *take oath, swear;* **coniūrāre** *swear together, conspire;* **iūs iūrandum** *oath;* **iūstus, -a, -um**

right, just, fair; **iūstitia, -ae** f. *fairness*
iussus, -ūs m. *a bidding* cf. 157
iuvenis, -is *young;* **iuventūs** 44
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus 4 *help, aid, assist;* **iuvat** *it pleases*

labor, labī, —, lapsus *slip*
labor, -ōris m. *toil;* **labōrāre** *toil, work out, be in trouble, suffer (inconvenience)*
lac, lactis n. *milk*
lacessō, lacessere, -īvī, -ītus *challenge, provoke, excite*
lacrima, -ae f. *tear*
lacus, -ūs m. *lake*
lapis, -idis m. 43
largus, -a, -um *copious, lavish, unstinted;* **largiter** *copiously;* **largīrī** 136, 139 ; **largītiō, -ōnis** f. *lavish giving, bribery*
Latium, -ī n. *Latium;* **Latīnus, -a, -um** *Latin;* **latīnē** 69
latrō, -ōnis m. *robber, highwayman*
lātus see **ferō**
lātus, -a, -um 92 ; **lātē** 69; **lātitūdō, -dinis** f. 42, 92
latus, -eris n. *side, flank*
laus, laudis f. *praise;* **laudāre,** 151
laurus, -ī f. *laurel (tree)*
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus 97 **-e-**, 106, 136, 218 ; **legiō, -ōnis** f. *a choosing; legion;* **legiōnārius, -a, -um** *of a legion, legionary:* **lēgāre** *appoint legally, commission; bequeath;* **lēgātus, -ī** m. *lieutenant, envoy;* **lēgātiō, -ōnis** f. *mission, commission, embassy*
lēnis, -e *soft, gentle;* **lēniter** *smoothly, gently;* **lēnitās, -ātis** f. *softness, gentleness, mildness*
lentē *slowly*
lēx, lēgis f. *law, statute*
liber, librī m. *inner bark;* 62
līber, lībera, līberum 91 ; pl. **līberī, -ōrum** *free children;* **līberē** *freely;* **līberāre** *to make free;* **lībertās, -ātis** f. *freedom;* **līberāliter** *generously*
libet, libēre, libuit, libitum 119b ; **libēns** *pleasing;* **libenter** *with pleasure, gladly*
licet, licēre, licuit, licitum 139
lingua, -ae f. *tongue; language*
littera, -ae f. *letter* pl. 218a; **litterārius, -a, -um** *of letters*
lītus, -oris n. 218a
locus, -ī m. *place, room;* pl. **loca** n. *places;* **locī** *passages in books;* **locāre** *place, locate; let;* **collocāre** *arrange, station, put*
longus, -a, -um 92 ; *distant;* **longē** 69 ; **longitūdō** 92
loquor, loquī, —, locūtus 136; *express one's self*
lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsus *play* **6** ; *make sport of* **6** ; **lūdus, -ī** m. *game, play; school;* **ē-lūdere** *dodge, escape*
lūstrō, -āre *survey, look over*
lūx, lūcis f. *light of day;* **lūcēre** *shine;* **lūmen, -inis** n. *light;* **lūna** (for **lūcīna**) *moon* 223
lūxus, -ūs m. *luxury, taste*

māchina, -ae f. *machine, structure;* **māchinārī** *contrive, invent, scheme;* **māchinātiō, -ōnis** f. *contrivance*

magister, -trī m. 76 *master, overseer; teacher;* **magistrātus, -ūs** m. *chieftainship, office*

magnus, -a, -um 70, 92 ; **magnitūdō, -dinis** f. *greatness, size;* **maior, -ius** 92 ; **maximus** 92 ; **magnopere, magnō opere** 70 ; **magis** 69 ; **maximē** 69, 92

mālō, mālle, māluī 137, 186

malus, -a, -um 91, 64, 70 ; **male** 69 ; **maleficium, -ī** n. 91

mandō, mandāre 3 and 4 *give up to; entrust, bid; command;* **mandātum, -ī** *order*

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsus *remain, abide, stay*

mānsuētus, -a, -um *gentle*

manus, -ūs f. *band, force* 81

mare, -is n. 79b ; **maritimus, -a, -um** *of sea, maritime* cf. 109c ; **aequor** *level sea;* **pelagus** *broad sea;* **pontus** *deep sea,* **altum** *high* or *deep sea*

māter, mātris 41 ; **māternus** cf. 109c; **māterfamiliās**; see **-familiās**

mātūrus 91 ; **mātūrē** 91 ; **mātūrius** 91 ; **mātūrāre** Inf. o. 91; 223

medius, -a, -um *mid-, middle, central*

meī 116a

mel 41

melior, -ius 91

membrum, -ī n. *limb*

meminī, meminisse *remember, recollect* **4, 4** Inf. ; **memor, -oris** *mindful* or *remembering* **2** ; **memoria, -ae** f. *recollection; tradition, record* **2**; **memoriā tenēre** *keep in mind, recollect;* **memōrāre** *recall, recount, relate* **4**

mēns, mentis f. *mind*

mēnsis, -is m. *month;* **mēnsūra, -ae** f. *measure;* **mētīrī** *measure*

mereō, merēre, meruī, meritus *deserve, merit;* **meritum, -ī** n. merit, *desert;* **meritō** *deservedly;* **merx, mercis** f. *ware;* **mercēs** *goods;* **mercēs, -ēdis** f. *pay;* **mercātor, -ōris** m. *trader*

metus, -ūs m. *fear, dread;* **metuere, metuī** *fear, apprehend, dread*

meus, mea, meum 64, 83, 109c

mīles, -itis 44 ; **mīlitāris, -e** 109c *soldier's, military;* **mīlitia, -ae** f. *military service;* **domī mīlitiaeque** L. *at home and abroad*

mīlle, milia 120; **mīllēsimus, -a, -um** *1000th*

ministrō, -āre *furnish*

minor 150 ; **minus, -ōris** 70 ; **minus** 118c ; **minuere, minuī, minūtus** *lessen, decrease;* **minimē** 69 ; **minimus** 92

mīrus, -a, -um *wonderful;* **mīrārī** *wonder at, marvel*

misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mīxtus *mix, mingle;* 4 and **6**

miser, misera, miserum 74, 8

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus *let go,* 159, 62, 98

modus, -ī m. *measure, kind;* **modo** 66 *in a measure, in a (limited) manner; only, but, just, just now;* **modestus, -a, -um** *self-restraining*

moenia, -ium n. 78

mōlēs, -is f. *shapeless mass; pile, heap, dam, mole, dyke, burden;*

molīrī *pile up, heap up, build, plot;* **molestē** *with annoyance*
molitus, -a, -um *ground*
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus *warn, advise* **4, ut** w. Sub.
mōns, montis m. *mountain*
mora, -ae f. *delay, hindrance;* **morārī** 100 *detain self* cf. 181, *delay*
mors, mortis f. 100 ; **morior, morī, —, mortuus** 100
mōs, mōris m. 42
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus 98, 145 ; **mōtus, -ūs** m. *a move, uprising* cf. 157
mulier, -eris f. (*married*) *woman*
multus, -a, -um 64, 70 ; 74, 17 ; 74, 19 ; **plūs** 70, 150 ; **plūrimus** 64, 70 ; 72, 73 ; **multitūdō, -inis** f. *body, number, great quantity*
mūnus, mūneris n. *task, function, service; gift;* **mūniō, mūnīre** 97–8, 104 ; **mūnītiō, -ōnis** f. 98
mūrus, -ī m. *wall*
mūtō, -āre *change*

nam 119b ; **nam-que** 119b
nāscor, nāscī, —, nātus 223b ; **nātus, -ī** *son;* **nāta, -ae** *daughter;* **maior nātū** *elder;* **minor nātū** *younger; less in age;* **nātiō, -ōnis** f. *race, people, tribe;* **nātūra, -ae** f. 6d
nātō, nātāre 222c ; **nauta, -ae** (for **navita** § 178) m.; **nāvis, -is** f. 62c, 79 ; **nāvigāre** *sail;* **nāvigātiō, -ōnis** f. *sailing*
-ne interrog. particle 145a, b
nē 69, 141, 148, 153–155
nec, neque 66
necesse nom. or acc. **necesse est** *it is urgent;* **necessitās, -ātis** f. *urgency;* **necessitūdō, -dinis** f. *relationship;* **necessārius, -a, -um** *urgent, necessary; relative*
neg-legō, neg-legere, neg-lēxī, neg-lēctus 98, 102 ; 220, 9 ; 225; **neglegenter,** *carelessly*
negō, negāre *say no, deny, refuse*
neg-ōtium, -ī n. 220, 9
nē-mō, nēminī, nēminem 118c
ne-quā-quam p. 183
ne-que, nec 66
neuter, neutra, neutrum 40, 65
nēve; see **nē** and **-ve**
nex, necis f. *slaying, death, murder*
nihil, -ī n. 118c, 70–1, 145b
nisi (**nī**) 141b, 113, 145b, 156
nītor, nītī, —, nīsus or **nīxus** *strive; rely* or *rest* **6**; or **in 4**
nix, nivis f. 46
nōbilis, -e see **nōscō**
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī 121, 128, 137
nōmen, -inis n. 41 ; **suō nōmine** *on one's own account;* **nōminātim** *by name;* **nōmināre** *call by name*
nōn 141 ; **nōn-dum** *not yet;* **nōn iam** *no longer;* **nōnnūllus**; **nōnnumquam** cf. 64, 119b
nōnus, -a, -um 120; **nōngentī** *900*
nōs 116b
nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus 107, 223 ; perf. **nōvī** *I know;* **nōbilis, -e** *knowable; prominent*
noster, nostra, nostrum 64, 109c
nōtō, -āre *mark, denote*

novem 120 ; **noviēns** 120g
novus, -a, -um *new, strange;* **novae rēs** *revolution;* **novissimus** *newest, last* (to come or pass) ; **novissimum agmen** *rear-guard;* **novāre** *renew, repair, change;* **novitās, -ātis** f. *newness, novelty, strangeness*
nox, noctis f. 46 ; **noctū, nocte** 74, 18 ; **prīmā nocte** *at nightfall;* **multā nocte** *late at night*
nūbēs 79 ; **nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī nūpta** (f.) (*veil*), *marry;* **nūptiae, -ārum** f. *marriage* (*ceremonies*) ; **nūptum** (Sup.) 157
nūdus, -a, -um 6 *bare;* **nūdāre** *make bare, clear* **4** and **6** ; 63
nūllus, -a, -um 40, 64, 65, 118b
num? 145c
numerus, -ī m. *number, amount;* **saepe numerō** *oftentimes;* **numerāre** *count*
numquam p. 183
nunc *now;* **nunc . . . nunc** *at one time . . . at another;* **nūper** *just now, lately;* 220, 10
nūntius, -a, -um *announcing; messenger, news;* **nūntiāre** 142
nūper see **nunc**

ob 57 ; 220, 9
ob-aerātus, -a, -um *in debt; debtor*
ob-lātus see **of-ferō**
ob-līvīscor, ob-līvīscī, —, ob-lītus 2 or **4** ; **4 Inf.** 107, 223b
ob-oediō, ob-oedīre *listen to, give heed to, obey*
ob-sideō, ob-sidēre, ob-sēdī, ob-sessus *sit by* or *against; besiege, blockade;* **obses, -idis** 106e ; **obsidiō, -ōnis** f. *blockade, siege*
ob-stringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus *bind*
obstrictus, -a, -um *bound*
ob-tineō, ob-tinēre, ob-tinuī, ob-tentus 98, 220, 9
oc-cidō, oc-cidere, oc-cidī, -cāsus *fall, settle, set;* **occāsus, -ūs** m. *a falling down; setting;* **occāsiō, -ōnis** f. *opportunity*
oc-cīdō, oc-cīdere, oc-cīdī, oc-cīsus 219, 1
oc-cupō, oc-cupāre *take possession of, seize*
oc-currō, oc-currere, oc-cucurrī or **oc-currī, -cursus** 220, 9
Ōceanus, -ī m. *ocean;* **mare Ōceanus** *the Atlantic*
octō 120 ; **Octōber** 87 ; **octāvus, -a, -um** 120 ; **octōgintā** 120; **octingentī, -ae, -a** *eight hundred*
oculus, -ī m. 62g
ōdī, ōdisse 74, 22 ; **odium, -ī** n. **in 4**, § 5f
of-ferō, of-ferre, ob-tulī, ob-lātus 220, 9
officium, -ī n. *service, duty*
olīva, -ae f. *olive*
omnis, -e 71 ; **omnīnō** *in all*
opera, -ae f. *labor; pains, effort*
opīniō, -ōnis f. *idea, expectation*
oportet, oportēre, oportuit 152
oportūnus, -a, -um *lucky*
oppidum, -ī 77 ; **oppidānus, -ī** m. *townsman*
op-primō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus *oppress*

op-pugnō, op-pugnāre *assault, attack, storm* (a town) ; **op-pūgnātiō, -ōnis** f. *assault, storming*

optimus 91 ; **-ē** 69 ; **optimātēs, -ium,** m. *aristocrats*

opus, operis n. 70, 71c ; **magnopere** 70 ; **quantopere** 70 ; **tantopere** 70

opus est 6, 71c

ōra, -ae f. *coast, border, zone*

orbis, -is m. *circle, round, orbit;* **orbis terrārum** *the circle of the lands* i.e. *the world*

ōrdō, -inis m. 42

orior, orīrī, —, ortus 97, 100, 102 ; **orīgō** 42 ; **oriēns** 97 ; **ortus, -ūs** m. *the rising* (of the sun)

ōrnō, ōrnāre *adorn;* **ōrnāmentum, -ī** n. *ornament, equipment, credit*

ōs, ōris n. 78 ; *face;* **ōrō, ōrāre** *move mouth, plead, beg;* **ōrātor, -ōris** m. *pleader, orator;* **ōrātiō, -ōnis** f. *plea, argument, speech*

os-tendō, os-tendere, os-tendī, ostentus 146, 220, 9

ovis, -is f. sheep

pābulum, -ī n. 148h ; **pābulārī** *get forage;* **pābulātiō, -ōnis** f. *foraging; a foraging expedition*

pācō, see **pāx**

paene *almost;* **paen-īnsula, -ae** f. *almost-island, peninsula*

pāgus, -ī m. *district, clan, canton*

palūs, -ūdis f. 43

pandō, pandere, pandī, passus *open, spread out;* **passim** *here and there*

pār, paris 83 ; **pariter** *equally*

parcus, -a, -um *sparing*

pāreō, pārēre, pāruī *obey* **3**

pariō, parere, peperī, partus *give birth to, bring forth;* **parēns, -entis** *parent*

parō, parāre 98, 102

pars, partis f. 47, 79 ; **pars . . . pars** *some . . . others;* **partim** *partly;* **parti-ceps, -cipis** *participant, sharer;* **partīrī** 104

parvus, -a, -um 70, 71, 92, 150 ; **parum** 70 ; **minor** 150 ; **minus** 69, 148d, 150, 155, 118c ; **minimus** 70, 92 ; **minimē** 69

pāscō, pāscere, pāvī, pāstus *cause to feed, pasture;* **pascor, pascī** *feed* (*self*) *on* **6** ; 180–2 ; **pāstor, -ōris** m. *feeder, shepherd*

passus p.p. of **patior** 100

passus (p.p. of **pandō**) *open*

passus, -ūs m. *a spreading; double step* (about 5 feet) ; **mīlle passūs** 1000 *paces, a Roman mile* 120

pateō, patēre, patuī *extend, lie open, spread* pp. 33, line 9, 38, 14 ; **pate-faciō, pate-facere, -fēcī, -factus** *throw open, open, disclose*

pater, patris 41 ; **paternus, -a, -um** 109c ; **patrius, -a, -um** *paternal;* (**terra**) **patria** *fatherland, country;* **patruus, -ī** *an uncle on the father's side*

patior, patī, —, passus *let, allow*

paucī, -ae, -a 64; **paucitās, -ātis** f. *fewness*

paulum 70 ; **paululum** 70 ; **paulātim** *little by little, gradually;* **paulisper** *for a short time*

pāx, pācis f. 46, 159 ; **pācāre** *subdue;* **pactum, -ī** n. *agreement*
pecus, -oris n. *cattle;* **pecūnia, -ae** f. (value of cattle) *money*
peius see **malus** 91
pellis, -is f. *skin, hide, pelt*
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus *strike, beat, push, drive*
per 57 ; 70
per-agō, per-agere, per-ēgī, -āctus *drive through; finish, accomplish*
per-dō, per-dere, -didī, -ditus *put through; destroy, loose*
per-dūcō, per-dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus *take on* or *over, continue*
per-eō, per-īre, per-iī, -itus *go through; perish, be lost* 220, 10
per-facilis, -is, -e *very easy*
per-ferō, per-ferre, -tulī, -lātus *bear through, carry through; endure to the end; carry news*
per-ficiō, per-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus 98, 220, 10
perīculum, -ī n. *danger;* **perīculōsus, -a, -um** *perilous;* **perīclitārī** *take risk (to self)* 180–2
perītus, -a, -um 2 *skilled in, experienced, familiar with;* **imperītus 2** *ignorant*
per-magnus, -a, -um cf. 64, 70
per-maneō, per-manēre, -mānsī, -mānsus *stay through, hold out, abide*
per-mittō, per-mittere, -mīsī, -missus *let go through; yield, allow, permit* **4**, **ut** w. Sub.
per-moveō, per-movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus *move throughout, rouse, induce*
permultī 64, 220, 10
perniciēs, -eī f. *thorough killing; destruction, disaster* cf. **nex**
perpaucī, -ae, -a 64, 220, 10
per-rumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus *break through*
per-sequor, per-sequī, —, per-secūtus *follow thoroughly, pursue, press hard*
per-sevērō, per-sevērāre *persevere, insist upon* **Inf. o.**
per-spiciō, per-spicere, per-spexī, -spectus *see through, see clearly, make out, understand*
per-suādeō, per-suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus 147e
per-terreō, per-terrēre, -terruī, -territus *terrify thoroughly*
per-tineō, -tinēre, -tinuī 220, 10
per-turbō, -turbāre, *confuse thoroughly, throw into confusion*
per-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus *get through to, arrive at* **ad 4** ; *arrive in* **in 4**
pēs 43 ; **pedes, -itis** m. 43 ; **pedester, -tris, -tre** *belonging to the feet; of infantry* cf. 109c ; **peditātus, -ūs** m. *a body of foot-soldiers, infantry*
petō, petere, petīvī, petītus 147e
phalanx, -angis f. *phalanx; close formation of troops*
pīlum, -ī n. *javelin, spear*
placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum 3, 133
plānus, -a, -um *flat, even;* **plānē** *plainly;* **plānitiēs, -ēī** f. *levelness, plain*
plēbēs, -eī f. *commons*
plēnus, -a, -um 62
plērīque *most people* 76

plērumque 70
plērusque, plēraque, plērumque 76
plūrimum 70, 92
plūs, plūris n. 70, 72 ; 74, 19 ; 150
poena, -ae f. *penalty, punishment*
pol-liceor, pol-licērī, —, pol-licitus *hold forth; promise*
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus *put down, put, place, establish*
pōns, pontis m. 158
populō, populāre *ravage, raid*
populus, -ī m. 107
porta, -ae f. *gate, entrance;* **portus, -ūs** *harbor, port*
portō, portāre 97, 102, 104
poscō, poscere, poposcī *demand, claim; inquire into*
possideō, possidēre, *possess, own*
possum, posse 137, 183 ; **potēns** 84, 91 ; **potentia, -ae** f. *power, influence*
post 57, 68 ; **posteā** 69 ; **posterus, -a, -um** 68c ; **posterior** *hinder;* **postrēmus** or **postumus** *latest, last, final;* **postrīdiē** *on the next day;* **postrēmō** *at last*
pōstulō, postulāre 147e
potēns 84
potestās, -ātis or **potentia, -ae** f. *power, chance* (*at*) **2**
potior, potīrī, —, potītus 182
prae 58, 92, 220, 11
prae-acūtus, -a, -um *sharpened*
prae-beō, prae-bēre, prae-buī, prae-bitus 220, 11
prae-cēdō, prae-cēdere 74, 16 ; 220; 11
prae-cipiō, prae-cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus *take beforehand, anticipate, advise, warn, give directions, order;* **prae-cipuē** *especially*
praeda, -ae f. *booty, prey;* **praedārī** *make prey of, rob, plunder*
prae-currō, -ere *run ahead*
prae-dicō, prae-dicāre *make known, proclaim; vaunt, boast*
prae-ferō, prae-ferre, -tulī, -lātus *place before, prefer* **3** and **4**
prae-ficiō, prae-ficere, prae-fēcī, -fectus 3 and **4**, *put at the head of* or *in charge of;* **praefectus, -ī** *captain, prefect* (of cavalry)
prae-legō, -ere *read out*
prae-mittō, prae-mittere, prae-mīsī, -missus *send in advance*
praemium, -ī n. *bounty, reward*
prae-nōmen *fore-name;* cf. **cognōmen** *added name*
praesidium, -ī n. *garrison; guard*
prae-stō, prae-stāre, -stitī, -stitus *stand in front, excel* **3** ; *put in front of, furnish* **3p, 4t**
prae-sum, prae-esse, prae-fuī *be at head of, in charge of* **3** ; **praesēns, praesentis** *present* cf. 84
praeter 57 ; **praeter-eā** *besides;* **praeter quam** *further than, except*
praeter-eō, praeter-īre, -iī, -itus 220, 11
prae-eō, -īre *go ahead of;* **praetor, -ōris** m. *one who goes before; a praetor, a Roman magistrate, general;* **praetōrius, -a, -um** *general's*
premō, premere, pressī, pressus *press, crowd, oppress*

prēndō, prēndere or prehendere, prehendī, prehēnsus *grasp;* comprehendere *seize, arrest*
pretium, -ī n. 73
prīdem *long ago, long since;* iam pridem *this long ago, long ago;* prīdiē *on the day before;* prior, prius, 68b, 69, 92 ; prīmus, -a, -um 92, 120 ; prīn-ceps, -cipis 55a *first; foremost, chief;* prīncipātus, -ūs m. *chiefship, leadership;* prīncipium, -ī n. *beginning;* prius, prius (-quam) 69 ; prīstinus, -a, -um *former, old-time*
prīvātus, -a, -um *set apart*
prō 58 ; 220, 12
probus, -a, -um good ; probāre *find good, approve, prove;* probitās, -ātis f. *goodness;* improbus, -a, -um *wicked, bad*
prō-cēdō, prō-cēdere, prō-cessī, -cessus *go forth, advance*
prō-cōnsul, -is m. *proconsul*
procul adv. *afar off*
prōd-eō, -īre, -iī, -itus 220, 12
prō-dō, prō-dere, -didī, -ditus *give away, betray;* prōditor, -ōris m. *traitor*
prō-dūcō, prō-dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus *lead forth; protract, draw out*
proelium, -ī n. 62 f, 63, proeliārī *do battle*
pro-ficīscor, pro-ficīscī, —, pro-fectus 97, 102, 223 ; pro-fectiō, -ōnis f. *a setting forth, departure*
prō-fluō, -ere, *flow out*
pro-fugiō, pro-fugere, pro-fūgī, -fugitūrus 220, 12
prō-gredior, prō-gredī, —, prō-gressus 100, 104, 220, 12
pro-hibeō, pro-hibēre, pro-hibuī, -hibitus 63, 102, 123, 132, 148g, 219, 3
prope *near; almost;* propior, propius *nearer;* proximus, -a, -um 68c ; proximē *most recently, last;* propinquus, -a, -um *near; close, relative;* pro-pinquitās, -ātis f. *kinship*
properō, -āre *hasten, speed* Inf. o
prō-pōnō, prō-pōnere, prō-posuī, -positus *put forward, set forth*
proprius, -a, -um *one's own, proper* cf. Eng. property
propter 57 ; propter-eā 154
prō-pulsō, prō-pulsāre *beat off*
prō-spiciō, prō-spicere, prō-spexī, -spectus *look forth* or *look out for* **3** ; prōspectus, -ūs m. *view*
prō-videō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus *foresee* **4** ; *provide for* **3** ; prōvidēns or prūdēns 91 ; prō-videntia or prūdentia, -ae f. *foresight, wisdom*
prōvincia 77 ; p. 78 line 23
prō-vocō, prō-vocāre *call forth, challenge*
prō-volō, -āre *fly forth*
pūblicus, -a, -um 73 ; rēs pūblica *commonwealth, state;* pūblicē *in the name of the people, publicly*
puer, puerī 41, 44; puella, -ae f. *girl*
pugna, -ae f. 62f ; pugnus, -ī m. *fist;* pugnō, pugnāre 62
pulcher, -chra, -chrum 91

putō, putāre *trim, clean; arrange, set in order, reckon, think*

quadrāgintā 120g ; quadragiēns ; quadrāgēnsimus, -a, -um 40*th* ; quadrāns, -ntis *one fourth;* quadringentī, -ae, -a *four hundred*
quadriennium 67; quadrīduum 67
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus 123, 143, 147e
quā 119g
quālis, -e 91
quam 64, 69, 90 ; quamquam *however, and yet, though*
quandō 119a
quantus, -a, -um 70, 92 ; quantopere 70
quā rē 115 c, 154
quattuor 120 ; quater 67, 120 ; quārtus, -a, -um 120 ; quaternī, -ae, -a *four each;* quattuordecim *fourteen;* quadringentī, -ae, -a *400*
-que 66
queror, querī, —, questus *complain of, lament;* questus, -ūs m. *a complaint* 157 ; querimōnia, -ae f. *complaint*
quī, quae, quod 115
quic-quam p. 182 and 119b
quī-cumque, quae-cumque, quod-cumque 119b and p. 182
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, quoddam 119b and p. 182
quidem ; nē . . . quidem 69
quiēs, quiētis f. 43 ; quiēscō, -ere, quiēvī, quiētus *go to rest; grow quiet;* quiētus *at rest, peaceful*
quīn 115b, c, 149
quīnque 120 or p. 29 ; quīnquiēs 120 ; quīntus, -a, -um 120 ; quīnī, -ae, -a 120 ; quīnquāgintā 120 or p. 29 ; quīngentī, -ae, -a 120
quis, quid ; quī, quae, quod 113–5
quis-quam, quid-quam or quic-quam 119b or p. 182
quis-que, quae-que, quid-que or quod-que 119b or p. 182
quis-quis, quid-quid 119b
quī-vīs, quae-vīs, quid-vīs, quod-vīs 119b or p. 182
quō . . . eō 74, 19 or p. 18
quō . . . minus 148–9, 155
quod *the fact that, as for the fact that, that, because, since* 115b
quon-dam 119a, b and p. 183
quon-iam *since, whereas, as* 224
quoque *also, too*
quōrum 109b
quot 64 ; quotiēns 120e ; quot-annīs *every year*

rārus, -a, -um *widely scattered, loose;* rārō *rarely*
rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus 97, 98, 162
ratiō, -ōnis, f. 42 *a reckoning; way, method; account; system, plan, reason* 154
ratis, -is f. *raft; vessel*
re-, red- 220, 13
raucus, -a, -um *hoarse*
recēns, recentis *fresh, new*
re-cipiō, re-cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus 98, 104 ; sē recipere *betake one's self, withdraw*
rēctē see regō
re-cūsō, re-cūsāre 154, 219, 1

red-dō, red-dere, -didī, -ditus *give back, return* cf. 102

red-eō, red-īre, -iī, -itus *go back,* return ; **reditus, -ūs** m. (*a*) *return;* **reditiō, -ōnis** f. 220, 13

red-igō, red-igere, -ēgī, -āctus *drive back; reduce, bring down*

red-imō, red-imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus *buy back; purchase, acquire, ransom*

red-integrō, -āre *renew*

re-dūcō, re-dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus *lead back, take back*

re-ferō, re-ferre, ret-tulī, re-lātus *bring back, report, refer;* **relate**

re-ficiō, re-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus *make over, repair, refresh*

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus *guide, direct, rule;* **regiō, -ōnis** f. 42 ; **rēctus** *direct, straight;* **rēctē** *rightly;* **rēx, rēgis** m. *king;* **rēgius, -a, -um** *kingly, royal;* **rēgālis, -e** *king's, kingly, royal;* 109c ; **rēgīna, -ae** f. *queen;* **rēgnum, -ī** n. *royal authority, kingship; kingdom, realm;* **rēgnāre** *reign*

re-linquō, re-linquere, re-līquī, relictus *leave behind, abandon, desert;* **reliquus, -a, -um** *remaining; rest of;* **reliquiae, -ārum** f. *leavings, remains*

re-minīscor, re-minīscī cf. 107, 223

re-mittō, mittere, -mīsī, -missus *let go back*

repēns, -ntis *sudden;* **repente** *suddenly;* **repentīnus, -a, -um** *unexpected*

re-periō, re-perīre, rep-perī, repertus 135

re-petō, re-petere, -petiī, -petītus *ask back, seek again*

re-portō, -āre *bring back*

re-prehendō, re-prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsus *blame*

re-pugnō, -āre *resist, stand in the way of*

rēs, reī 44, 73c, 81, 113 ; **rēs pūblica** *the commonwealth;* **rēs familiāris** *family property, estate;* **rēs mīlitāris** *art of war;* **rēs novae** *revolution*

re-spiciō, re-spicere, re-spexī, -spectus *look back, respect*

re-stinguō, re-stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus *extinguish*

re-stituō, re-stituere, re-stituī, -stitūtus *re-establish, restore*

re-tineō, re-tinēre, re-tinuī, retentus 155b

re-vertō, re-vertere, -vertī, -versus 182 ; **revertī** 181b

rēx, rēgis m. 46

Rhodus, -ī f. 76

rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus *laugh at*

rīpa, -ae, f. *bank*

rogō, rogāre 141b, 157b

Rōma, -ae f. 74, 13 ; **Rōmānus, -a, -um** 109c ; **rōmānē** *in Roman fashion*

ruō, ruere, ruī, ruitūrus *rush, tumble, fall;* **ruīna, -ae** f. *breach*

rūrsus, rūrsum 119b

rūs, rūris n. 42, 78 ; **rūs** (Acc.) 61b ; **rūrī** (Loc.) 61c ; **rūre** (Abl.) 61d

saepe 69 ; **saepenumerō** oftentimes

saeviō, saevīre *rage, be furious*

sagitta, -ae f. *arrow*
salūs, -ūtis f. 43 ; **salūtāre** *greet, wish good health*
sanguis, -inis m. 43
satis 70 ; **satisfacere** 3 *do enough for, give satisfaction*
scandō 220, 2
sciō, scīre, scīvī or **sciī, scītus** 74, 3 ; **sciēns** *knowing;* **scientia, -ae** f. *knowledge;* **īnscius, -a, -um** or **īnsciēns** *not knowing*
scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus *write, write down ;* **scrīptor, -ōris** m. *writer;* **scrīptum, -ī** n. (*thing*) *written, writing*
scūtum, -ī n. oblong *shield*
sē, suī 62 f.
sē-, sēd- 220, 13
sēcrētus, -a, -um *set apart;* **sēcrētō** *in private, privately*
secundus, -a, -um (cf. **sequī**) *following; next, second; favorable, successful;* **secundum** w. Acc. *next to, along, following*
sed 66
sē-decim 120
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessus *sit, be fixed* or *settled;* **sēdēs, -is** f. 55d
sēditiō, -ōnis f. 220, 13 ; **sēditiōsus, -a, -um** *seditious, rebellious*
semel 67, 120
sēmen, sēminis n. *seed;* **sēmentis, -is** *a sowing*
semper *always, ever*
senex, senis *old man;* **senātus** 44
sēnī, -ae, -a *six each* (*way*)
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus *perceive by senses; feel, hear, see, perceive, realize;* **sententia, -ae** f. *feeling, thinking, opinion, judgment;* **sententiam rogāre** *ask opinion* or *vote*
sēparātus 220, 13 ; **sēparātim** *separately*
sepeliō, sepelīre, sepelīvī, sepultus *bury;* **sepultūra, -ae** f. *burial*
septem, *seven;* **septiēns** 7-*times;* **septimus, -a, -um** *seventh;* **septuāgintā** *seventy;* **septingentī, -ae, -a** *seven hundred;* **septendecim** *seventeen;* **septen-triō, -ōnis** m. *seven plough-oxen; Great bear, the north*
sequor, sequī, —, secūtus 97, 100, 102
serēnus, -a, -um *clear, calm, fair;* **serēnō, serēnāre** *make clear*
serviō, servīre *be a slave, serve;* **servus, -ī ; serva, -ae** *slave;* **servitūs, -ūtis** f. 43
servō, -āre *save, keep, guard, watch*
sex, six ; **sexiēns** 6-*times;* **sextus, -a, -um** *sixth;* **sēnī, -ae, -a** *six each;* **sexā-gintā** sixty ; **ses-centī, -ae, -a** *six hundred*
seu = **sive** 66
sī 113, 224 ; **sīn** 156a, 224 ; **sīve (seu)** 66
sīc *in such a manner, so;* **sīcut** *just as*
sīdō, sīdere (**-sēdī, -sessus**) *sit down*
signum, -ī n. *figure, mark, military standard, signal;* **significāre** *indicate, show*

silva, -ae f. *forest;* **silvestris, -e** *(of) forest; wooded*
similis, -e *like, similar;* **similiter** *similarly;* **simulāre** *pretend*
simul *at once, together, at the same time;* **simul atque (ac)** *as soon as*
sine 58
singulī, -ae, -a 120e
sinister, -tra, -trum *left*
sitis, -is f. *thirst*
socius, -a, -um *allied, confederate, friendly; comrade;* **societās, -ātis** f. *association, alliance*
sōl, sōlis m. 41
soleō, solēre, —, solitus *be accustomed, wont* **Inf. o**
sollicitō, sollicitāre 222d
solum, -ī n. *bottom, soil, ground*
sōlus, -a, -um 40, 65, 118b ; **sōlum** 66
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus *loosen, unbind, release, pay, fulfill*
sōnō, sonāre, sonuī, sonitus *sound, resound;* **sonitus, -ūs** m. *sound, noise, din*
soror, -ōris f. *sister;* **sorōrcula, -ae** f. *little sister*
sors, sortis f. *lot; fate, destiny, oracle, success*
spatium, -ī n. 67
speciēs, -ēī f. *appearance; looks, sight;* **spectō, -āre** *look, face; look at, consider;* **specula, -ae** f. *look out;* **speculātor, -ōris** m. *scout, spy*
spēs, speī f. 55c ; **spērō, spērāre** *hope, expect* 4 ; 4 Inf.
spīritus, -ūs m. *breath* ; pl. *airs*
spoliō, spoliāre 4p 6t, 230f
sponte *of (one's own) will* **or** *effort*
statim see **stō**
statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus *set up, station, fix; decide*
stilus, -ī m. *stylus (for writing)*
stīpendium, -ī n. *tribute*
stō, stāre, stetī, statūrus 62c ; **statiō, -ōnis** f. 42, 44, 157 ; **statim** *as one stands; at once; forthwith;* **statūra, -ae** f. *stature;* **status, -ūs** m. *state;* **stābulum, -ī** n. *stable*
strepitus, -ūs m. *noise*
studeō, studēre, studuī *be eager* **or** *zealous* 3 **or** Inf. o. ; **studium, -ī** n. 107, cf. 105 ; **studiōsus, -a, -um** *fond*
suāvis, -e *pleasant, sweet;* **suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus** 147e
sub 57, 58, 220, 14 ; *close to, towards*
sub-dūcō, sub-dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus *lead up, draw up, haul up*
sub-eō, sub-īre, -iī, -itus 220, 14; **subitus** *having gone up to; sudden, unexpected;* **subitō** *suddenly*
sub-levō, -āre *relieve*
sub-rīdeō, sub-rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsus *half-laugh, smile*
sub-sequor, sub-sequī, —, sub-secūtus 220, 14
subsidium, -ī n. *what sits* **or** *remains below; reserve, assistance, reinforcement*
suc-cēdō, suc-cēdere, suc-cessī, -cessus 3 ; 220, 14
suc-currō, suc-currere, suc-currī,

-cursus *run up* or *under; run to assistance of* **3**
suf-ferō, suf-ferre, sus-tulī, sub-lātus 220, 14
suī, sibi, sē 116c, 180
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus 183
summa, -ae f. 92 ; **summus** 92
sum-ministrō, -āre; see **ministrō** 220, 14
sum-mittō, sum-mittere, -mīsī, -missus 3 and **4**, 220, 14
sū-mō, sū-mere, sū-mpsī, sū-mptus 219, 4 ; **sūmptus, -ūs** m. *undertaking, expense*
super prep. w. Acc. or Abl. *over, upon* 220, 15 ; **suprā** *above;* **superbus, -a, -um** overbearing, *proud;* **superbē** *haughtily;* **superō, superāre** 62f ; **supersum,** 220, 15 ; **superī** 92 ; **superior** 68c, 92 ; **summus** 92 ; **suprēmus** 92 ; **summa, -ae** *sum, sum total, chief position* or *command*
sup-petō, sup-petere, sup-petiī, -petītus (*look up at*) *be in stock* or *on hand, be plentiful*
sup-plex, -icis *bending under, kneeling; suppliant;* **supplicium, -ī** n. *kneeling; punishment, penalty*
sus-cipiō, sus-cipere, sus-cēpī, sus-ceptus 220, 14
su-spiciō, su-spicere, su-spexī, su-spectus *look under* or *suspect; look up to;* **suspīciō, -ōnis** f. 152b ; **suspicārī** 220, 14
sus-tineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus 220, 14
sustulī see **sufferō** and **tollō**
suus, sua, suum 63, 64, 109c

tabernāculum, -ī n. *tent*
tabula, -ae f. *board, writing tablet*
taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitus *be silent;* **tacitus** *silent*
tālis, tāle 91
tam 64, 69, 149 ; **tam-quam** *so as, just as*
tamen *still, nevertheless, yet*
tandem *at last, finally; pray, pray tell me*
tantus, -a, -um 70, 92 ; **tantulus, -a, -um** 149 f ; **tantopere** 70
tardus, -a, -um *slow, late;* **tardē** *behind time, slowly;* **tardāre** *retard, hold back*
tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus *cover, protect;* **tēctum, -ī** n. *shelter, roof*
tēlum, -ī n. *missile, weapon; spear, bolt, javelin;* **tēla mitere** or **conicere** *let go* or *hurl weapons* **in 4**
tempus, -oris n. 42, 82 ; *occasion;* **tempestās, -ātis** f. *period of time, weather, season; bad weather, storm;* **temperō, temperāre ab 6** 102, 155b
tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus *stretch;* **tenuis, -e** *stretched; thin, slender, shallow*
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus 97–104 **-ē-**
ter 67 ; **ternī, -ae, -a** *three each;* **tertius, -a, -um** 120e
tergum, -ī n. *back, rear;* **ā tergō** *on* or *from the rear*
terra, -ae f. *earth, land;* **terrestris, -e** *earthly, of the earth* cf. 109c
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus 98, 148 ; **terror, -ōris** m. *fright*

testūdō, -inis f. *tortoise; tortoise-shaped shelter of shields* or *beams*
timeō, timēre, timuī *fear* 153
toga, -ae f. *toga;* togātus, -a, -um *clad in the toga*
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus *raise, lift up; puff up, remove, take away, destroy*
torus, -ī m. *couch*
tot 64 ; totiēns *so many times, so often;* tot-idem 64
tōtus, -a, -um 40, 65, 118b
trā-dō, trā-dere, -didī, -ditus 220, 15
trā-dūcō, trā-dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus 220, 15
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus *drag, draw*
trāns 57, 220, 15
trāns-eō, trāns-īre, -iī, -itus 4, 220, 15
trēs, tria 120 ; tredecim 13 ; trīduum, -ī n. 67 ; trīnī or ternī, -ae, -a 3 *each;* tri-ennium, -ī n. 67 ; trīgintā 120 ; trecentī, -ae, -a cf. 120d ; triēns, trientis *one third;* tri-plex, -plicis 120f ; triplicō, triplicāre *triple*
tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus 220, 2
tū, tuī, tibi, tē 116
tueor, tuērī, —, tuitus or tūtus *protect, make safe;* tūtor, -ōris m. *protector;* tūtus, -a, -um *safe*
tulī see ferō
tum or tunc 66 ; tum cum 115b ; cum . . . tum *while . . . at the same time, both . . . and*
tumultus, -ūs m. *commotion*
tumulus, -ī m. *hillock, mound*
turbō, -inis *whirl; whirling storm, tornado, whirlwind*
tuus, -a, -um 109c

ubi 119a ; p. 183, 148 ; ubīque p. 183
ūllus, -a, -um 40, 65
ultrā 57 ; ulterior, -ius *farther;* ultimus, -a, -um *farthest*
umbra, -ae f. *shade, shadow*
um-quam 119b
ūnā cum 58 ; ūnus, -a, -um 58, 120 ; un-decim 120
unde p. 183 ; undique p. 183
urbs, urbis f. 74, 21 ; urbānus, -a, -um (*of the*) *city* 109c
ūrō, ūrere, ūssī, ūstus 220, 4
ūsque ad or in w. acc. *all the way, up to* or *till* ; quo-ūsque *how far*
ūsus see utor 201
ut or utī 147, 148, 149
uter, utra, utrum 40, 65, 108 ; utrum *whether . . .* an *or;* uter-que, utra-que, utrum-que 65, 66b, 108, p. 182 ; utrim-que p. 183 ; utrōque p. 182
ūtor, ūtī, —, ūsus 6, 100, 182, 201; ūsus, -ūs m. *use, experience;* ex ūsū est *it is of advantage;* mihi ūsuī est *it is useful to me* cf. 159g, p. 48, l. 7
uxor, uxōris f. *wife*

vacō, vacāre 55b ; vacuus, -a, -um *empty;* vacuum *a void*
vadum, -ī n. *shallow, shoal, wading (place), ford, crossing*
vagor, vagārī, —, vagātus *wander about, roam*

valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus *be strong; excel; be able, have power, be worth;* **valetūdō, -dinis** f. *health, illness*

vallēs, -is f. *valley*

vāllum, -ī n. *rampart, earthworks*

varius, -a, -um *various*

vāstus, -a, -um *empty, void, waste, wild; immense;* **vāstō, vāstāre** *lay waste, ravage*

vehementer *violently*

vel 66

vēn-dō, vēn-dere, -didī, -ditus *sell*

vēn-eō, vēn-īre, -iī, -itus *go on sale, be sold*

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus 92, 97, 98, 102–4

vēnor, vēnārī *hunt;* **vēnātiō, -ōnis** f. *hunting;* **vēnātor, -ōris** m. *hunter*

ventus, -ī *wind*

vēr, vēris, n. *spring*

verbum, -ī *word*

vereor, verērī, —, veritus 97, 100, 104, 182, 196

vergō, vergere *bend, incline, slope*

vergobretus, -ī m. *vergobret*

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus *move, turn;* **vertī** *turn self, revolve;* **versārī** 222c ; *dwell, conduct one's self;* **-versus** 119b

vērus, -a, -um *true;* **vērō** *in truth, but;* **vērē** *truly;* **vērum** *but, but yet*

vesper, -eris or **-erī** 76 *evening star; west*

Vesta, -ae f. *Vesta, goddess of hearth and home*

vester, vestra, vestrum *your* 109c

vēstīgium, -ī n. *footprint, track, trace;* **ē vēstīgiō** *forthwith, straightway*

vestis, -is *garment, robe; clothing, drapery;* **vestīre** *dress*

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus 123, 132

vetus, veteris 42, 86 ; **veterāscere** 223b

vexō, vexāre *harass, ravage*

via, viae *way, route, street*

vīcēsimus, -a, -um *twentieth;* **vīciēs** *twenty times;* **vīgintī** *twenty* p. 29

vicis f. *change, turn;* **invicem** *in exchange, in turn*

vīctus, -us m. see **vīvō**

vīcus, -ī 5g, 60 ; **vīcinus, -a, -um** *of same village; neighboring, near*

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus 4 ; 4 Inf.; 97, 98, 121, 192 ; **vidērī** *be seen; seem, appear* **Inf. o.** 155

vigilō, vigilāre *be awake, be on guard;* **vigilia, -ae** *a lying awake, a night watch, guard* p. 35

vīgintī see **vīciēs**

vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctus *bind, tie;* **vinculum, -ī** n. *bond, fetter, tie*

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus 225; **victor, -ōris** m. *winning, winner*

vindicō, vindicāre *claim as defender; defend, avenge*

viola, -ae f. *violet*

vīnum, -ī 82e ; **vīnea, -ae** f. *vine-bower; shed used in military operations*

vir, virī *man, husband, hero;* **virtūs, -ūtis** f. 43, 74, 16 ; **virīlis, -e** *man's; manly* 109c

virgō 78

viridis, -e *verdant, green*

vīs, vim, vī 55c, 80 ; **vīrēs** *forces, strength;* **vim facere** *do* or *use violence*

vīta, -ae f. *life;* **vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctus** 74, 17 ; **vīvus, -a, -um** *alive, living;* **vīctus, -ūs** m. *living, food*

vītō, vītāre, *avoid, shun*

vix *hardly, scarcely, barely;* **vix-dum** *hardly, yet*

vocō see **vōx**

voḷō, volāre, volitāre 222c

volō, velle, voluī 121, 128, 136, 140, 186 ; **voluntās, -tātis** f. *wish,* desire ; **voluptās, -tātis** f. *joy, liking, pleasure*

volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus 82, p. 47

vōs 116

vōx, vōcis f. *voice; utterance, word;* **magna vōx** *loud voice;* **clāra vōx** *distinct voice;* **vocō, vocāre** *call, name*

vulgus, -ī *common people;* **vulgō** *for common* 77b

vulnus, -eris n. 78 ; **vulnerāre** *wound;* **vulnus īnferre** *inflict a wound*

vultus, -ūs m. *look, countenance, expression, face*

INDEX

[Numbers refer to paragraphs.]

Ablative, general meaning, 56, 6
  absolute (so called), 95, 96
  of accompaniment, 62
  of accordance, 56, 6; 96 c
  of agent, 62 d
  of cause or reason, 56, 6; 74, 15
  of comparison, 56, 6; 75
  of description, 62 f
  of manner, 96 b
  of means or instrument, 62 b
  of measure of difference, 68 b
  of price or value, 73
    place, in expressions of, 60, 61
    in names of towns, **domus**, and **rūs**, 60, 61; with certain words, 230
  of respect or specification, 74, 16
  of separation, 63
  of time at or within which, 68 c
  of way or manner, 96 b
  with **opus est**, 71 c
  with prepositions, 58
  with **utor**, **potior**, 182 b
-ābus, dative and ablative, 55 a, note; 77 a, 120
Accent, 35, 36
Accompaniment, with **cum**, 62
Accordance, ablative of, 56, 6 c
Accusative
  of direct object, 56, 4; 74, 4
  of measure of extent, duration, etc., 56, 4, 68 a; 74, 17
  of place to which, with **ad** or **in**, 60, 61
  predicate of object, 5; 74, 5
  predicate of subj. acc., 5 c; 74, 3
  subject of infinitive, 5 g; 56, 4, 142
  "two accusatives," 155
  with prepositions, 57
Active voice, defined, 179
ad w. acc. of gerund, 121 b; cf. 158
Adjectives, declension, 83–90; 108–120, 150
  agreement of, 83
  as substantives, 64–5; 70–1 (64–5; 70–1)
  comparison of, 88–92, 97–8
  possessive, 109 c
  pronominal, 108–18
Adjective pronoun, 64–5; 70–1
Adverbs, 69, 91–2
Adversative **cum**-clause, 115 b; 224
  quī-clause, 115 b
Agent, ablative of, with **ā** or **ab**, 62 d
  dative of, 106
agō, conjugation, 197–200
Agreement, 66 b, c; 83, 93–6
alius — alius —, *one — another*, 65
alter — alter —, *one — the other*, 65
Antepenult, 36
Appositive, 93–6
"As — as possible," 69, 90, 91
Attraction, subjunctive by, 137 b
audiō, conjugation in full, 207–10

capiō, conjugation, 202–5
Cardinal numbers, 120
Cases, defined, 56
  endings of, 55
  known by their use, 74, 1–22
  table of meanings, 56
castra, declined, 77
causā, of purpose, 59
Cause, ablative, 74, 15
  cum-clause, subjunctive, 115, 224
  quī-clause, subjunctive, 115 a, 224
  quod, **quoniam**, 224–6
Characteristic clause, 151 b
Commands, 141, 143
Comparative adjectives, 89, 150
  with ablative, 56, 6
Comparative degree
  meaning "too," 69, 89, 91–2

Comparison of adjectives, 88–92, 97–8
Comparison of adverbs, 69
Complementary, infinitive, 132
Completed action, 183–5
Conditional sentences, 137 b, c; 141 b; 156
Conjugations distinguished, 169
Conjunctions, 66
cōnor, conjugation, 191
cōnsilium, declined, 77
Consonant, stems, 78–9
Consonant **i**, 22, 23
Consonants, pronunciation, 22–3
Contractions, 76, 178; 217; 219, 1, 4
cornū, declension, 81
cum, conjunction, 115 b, 119, 224
cum, enclitic with prons., 116
with abl. of accompaniment, 62
with abl. of manner, 96 b
cum, prep., 58, 62 a
Customary action, 183, 185

Dative, general force, 56, 3
of agent, 106
of indirect object, 5 f; 74, 6
of possession, 5 e; 105
of reference or concern, 56, 3; 73 e; 105–6, 159 g
of tendency, purpose, or result, 73 e; 159 g
w. spec. vbs. and adj., 230
" two datives," to denote purpose and reference or person concerned, 73 e; 159 g
dē or **ex** with abl. for gen., 66 c
Declension,
of nouns, 75–82
of adjectives, 83–90, 108–18
of pronouns, 108–18
Degree of difference, 74, 19
Deliberative subjunctive, 141
Demonstratives, 108–18
Deponent verbs, defined, 181–2
Description, 56, 2, 6; 62 g; 151
dīc, imperative, 170 note
diēs, decl.; gender, 81 b
Diphthongs, 21, 27
Direct discourse, 142
Direct object, 5 d; 56, 4; 74, 4
Direction in space, 57, 60, 61
dis-, meaning, 220, 5
Division of syllables, 29
Divisions of time, pp. 35–7
dō, conjugation, 184
domus, declension, 81
cases in constructions of place, 60–1
dūc, imperative, 170 note
dum, " while," " until," 147 d
duo, declension, 120
Duration, accusative of, 68

-e or **-ī**, in ablative singular, 78–80, 84–9
-e, **-er**, pronunciation of, 24–26
eius, distinguished from **suus**, 109 b, c
Endings, in conjugation, 124
in declension, 55
Entreaty, 141
eō, conjugation, 212–5
-ēs and **-īs**, in acc. pl., 78–80; 84
Exhortation, subjunctive, 141
Extent of space, 74, 17

faciō, passive of, 212–5
imperative, **fac**, 170 note
ferō, conjugation, 212–15
fīlia, declension of, 77
fīlius, declension of, 76
Finite moods, 125; 187–9; 191 a, b, 192–4; 196 a, b; etc.
fīō, conjugation, 212–5
First conjugation, in full, 187–90
First declension, of nouns, 77
fore=futūrum esse, 183
Forms, summary of, 37–55; 160–182
Formation of verbs, 171–7
Fourth conjugation in full, 207–10
Future perfect indicative, use, 156 a

Gender, grammatical, 54, 55 f
Genitive, 56, 2
descriptive, 56, 2
possessive, 56, 2
price or value, 73
subjective, objective, 107
whole amount, 66 c, 72
with special verbs, etc., 230
Gerund, defined, 129; uses, 135
Gerundive, defined, 104; uses, 158
gradior, conjugation, 206

grātiā, of purpose, 59
Growth of language, 218

Habitual action, imperfect of, 183
Harmony or Sequence of tenses, 147
Hortatory subjunctive, 141

i-*consonant*, 23
-ī or **-e** in abl. sing., 78–9 ; 84
-ī, pron. dative ending, 40
i-stems of third declension, 79
Imperative, uses of, 143 ; forms, 189, 191 b, etc.
  dīc, dūc, fac, fer, 170 note
Imperfect indicative and subjunctive, 137 c, 147 g ; 156, 183–5, etc.
Impersonal verbs, 136 ; 140 ; 98 Irr., 106 c.
Indefinite pronouns, 65, 71, 108–19
Indicative, formation, 171
Indicative and subjunctive, compared, 138 b, c, d ; rule for changing indicative to subjunctive, 137 b ; 188, 193, 198, etc.
Indirect discourse, defined, 142
  principal clause, 142–3
  subordinate clause, 137 b
Indirect object, 56, 3 ; 74, 6
Infinitive, defined, 121–3 ; 127
  distinguishing conjugations, 126, 169 ; in various case relations, 130–5
  in indirect discourse, 142
Instrument, ablative of, 62 b
-iō, of third conjugation, 162, 202–6
Interrogative particles, 145
Interrogative pronouns, 65, 71, 108, 114, 119 a
-īs and **-ēs** in acc. pl., 79, 80, 84, 86
iūdex, declension of, 78
-ius and **-ium**, gen. and voc., 76–7
-īus, pron. genitive ending, 40

" Jussive subjunctive," 141

-le and **-se** verbs, 127, 137, 140, 186
Less vivid future conditions, 156 b
Locative, endings, 55 a, b
Locative case, use of, 60–61
Locative meaning, 56, 7 ; 75 ; 77
Long vowels, 28

maior, pronunciation, 23
mālō, conjugation, 186
Material or composition, gen. of, 56, 2
Means or instrument, abl., 62 b, e
Measure of difference, abl., 68 b.
meus, vocative singular **mī**, 83
Middle verbs, 181
mīlle, declension and use, 120
Mixed stems of third declension, 79 c
Modes of the verb defined, inf., 121–7 ; ind., 136 ; sub., 138
More vivid future conditions, 156 a
multō, abl. of measure, 74, 19
multum, acc. of measure, 74, 17

nāvis, declension of, 79
-ne, interrogative enclitic, 145 a
nē, 69, 141, 148, 149, 155
Negatives, choice of, 69, 141
nōlī, with infinitive, 121, 141
nōlō, conjugation, 186
nōmen, declension, 78
Nominative as subject, 5 g ; 74, 1
nōnne, in questions, 145 b
" Noun clauses," 122, 134, 142–3, 152–5
num, in questions, 145 c
Number, 66 b
Numerals, pp. 28–9 ; list, 120

Object of verb, 74, 4, 6
Objective genitive, 107
Obligation, or propriety, sub., 141
Obligation, or necessity, expressed by future passive participle, 106
oppidum, declined, 77
"**ōrātiō oblīqua**," 142
Ordinals, 120

Participles, defined, 97–104
" Partitive genitive," 72
Parts of speech, 57–8, 64, 66, 69, 97–104, 113–5
Passive voice, defined, 181
Penult, 36
Perfect infinitive, formation, 99
Perfect participle, passive, 98
  deponent, 100
Perfect stem, 163
Persons and things, 62

Personal endings of the indicative, 124, 168
Personal endings of the subjunctive, 124, 168
Place, general expression of, 60, 61
plūs, declension, 150
Possession, expressed by genitive, 5 e, 109 b
  expressed by the dative, 105
Possessive adjectives, 109 c
Possibility, subjunctive, 141
possum, conjugation, 183
postquam, 69, 224
Potential subjunctive, 141
potior, ablative with, 182 b
potior, conjugation, 211
Predicate, defined, 74, 3, 4
  predicate accusative, 74, 4, 5
  predicate nominative, 74, 3
Prepositions, 57, 58
Present subjunctive, 139, 140
Present tense of indicative, meaning, 136–7
"Primary tenses," tenses of the present or future, 147 f
Principal parts of verbs, 161–3
"Principal tenses," see primary tenses, 147
Prohibitions, subjunctive, 141; **nōlī**, 121
Pronominal adjectives, 64–5, 70–1, 108–18
Pronunciation, 21–36
prōvincia, declension of, 77
Purpose, expressed by, 59, 148, 158

Quantity of vowels, 27, 28
  of syllables, 33, 34
Quantity, position of words of, 68
-que, enclitic, 66
-que, indefinite particle, 76, 108, 119 b
Questions:
  indicative, of fact, 145
  subjunctive:
    of deliberation, 141 b
    of possibility, 141 b
quī-clauses:
  descriptive, 151
  determinative or characteristic, 151
  of purpose, 148
  of result, 149
"rather," expressed by comparative, 69, 89, 91
re-, **red-**, 220, 13
Reference or concern, 56, 3; 73 e; 159 g
Reflexive pronouns, 116 b
  distinguished from **ipse**, 118 a
Reflexive verbs, 181–2
Relative clause, 147–51
Relative pronoun, 115
Request or entreaty, expressed:
  by imperative, 142–3
  by subjunctive, 141
rēs, declined, 81 b
Respect, ablative of, 74, 16; 157
Result clauses, 149
-ro-stems in nouns, explained, 76
Rule for changing indicative to subjunctive, 137 b, 188, 193, 198, etc.
rūs, **rūre**, **rūrī**, in constructions of place, 61

s-stems, 42, 78 b
sē-, **sēd-**, 220, 13
Second conjugation, in full, 192–6
Second declension, 75–6
  of adjectives, 90
"Secondary tenses," tenses of the past, 147 g
Semi-deponent verbs, **audeō**, **fīdō** (**cōn-fīdō**, **dif-fīdō**), **gaudeō**, **soleō**, *see* Vocabulary
Separation, ablative with verbs of, 63
"Sequence of tenses," 147 f, g
Short vowels, 28 b
simul atque, 224
sine and **cum** in expressions of manner, 96 b
Sociative ablative, 62 a
Space, acc. measure of, 68
Specification, 74, 16
Subject, of finite verb, nom., 56, 1; 74, 1
  of infinitives, acc., 56, 4; 74, 2
Subjunctive, formation, 172
  used to express:
  adversative idea (opposition) with **quī**, with **cum**, 115, 224
  cause or reason, with **quī**, with **cum**, 115, 224

close connection with subjunctive or infinitive clause (attraction), 137 c
commands or prohibitions, 141
conditions and conclusion: less vivid future, contrary to fact, 156, b, c
deliberation, 141
description, in **quī-** clauses, 151
exhortation, 141
fear or anxiety, 153
obligation or propriety, 141
possibility, 141
purpose, with **quī, quō, ut,** or **nē,** 148
request or entreaty, 141
result, with **ut, ut nōn, quīn,** 149
situation, in **cum**-clauses, 115, 224
substantive idea, 152–5
after verbs of hindrance, prevention, or check, with **nē, quōminus,** or **quin,** 155
with **utinam,** 141
adjectives as substantives, 64–5; 70–1
Substantive clauses, 146, 152–5
sum, conjugation in full, 183
Summary of forms of nouns and adjectives, 37–56
Summary of forms of verbs, 160–78
Superlative degree, 69, 90
with **quam,** "as — as possible," 69, 90
Supine, formation; uses, 157–9
Syllables, division of, 29–32
quantity of, 33–4

Tables of:
endings of nouns, 55
endings of verbs, 168
conditions and conclusion, 156
indirect discourse, 142
natural harmony of tenses, 147 f, g
Tenses of participles, 97–104
of participle, 94 b, 97–101, 103
Terminations, *see* Endings, 55, 124
"Than," English, how expressed, 56, 6; 75, 69
Third conjugation, 197–206
Third declension adjectives, 83–9
consonant stems, 86
i-stems, 83–5; 87–9
Third declension nouns, 79, 80
Third declension participles, 97
Time at or within which, ablative of, 68 c
"Too," expressed by comparative, 69, 91
"Two accusatives," 155

ubi, ut, postquam, simul atque, with indicative, 224
"Until," 57, 147 d
ut, "as," with indicative, 115, 147 b
utinam, wishing particle, 141
ūtor, ablative with, 182 b
conjugation of, 201

v, ve, vē, vi, sometimes lost in perfect stems, 178, 217
vereor, conjugation of, 196
"Very," expressed by superlative, 69, 90–1
vesper, declension of, 76
vetus, declension, 86
videō, conjugation, 192–5
virgō, declension of, 78
vīs, declined, 80
Vocative, regular formation, 75
or nouns, in **-ius,** 76
used in address, 56, 5; 74, 7
vocō, conjugation, 187–90
Voice, defined, 179, 180
Volitive subjunctive, 141
volō, conjugation, 186
Vowels, pronunciation, 21
quantity, 28
vulgus, declension of, 77
vulnus, declension of, 78

Whole, expressed by genitive, 72
by **dē** or **ex** with ablative, 66 c
Wish, expressed by subjunctive, 141
with **utinam,** 141

"Yes" and "no" questions, 145

Mr Burt Reed
Alva
Okla

praenomen – individual name
nomen – clan name
cognomen – family name
Sometimes a 4th. is added to commemorate some exploit.

Gaius Julius Caesar
praenomen nomen cognomen

My favorite magazine
Newspaper Like Art

Anna Karenina

Lyof N. Tolstoi.